



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

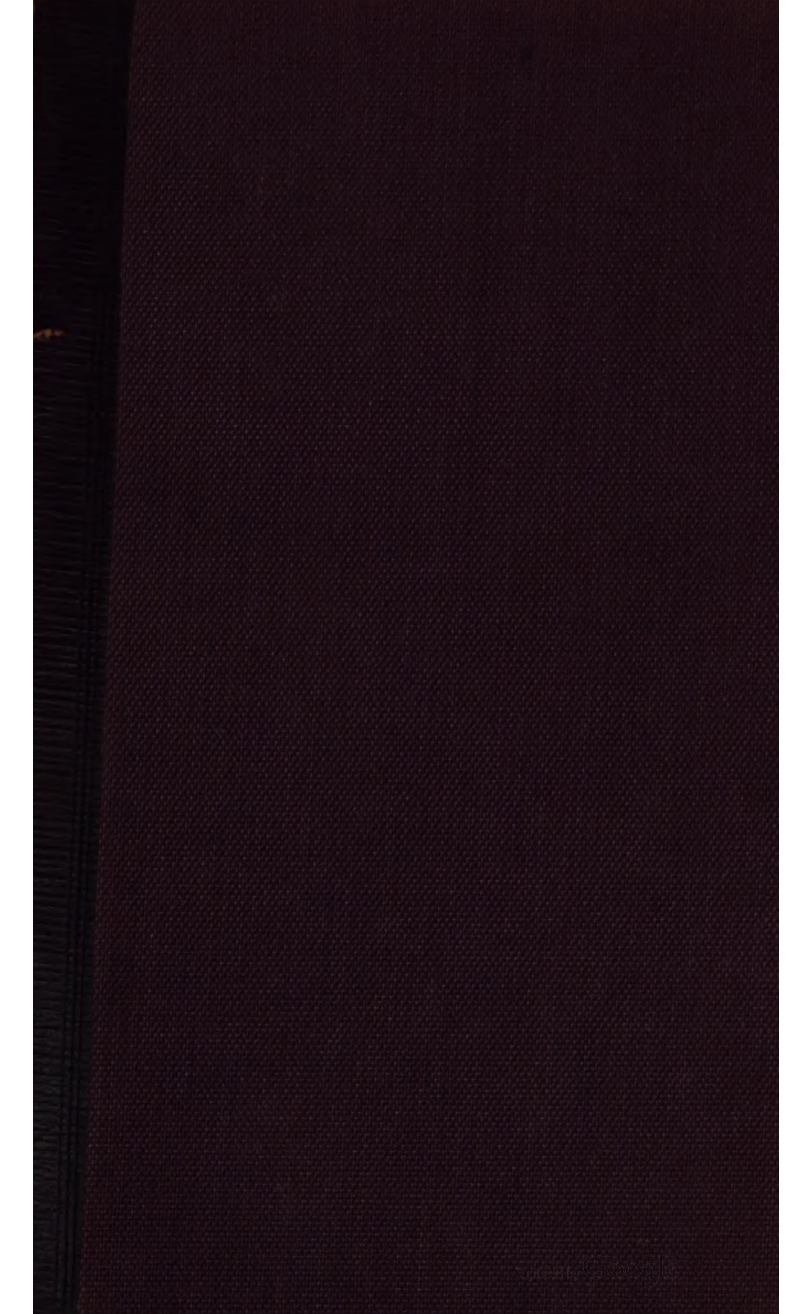
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





600094093V



600094093V





600094093V

IS.

PLAN.

ook,
most useful
s
anguage.

T,

:
OSTER ROW;
PRIEST.

GUIDE COMPLET
DE
L'ÉTUDIANT FRANÇAIS.

A SERIES OF
PROGRESSIVE FRENCH LESSONS,
ARRANGED ON A NEW AND METHODICAL PLAN.

BEING AN

Easy Word Book, a Useful and Idiomatical Phrase-Book,
a complete Grammar, and at the same time the easiest and most useful
Book of References for surmounting all the difficulties
the Learner may encounter in the Study of the French Language.

BY
CAMILLE LANTENANT,

PROFESSOR OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.

LONDON:
W. ALLAN, PATERNOSTER ROW;
NORWICH: THOMAS PRIEST.
1857.



303. C. P5.

PREFACE.

ALTHOUGH many FRENCH GRAMMARS, and other useful and excellent books have already been published in this country for the purpose of furthering the knowledge of the *French Language*, the author of this work thinks (having found by his own experience in teaching) that to render its study *simple, easy, and agreeable*, and its useful and important knowledge easy to acquire, a great “*desideratum*” was still left vacant.

It is the hope of filling up that *desideratum*, and the desire of lessening the labour of the pupil, by rendering the study of the *Language* easier, and therefore more attractive to the student, that have induced the author to write the present work, and trusting it will be found *simple, easy, and extremely useful*, he confidently submits it to the judgment of the public, and hopes that the “*Guide Complet de l'étudiant Français*” will be favourably received, both by those who teach the *Language* and those who wish to learn it.

CAMILLE LANTENANT.

Norwich, June, 1857.

ERRATA.

<i>Page</i>	<i>Line</i>		
5	27	<i>for</i> substantift	<i>read</i> substantif
24	22	„ conzole	„ console
41	24	„ Leon	„ Leçon
45	5	„ we also formed	„ we also form
56	17	„ quel fille	„ quelle fille
66	9	„ en chante	„ je chante
96	22	„ pâyer	„ payer
97	6	„ reakfast	„ breakfast
122	35	„ me live	„ we live
166	32	„ te me suis	„ je me suis
259	23	„ to go, or to go without	„ to go, or to do without
270	25	„ je ne ne suis pas	„ je ne suis pas
275	24	„ cinquainte	„ cinquante

INDEX.

FIRST PART.

	PAGE
Introduction	1
Pronunciation	1
Exercise on pronunciation	2
Long and short vowels	4
Of the different sorts of accents	4
The accent <i>aigu</i>	4
The accent <i>grave</i>	4
The accent <i>circumflex</i>	4

SECOND PART.

The parts of speech	5
The ARTICLE SIMPLE	6
Lesson and exercise on the article simple	8
Use of the article	8
Substantif generalized	9
Substantif particularized	9
Substantif individualized	9
Lesson and exercise on the use of the article	11
The article <i>composé</i> or <i>contracté</i> , of the or from the	11
Lesson and exercise on the compound article of the or from the	14
The article <i>composé</i> or <i>contracté</i> , to the or at the	14
Lesson and exercise on the compound article to the or at the	15
The article <i>composé</i> , some or any	16
Lesson and exercise on the compound article some or any	18
Lesson and exercise on some or any used before an adjective	19
Lesson and exercise on some or any used in negative sentences	19
Recapitulatory lesson on the article	21
Remarks on the use of the article	21
OF SUBSTANTIVES OR NOUNS	23
Declension of the numeral adjective <i>un</i> , (a or an)	24
Lesson on room and furniture	24
Of the table	25
Formation of the plural of nouns	26
Exercise on the plural of nouns	28
Trees and fruit trees	28
Of flowers	29
Of fishes	29
Of insects	30
Trades and professions	30
Titles and dignities	31
Different parts of the human body	31
Passions, affections, and sensations of the mind	32

	PAGE
Gentlemen's wearing apparel	33
Ladies' wearing apparel	34
OF ADJECTIVES	34
Adjectives of quality	35
Formation of the feminine of adjectives	35
Lessons and exercise on adjectives	39
Lesson and exercise on adjectives that have no regular formation of the feminine	41
Formation of the plural of adjectives	41
Place of adjectives	43
Of the degrees of comparison	43
Lesson and exercise on the degrees of comparison	46
Observation on the comparatives <i>meilleur, mieux, plus, moins</i>	48
Lesson and exercise on the comparative <i>better, meilleur</i> and <i>mieux</i>	50
Possessive adjectives	51
Lessons and exercise on the possessive adjectives	53
Demonstrative adjectives	53
Lesson and exercise on the Demonstrative adjectives	54
Indefinite adjectives	55
Lesson and exercise on the indefinite adjectives	56
Numeral adjectives	57
PRONOUNS	62
Personal pronouns	63
Lesson and exercise on the personal pronouns	66
Possessive pronouns	67
Lesson and exercise on the possessive pronouns	68
Important lesson on the possessive pronouns	69
Exercise on the possessive <i>adjectives</i> and the possessive <i>pro-</i> <i>nouns</i>	71
Demonstrative pronouns	71
Lesson and exercise on the demonstrative pronouns	72
Relative pronouns	74
Lesson and exercise on the relative pronouns	75
Lesson and exercise on the <i>supplying</i> pronouns <i>en</i> and <i>y</i>	77
Indefinite pronouns	78
Lesson and exercise on the indefinite pronouns	79
OF VERBS	80
Of the nominative or subject	81
Of the objective or object (<i>régime</i>)	81
Régime direct	81
Régime indirect	82
Auxiliary verb <i>to have</i>	83
Exercise on the auxiliary verb <i>to have</i>	84
Auxiliary verb <i>to be</i>	85
Exercise on the auxiliary verb <i>to be</i>	87
OF ACTIVE VERBS	87
First conjugation in <i>er</i>	88
Remarks on the orthography of some verbs of the first conju- gation	93
Exercise on verbs of the first conjugation	97

	PAGE
Second conjugation in <i>ir</i>	97
Exercise on verbs of the second conjugation	100
Third conjugation in <i>oir</i>	101
Lessons on the verb <i>devoir</i> used instead of the verb <i>to be</i> , and also in the sense of <i>must</i>	104
Exercise on verbs of the third conjugation	105
Exercise on idiomatical tenses of the verb <i>devoir</i>	106
Fourth conjugation	107
Exercise on verbs of the fourth conjugation	110
Conjugation of verbs with <i>negatives</i>	111
Exercise on verbs used <i>negatively</i>	112
Conjugation of verbs interrogatively	113
Exercise on verbs used both <i>interrogatively</i> and <i>negatively</i>	119
OF PASSIVE VERBS	119
Observation on <i>passive</i> verbs	120
Lesson and exercises on passive verbs	121
OF NEUTER VERBS	122
Neuter verbs, which in French take the verb <i>to be</i> , instead of the verb <i>to have</i> , in their compound tenses	123
Lesson and exercise on neuter verbs, which in French take the verb <i>to be</i> , instead of the verb <i>to have</i> , in their compound tenses	124
OF PRONOMINAL VERBS	125
Conjugation of pronominal verbs	126
Pronominal verbs conjugated in their compound tenses	128
Observation on pronominal verbs	132
Exercises on pronominal verbs	134
OF IMPERSONAL VERBS	135
Exercise on impersonal verbs	138
Of the mood	139
Verbs that govern the <i>subjunctive mood</i>	141
Of the tenses	143
Lesson on the different tenses of verbs	146
—— on the tenses of the <i>subjunctive</i>	147
—— on the <i>infinitive mood</i>	148
Exercises on the different <i>moods</i> and <i>tenses</i> of verbs	150
Formation of the <i>tenses</i>	160
Of irregular verbs	162
List of irregular verbs arranged alphabetically	197
Exercises on <i>irregular</i> verbs	202
OF PARTICIPLES	211
Present participle	211
Past participle	213
Recapitulatory lesson on the <i>past participle</i>	216
OF ADVERBS	218
Of the preposition	229
Of the conjunction	231
Conjunctions that govern the <i>subjunctive mood</i>	232
Words which are sometimes <i>prepositions</i> , and sometimes <i>conjunctions</i>	233
Of interjections	234

THIRD PART.

	PAGE
Lessons on <i>idiomatical and useful phrases</i>	235
Sentences in which the verb <i>to be</i> is used in English, when in French the verb <i>to have</i> must be used	235
Lesson on the state of the weather	240
— on the English word <i>to want</i>	242
— on the English expression <i>to be the matter</i>	244
— on the different hours of the day	246
— on <i>some</i> or <i>any</i> , used <i>before</i> nouns and <i>instead</i> of nouns	247
— on the verbs <i>to go for</i> , <i>to come for</i> , <i>to send for</i> , <i>to look for</i> , etc.	249
— on the verbs <i>to hear</i> , <i>to hear from</i> , <i>to hear of</i> , etc.	250
— on the verb <i>to take place</i> , <i>avoir lieu</i>	251
— on the verb <i>there to be</i> , <i>y avoir</i>	253
— on the verbs <i>pouvoir</i> and <i>vouloir</i>	254
— on verbs that require two prepositions <i>d-de</i>	255
— on the English verb <i>to walk</i>	256
— on the English word <i>a</i> or <i>an</i>	258
— on the English verb <i>to go</i> , or <i>to do without</i> , <i>se passer de</i>	259
— on the English words <i>before</i> and <i>for</i>	260
— on the English word <i>since</i>	262
— on the English word <i>but</i>	263
— on the English word <i>what</i>	264
— on the English word <i>that</i>	265
— on the French word <i>quelque</i> , <i>whatever</i> or <i>however</i>	267
— on the three spellings of the French word <i>quelque</i>	268
— on the English preposition <i>to</i>	269
— on the English preposition <i>in</i>	271
— on the English preposition <i>out</i>	272
— on the English preposition <i>by</i>	273
— on the English preposition <i>with</i>	275
Dialogues	277
Verbs that require the two prepositions <i>d-de</i>	283
Verbs that require the preposition <i>d</i>	284
Verbs that require the preposition <i>de</i>	285
Verbs that <i>do not</i> require any preposition at all	286
Adjectives and past participles requiring the preposition <i>d</i>	286
Adjectives and past participles requiring the preposition <i>de</i>	286
Days of the week	287
Months of the year	287
Seasons of the year	287
Quarters	287

PART I.

INTRODUCTION.

THERE are, in the French Alphabet, twenty-five letters;
six vowels, which are,

a, e, i, o, u, y,

nineteen consonants,

b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.

PRONUNCIATION.

Besides the six vowels, we have in the French language *peculiar sounds*, formed by the combination of vowels and certain consonants, which are considered as vowels; such are,

an, am, en, em	ar	
in, im, ain, aim	er	<i>pronounce,</i>
ei, ein, eine, ien, ienne	ir	<i>hard</i> —ca, co, cu
on, om, un, um	or	<i>soft</i> —ça, ço, çu
au, eau, ai, eu, oi, ou	ur	<i>soft</i> —ce, ci, cy
ail — aille	air	<i>pronounce,</i>
eil — eille	eur	<i>hard</i> —ga, go, gu
euil — euille	oir	<i>soft</i> —ge, gi, gy
ueil — ueille	our	
ill — ille		

These peculiar sounds, which we may call compound vowels, form, with a consonant put before them, either a complete word, or a part of a word called *syllable*; and not any noun, or word, can be *formed, written, spoken, or pronounced*, without the help of either of the *simple* or the *compound* vowels.

EXAMPLES.

en-fant	enfant	<i>child, infant</i>
en-fin	enfin	<i>at last, at length, in fine</i>
en-can	encan	<i>auction, public sale</i>
an-té-ri-eur	antérieur	<i>anterior, prior, previous, past</i>
an-té-ri-eure-ment	antérieurement	<i>previously, before</i>
an-ti-pa-thie	antipathie	<i>antipathy</i>
am-pli-fi-ca-tion	amplification	<i>amplification</i>
am-pou-le	ampoule	<i>blister, vial</i>
em-por-ter	emporter	<i>to carry away, to take away</i>
em-por-te-ment	emportement	<i>passion, transport</i>
em-me-ner	emmener	<i>to take away, to carry away</i>
en-chan-ter	enchanter	<i>to enchant, to bewitch</i>
en-chan-te-ment	enchantement	<i>enchantment</i>
em-bal-ler	emballer	<i>to pack up</i>
em-bar-quer	embarquer	<i>to embark</i>
em-bar-que-ment	embarquement	<i>shipping, embarkation</i>
em-bras-ser	embrasser	<i>to embrace, to kiss</i>
in-cen-dier	incendier	<i>to set on fire, to burn</i>
in-cen-die	incendie	<i>a great fire, a fire</i>
in-ci-dent	incident	<i>incident, incidental</i>
in-fi-ni	infini	<i>infinite, endless</i>
in-fi-ni-ment	infiniment	<i>infinitely</i>
im-par-fait	imparfait	<i>imperfect, defective</i>
im-par-fai-te-ment	imparfaitement	<i>imperfectly</i>
im-pa-ti-en-ce	impatience	<i>impatience</i>
im-pa-ti-ent	impatient, m.	<i>impatient, m.</i>
im-pa-ti-en-te	impatiente, f.	<i>impatient, f.</i>
im-pa-ti-em-ment	impatiemment	<i>impatiently</i>
grand	grand, m.	<i>great, tall, large, m.</i>
gran-de	grande, f.	<i>great, tall, large, f.</i>
gran-de-ment	grandement	<i>greatly, largely</i>
main-te-nant	maintenant	<i>now</i>
main-te-nir	maintenir	<i>to maintain</i>
main	main	<i>hand</i>
de-main	demain	<i>to-morrow</i>
pain	pain	<i>bread, a loaf</i>
bain	bain	<i>bath</i>
vain	vain, m.	<i>vain, proud, m.</i>
vai-ne	vaine, f.	<i>vain, proud, f.</i>

vai-ne-ment	vainement	<i>vainly, in vain</i>
es-saim	essaim	<i>swarm</i>
plein	plein, <i>m.</i>	<i>full, m.</i>
plei-ne	pleine, <i>f.</i>	<i>full, f.</i>
plei-ne-ment	pleinement	<i>fully</i>
teint	teint	<i>complexion; dye</i>
tein-te	teinte	<i>tint; tinge; tincture</i>
peint	peint	<i>painted</i>
pein-tu-re	peinture	<i>painting</i>
é-teint	éteint	<i>extinguished, extinct, out</i>
pei-gne	peigne	<i>comb</i>
pei-ne	peine	<i>penalty; trouble, pain</i>
pé-ni-ble	pénible	<i>painful, toilsome</i>
pé-ni-ble-ment	péniblement	<i>painfully, laboriously</i>
bien	bien	<i>well; right</i>
chré-tien	chrétien, <i>m.</i>	<i>christian, m.</i>
chré-tien-ne	chrétienne, <i>f.</i>	<i>christian, f.</i>
feu	feu	<i>fire</i>
peu	peu	<i>little</i>
moi	moi	<i>I; me</i>
foi	foi	<i>faith</i>
loi	loi	<i>law</i>
joie	joie	<i>joy</i>
paille	paille	<i>straw</i>
Ver-sailles	Versailles	<i>a town near Paris</i>
ca-naïlle	canaille	<i>the rabble; the mob</i>
filie	fille	<i>girl, daughter</i>
fa-mille	famille	<i>family</i>
re-cueil	recueil	<i>collection</i>
re-cueill-ir	recueillir	<i>to reap, to collect, to receive</i>
or-gueil	orgueil	<i>pride</i>
or-gueill-eux	orgueilleux	<i>proud, haughty</i>
or-gueill-eu-se-ment	orgueilleusement	<i>proudly, haughtily</i>
fau-teuil	fauteuil	<i>arm chair</i>
feuille	feuille	<i>leaf; sheet</i>
pa-reil	pareil, <i>m.</i>	<i>like; alike; such, m.</i>
pa-reille	pareille, <i>f.</i>	<i>like; alike; such, f.</i>
pa-reille-ment	pareillement	<i>likewise; alike; too</i>
soleil	soleil	<i>the sun</i>

The *teacher* is requested to pronounce before the pupils, and to make them repeat after him the above words, first by dividing them into syllables, and then by repeating them as they are to be spoken in conversation.

The *pupils* are particularly requested to practice the pronunciation of the above words, and *more particularly* to remember those *peculiar sounds* formed by the combination of vowels with certain consonants, which, in a great measure, form the standard of the French *pronunciation*.

The Vowels are either long or short.

EXAMPLES.

<i>long</i>		<i>short</i>	
â	is long in pâte	dough, paste	a is short in latte
ê	_____ tête	head	e _____ brèche
î	_____ épître	epistle	i _____ petite
ô	_____ hôte	host, guest	o _____ botte
û	_____ flûte	flute	u _____ chute
eû	_____ le jeûne	fasting	eu _____ jeune
oû	_____ croûte	crust	ou _____ route

OF ACCENTS.

Accents are signs peculiar to the French language; they give to the vowels over which they are put, a *long* or *short* sound.

There are three sorts of accents.

The accent aigu (´)

The accent grave (`)

The accent circonflexe (^)

The accent aigu (´) is put over the letter é, to give it the sound which is called *fermé*, short, or shut, as in these words :

café	coffee	parlé	spoken
bonté	kindness	été	been
vérité	truth		

The accent grave (`) is put over the letter è, to give it the sound called *ouvert*, open, as in these words :

accès	access ; fit	mère	mother
succès	success	frère	brother
père	father	prière	request ; prayer

OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

The accent grave (`) is also placed over the *v*, *e*, *u*, in the following words, to distinguish them from other words which have the same spelling, without the accent :

<i>with the accent.</i>	<i>without the accent.</i>
à <i>to</i>	il a <i>he has</i>
là <i>there</i>	la <i>the, or her</i>
dès <i>from, since</i>	des <i>of the, or some</i>
où <i>where, in which</i>	ou <i>or</i>

The accent circonflexe (^) is put over the vowels which are pronounced *long* ; as in these words :

même <i>same, even</i>	bâtir <i>to build</i>
tempête <i>tempest, storm</i>	flûte <i>flute</i>
fête <i>a feast, festival</i>	apôtre <i>apostle</i>

The accent circonflexe (^) is also put over the vowel *u*, in the following words, to distinguish them from other words which have the same spelling without the accent.

<i>with the accent.</i>	<i>without the accent.</i>
dû <i>owed</i>	du <i>of the, some</i>
mûr <i>ripe</i>	mur <i>wall</i>
sûr <i>sure</i>	sur <i>on, upon</i>
crû <i>grown</i>	cru <i>believed, raw, unripe</i>

PART II.

OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

There are in French ten kinds or sorts of words, called the Parts of Speech. These words are :

these are variable.	{	l'article	<i>the article</i>
		le substantif	<i>the substantive or noun</i>
		l'adjectif	<i>the adjective</i>
		le pronom	<i>the pronoun</i>
		le verbe	<i>the verb</i>
these are invariable.	{	le participe	<i>the participle</i>
		l'adverbe	<i>the adverb</i>
		la préposition	<i>the preposition</i>
		la conjonction	<i>the conjunction</i>
		l'interjection	<i>the interjection</i>

6 Every word we use in speaking or writing must be one of the above.

OF THE ARTICLE.

L'article is a word prefixed to substantives, to show their gender and number.

There is in French but one article, which is rendered into English by the word *the*, and into French by *le*, *la*, *les*, which we call *article simple*.

THE is rendered into French by

The	{	le	before a noun masculine singular
		la	before a noun feminine singular
		les	before all nouns plural
		l'	is used instead of le or la before all nouns singular, beginning with a vowel or h mute

EXAMPLES.

le père	<i>the father</i>	l'arbre	<i>the tree</i>
la mère	<i>the mother</i>	l'oiseau	<i>the bird</i>
les enfants	<i>the children</i>	l'honneur	<i>the honour</i>

Observe that the letter *e* in the word *le*, and the letter *a* in the word *la*, are suppressed or cut off, and replaced by an apostrophe before words singular, masculine, or feminine, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute; this is done to avoid a disagreeable sound which would be produced by the meeting of the two vowels.

Thus we say :—

l'arbre	<i>and not</i>	le arbre	<i>the tree</i>
l'oiseau	<i>and not</i>	le oiseau	<i>the bird</i>
l'homme	<i>and not</i>	le homme	<i>the man</i>
l'honneur	<i>and not</i>	le honneur	<i>the honour</i>
l'encre	<i>and not</i>	la encre	<i>the ink</i>
l'oreille	<i>and not</i>	la oreille	<i>the ear</i>
l'humeur	<i>and not</i>	la humeur	<i>the humor</i>

ARTICLES AND NOUNS.

FIRST LESSON.

le père	<i>the father</i>	la fille	<i>the girl</i>
la mère	<i>the mother</i>	le chien m.	<i>the dog m.</i>
l'enfant	<i>the child</i>	le chat m.	<i>the cat m.</i>
les enfants	<i>the children</i>	le cheval m.	<i>the horse m.</i>
le fils	<i>the son</i>	le pain m.	<i>the bread m.</i>
la fille	<i>the daughter</i>	le vin m.	<i>the wine m.</i>
les fils	<i>the sons</i>	la bière f.	<i>the beer</i>
les filles	<i>the daughters</i>	le beurre m.	<i>the butter</i>
le cousin m.	<i>the cousin m.</i>	le fromage m.	<i>the cheese</i>
la cousine f.	<i>the cousin f.</i>	la viande f.	<i>the meat</i>
les cousins m. p.	<i>the cousins m. p.</i>	le sel m.	<i>the salt</i>
les cousines f. p.	<i>the cousins f. p.</i>	le poivre m.	<i>the pepper</i>
le neveu	<i>the nephew</i>	le vinaigre m.	<i>the vinegar</i>
la nièce	<i>the niece</i>	la moutarde f.	<i>the mustard</i>
le parrain	<i>the godfather</i>	le couteau m.	<i>the knife</i>
la marraine	<i>the godmother</i>	la fourchette f.	<i>the fork</i>
le filleul	<i>the godson</i>	la cuiller f.	<i>the spoon</i>
la filleule	<i>the goddaughter</i>	l'assiette f.	<i>the plate</i>
le garçon	<i>the boy</i>	la table f.	<i>the table</i>

SECOND LESSON.

The pupil is requested to observe that instead of saying *my father's book, my mother's house*, etc., we say in French, *the book of my father, the house of my mother*, etc.

le livre de mon père	<i>my father's book</i>
la maison de ma mère	<i>my mother's house</i>
le frère de Mademoiselle B.	<i>Miss B.'s brother</i>
la sœur de Monsieur D.	<i>Mr. D.'s sister</i>
l'argent de mon frère	<i>my brother's money</i>
la bourse de ma sœur	<i>my sister's purse</i>
les chevaux de mon cousin	<i>my cousin's horses</i>
les vaches de ma cousine	<i>my cousin's cows</i>
les chiens de mon ami	<i>my friend's dogs</i>
le fusil de mon oncle	<i>my uncle's gun</i>
le crayon de Pierre	<i>Peter's pencil</i>

l'ardoise de Marie	<i>Maria's slate</i>
le chapeau de Monsieur H.	<i>Mr. H.'s hat</i>
le chapeau de Mademoiselle P.	<i>Miss P.'s bonnet</i>
l'habit de Henri	<i>Henry's coat</i>
la robe de Julie	<i>Julia's dress</i>
le manteau de mon ami	<i>my friend's cloak</i>
avez-vous vu le cheval de mon père?	<i>have you seen my father's horse?</i>
avez-vous vu la voiture de ma mère?	<i>have you seen my mother's carriage?</i>
connaissez-vous le frère de Monsieur H.?	<i>do you know Mr. H.'s brother?</i>
connaissez-vous la sœur de Mademoiselle P.?	<i>do you know Miss P.'s sister?</i>
avez-vous vu la bourse de mon cousin?	<i>have you seen my cousin's purse?</i>
avez-vous vu le crayon de ma cousine?	<i>have you seen my cousin's pencil?</i>
donnez-moi l'argent de mon père	<i>give me my father's money</i>
donnez-moi le chapeau de ma mère	<i>give me my mother's bonnet?</i>

EXERCISE ON THE ARTICLE SIMPLE—THE.

The father, the mother, and the children are in the garden. The son, the daughter, the nephew, and the nieces are in the fields. The bread, the wine, the beer, the butter, and the cheese are on the table, The knife, the fork, and the plates are in the kitchen. Have you seen my father's horse? Have you seen my sister's purse? Have you found my brother's money? Have you seen Henry's hat? Have you seen Julia's dress? Have you seen my mother's carriage? Do you know Mr. S.'s brother? Do you know Miss D.'s sister? Give me my father's money. Give me my mother's bonnet.

THIRD LESSON.

USE OF THE ARTICLE.

There are three instances, or cases, in which the article *the* is not used in English, when in French it must be used.

- 1st before substantives generalized
- 2nd before substantives particularized
- 3rd before substantives individualized.

1st. The substantive is generalized when it represents the generality of the persons or things of which we speak, as :

<i>Les hommes sont mortels</i>	<i>Men are mortal</i>
<i>Les chevaux sont utiles</i>	<i>Horses are useful</i>
<i>J'aime les fleurs</i>	<i>I like flowers</i>

In these examples, the substantive *man*, being generalized, represents all kinds of men, or all mankind.

The substantive *horse*, represents all kinds of horses.

The substantive *flower*, represents all kinds of flowers.

Therefore *men*, *horses*, and *flowers*, are taken in a general sense, or are generalized, and must, in French, be preceded by the article *the*.

2nd. The substantive is particularized when it represents *the whole of a particular kind or species of persons or things*, particularized by an adjective, as :

<i>Les hommes instruits sont modestes</i>	<i>learned men are modest</i>
<i>Les chevaux blancs sont très jolis</i>	<i>white horses are very pretty</i>
<i>J'aime les fleurs bleues</i>	<i>I like blue flowers</i>

In these examples, the substantive *man*, being particularized by the word *learned*, represents a particular kind of men ; all great men.

The substantive *horse*, being particularized by the word *white*, represents a particular kind of horses ; all white horses.

The substantive *flower*, being particularized by the word *blue*, represents a particular kind of flowers ; all blue flowers.

Therefore, *men*, *horses*, and *flowers*, are particularized, and must, in French, be preceded by the article *the*.

3rd. The substantive is individualized when it represents a single being, or a single thing, taken individually, as :

<i>Le Général B. est blessé</i>	<i>General B. is wounded</i>
<i>Le Docteur D. est très habile</i>	<i>Doctor D. is very clever</i>
<i>La France est un beau pays</i>	<i>France is a beautiful country</i>
<i>Le pain et l'eau sont nécessaires à l'homme</i>	<i>Bread and water are necessary to man</i>

In these examples, the substantives *General*, *Doctor*, *France*, *Bread* and *water*, being individualized, represent a single being or a single thing taken individually, the substantive *man* represents *men* in general, and therefore must, in French, be preceded by the article *the*.

FOURTH LESSON.

<i>Connaissez-vous le Général B. ?</i>	<i>Do you know General B. ?</i>
<i>Avez-vous vu le Docteur D. ?</i>	<i>Have you seen Doctor D. ?</i>
<i>Le Capitaine H. est très malade</i>	<i>Captain H. is very ill !</i>
<i>Le Caporal S. est un brave soldat</i>	<i>Corporal S. is a brave soldier.</i>
<i>La France et l'Angleterre sont unies</i>	<i>France and England are united.</i>
<i>L'Europe, l'Asie, l'Afrique et l'Amérique</i>	<i>Europe, Asia, Africa, and America</i>
<i>Le Printemps, l'Été, l'Automne, et l'Hiver</i>	<i>Spring, Summer, Autumn, and Winter</i>
<i>L'or, l'argent, le fer, et l'acier</i>	<i>Gold, silver, iron, and steel</i>
<i>La terre, l'air, l'eau et le feu</i>	<i>Earth, air, water, and fire</i>
<i>J'aime le français et la musique</i>	<i>I like French and music</i>
<i>Aimez-vous le dessin et la danse ?</i>	<i>Do you like drawing and dancing ?</i>
<i>Aimez-vous les roses blanches ?</i>	<i>Do you like white roses ?</i>
<i>Aimez-vous les chevaux noirs ?</i>	<i>Do you like black horses ?</i>
<i>Non mais j'aime les chevaux bais</i>	<i>No, but I like bay horses</i>
<i>Les dames aiment les fleurs</i>	<i>Ladies are fond of flowers</i>
<i>Les Messieurs aiment les chevaux</i>	<i>Gentlemen are fond of horses</i>
<i>Les enfants aiment les bonbons</i>	<i>Children are fond of sweetmeats</i>
<i>Aimez-vous la lecture ?</i>	<i>Do you like reading ?</i>
<i>Aimez-vous la peinture ?</i>	<i>Do you like painting ?</i>
<i>Aimez-vous le lait ?</i>	<i>Do you like milk ?</i>
<i>Aimez-vous la crème ?</i>	<i>Do you like cream ?</i>
<i>Aimez-vous le café ?</i>	<i>Do you like coffee ?</i>
<i>Aimez-vous le thé ?</i>	<i>Do you like tea ?</i>
<i>Aimez-vous les fruits ?</i>	<i>Do you like fruit ?</i>

Aimez-vous les pommes?	<i>Do you like apples?</i>
Aimez-vous les poires?	<i>Do you like pears?</i>
Aimez-vous les fraises?	<i>Do you like strawberries?</i>
Aimez-vous les framboises?	<i>Do you like raspberries?</i>

EXERCISE ON THE USE OF THE ARTICLE—THE.

Men are mortal. Horses are useful. I like flowers. Learned men are modest. I like children. I like pretty children. I like apples. I like milk. My brother likes cream. I like French. My sister likes music. Do you like drawing? Do you like white roses? Yes, and red roses too. Do you like reading? Yes and painting also. Ladies like flowers, and gentlemen like horses. Boys like marbles, and girls like ribbons. Do you know General D.? Have you seen Dr. R.? Captain C. is very ill. Corporal S. is a brave soldier. I like France and England. My brother likes apples. My sister likes pears. My cousin likes strawberries, and my niece likes raspberries.

FIFTH LESSON.

When the *article simple the* is used with the preposition *de* (of or from) we call it *article composé*, or *contracté*, compound, or contracted article, and is rendered in French as follows:

of the or from the	du*	before all nouns masculine, singular
	de la	before all nouns feminine, singular
	des †	before all nouns plural
	de l'	is used instead of du, or de la, before all nouns singular, beginning with a vowel, or h mute
je parle, I speak	du père	of the father
	du fils	of the son
	du frère	of the brother
	du cousin, m.	of the cousin, m.
	du neveu	of the nephew
	du garçon	of the boy
	du cheval de mon frère	of my brother's horse
	du chien de mon cousin	of my cousin's dog
	du maître de musique	of the music master
	du jardin de mon père	of my father's garden

* We say *du*, instead of *de le*† We say *des* instead of *de les**du père* and not *de le père**des enfants* and not *de les enfants*

je viens, I come	du marché de Norwich	from Norwich market
	du bal de Monsieur N.	from Mr. N.'s ball
	du concert	from the concert
	du théâtre	from the theatre
	du salon de Madame L.	from Mrs. L.'s drawing room
	du jardin de Monsieur F.	from Mr. F.'s garden
	du monument de Nelson	from Nelson's monument
	du vaisseau de mon frère	from my brother's ship
	du verger de mon oncle	from my uncle's orchard
	du champ de mon frère	from my brother's field

SIXTH LESSON.

je parle, I speak	de la mère de Marie	of Maria's mother
	de la fille de Madame A.	of Mrs. A.'s daughter
	de la sœur de Mademoi- selle B.	of Miss B.'s sister
	de la nièce de Monsieur D.	of Mr. D.'s niece
	de la cousine de mon ami	of my friend's cousin
	de la tante de Guillaume	of William's aunt
	de la Princesse Royale	of the Princess Royal
	de la domestique de ma mère	of my mother's servant
	de la marraine de ma sœur	of my sister's godmother
	de la filleule de mon frère	of my brother's goddaughter
je viens, I come	de la ville	from the town
	de la campagne	from the country
	de la mer noire	from the Black Sea
	de la rivière	from the river
	de la prairie de mon père	from my father's meadow
	de la boutique de Mon- sieur H.	from Mr. H.'s shop
	de la banque d'Angleterre	from the bank of England
	de la salle de danse	from the dancing room
	de la salle à manger	from the dining room
	de la chambre à coucher	from the bed room

SEVENTH LESSON.

des hommes	from the men
des femmes	of the women

des enfants	<i>from the children</i>
des garçons	<i>from the boys</i>
des filles	<i>from the girls</i>
des rois	<i>from the kings</i>
des reines	<i>from the queens</i>
des princes	<i>from the princes</i>
des princesses	<i>from the princesses</i>
des arbres	<i>of the trees</i>
des champs	<i>from the fields</i>
des jardins	<i>from the gardens</i>
des montagnes	<i>from the mountains</i>
des animaux	<i>of the animals</i>
des chevaux	<i>of the horses</i>
des fermes	<i>from the farms</i>
des fermiers	<i>of the farmers</i>
des soldats	<i>of the soldiers</i>
des matelots	<i>of the sailors</i>
des écoles	<i>from the schools</i>
des écoliers	<i>of the scholars</i>
des messieurs	<i>of the gentlemen</i>
des dames	<i>of the ladies</i>
des demoiselles	<i>from the young ladies</i>
des maîtres	<i>from the masters</i>
des élèves	<i>from the pupils</i>
des livres	<i>of the books</i>
des plumes	<i>of the pens</i>
des crayons	<i>of the pencils</i>
des ardoises	<i>of the slates</i>

EIGHTH LESSON.

de l'enfant	<i>from the child</i>
de l'âme <i>f.</i>	<i>from the soul</i>
de l'ami <i>m.</i>	<i>of the friend</i>
de l'ennemi <i>m.</i>	<i>from the enemy</i>
de l'île <i>f.</i>	<i>from the island or isle</i>
de l'est <i>m.</i>	<i>from the east</i>
de l'ouest <i>m.</i>	<i>from the west</i>
de l'opéra <i>m.</i>	<i>from the opera</i>
de l'école <i>f.</i>	<i>from the school</i>
de l'écolier <i>m.</i>	<i>from the scholar</i>
de l'église <i>f.</i>	<i>from the church</i>
de l'exposition <i>f.</i>	<i>from the exhibition</i>

de l'opposition	<i>from the opposition</i>
de l'approbation	<i>from the approbation</i>
de l'occasion	<i>of the occasion or opportunity</i>
de l'officier	<i>from the officer</i>
de l'amiral	<i>of the admiral</i>
de l'œil	<i>from the eye</i>
de l'oreille	<i>from the ear</i>
de l'orgueil	<i>of the pride</i>
de l'honneur	<i>of the honour</i>
de l'humanité	<i>of the humanity</i>
de l'harmonie	<i>of the harmony</i>
de l'habit	<i>of the coat</i>
de l'habitant	<i>of the inhabitant</i>
de l'habitation	<i>from the habitation or abode</i>
de l'habitude	<i>from the habit or custom</i>
de l'haleine	<i>from the breath</i>
de l'herbe	<i>from the herb or grass</i>
de l'héliotrope	<i>from the heliotrope</i>

EXERCISE ON THE COMPOUND ARTICLE—OF THE OR FROM THE.

I speak of my father's house. I speak of my mother's carriage, of the King, of the Queen, of the princes, of the children, of the boy, of the girl, of the music master, of the french master. I come from the concert. I come from the ball. I come from Mr. N.'s ball. From Mr. F.'s garden. From Mrs. L.'s drawing room. From my father's field. From my mother's library. From the bank. From Mr. Gurney's bank. From the theatre. From Norwich theatre. From my uncle's orchard. From the monument. I come from school. I come from Mrs. B.'s school. I come from church. I come from the exhibition.

NINTH LESSON.

When the *article simple* *the* is used with the preposition à, (to or at) we call it *article composé*, compound article, and is rendered in French as follows:—

to the or at the	{	au* before all nouns masculine singular
		à la before all nouns feminine singular
		aux† before all nouns plural
		à l' is used instead of <i>au</i> or <i>à la</i> , before all nouns singular beginning with a vowel or <i>h</i> mute

* We say *au* instead of *à le*
† We say *aux* instead of *à les*

au père and not *à le père*
aux enfants and not *à les enfants*.

<i>j'ai parlé</i> <i>I have spoken</i>	{	au père de mon ami	<i>to my friend's father</i>
		au frère de Monsieur L.	<i>to Mr. L.'s brother</i>
		au Commandant en chef	<i>to the Commander in Chief</i>
		au Général B.	<i>to General B.</i>
		au jardinier de mon frère	<i>to my brother's gardener</i>
<i>j'ai été</i> <i>I have been</i>	{	au jardin de mon cousin	<i>to my cousin's garden</i>
		au champ de mon oncle	<i>to my uncle's field</i>
		au concert	<i>to the concert</i>
		au théâtre	<i>to the theatre</i>
		au bal de Monsieur N.	<i>to Mr. N.'s ball</i>
<i>j'ai parlé</i> <i>I have spoken</i>	{	à la mère de mon ami	<i>to my friend's mother</i>
		à la sœur de Monsieur L.	<i>to Mr. L.'s sister</i>
		à la reine d'Angleterre	<i>to the Queen of England</i>
		à la cousine de Monsieur B.	<i>to Mr. B.'s cousin f.</i>
		à la tante de Mademoiselle C.	<i>to Miss C.'s aunt</i>
<i>j'ai été</i> <i>I have been</i>	{	à la chambre à coucher de mon frère	<i>to my brother's bed room</i>
		à la danse de Mademoiselle D.	<i>to Miss D.'s dance</i>
		à la chasse	<i>shooting</i>
		à la pêche	<i>fishing</i>
		à la salle de danse	<i>to the dancing room</i>

TENTH LESSON.

aux hommes	<i>to the men</i>	aux soldats	<i>to the soldiers</i>
aux femmes	<i>to the women</i>	aux matelots	<i>to the sailors</i>
aux enfants	<i>to the children</i>	à l'homme	<i>to the man</i>
aux garçons	<i>to the boys</i>	à l'ami	<i>to the friend</i>
aux filles	<i>to the girls</i>	à l'enfant	<i>to the child</i>
aux animaux	<i>to the animals</i>	à l'animal	<i>to the animal</i>
aux oiseaux	<i>to the birds</i>	à l'oiseau	<i>to the bird</i>
aux chevaux	<i>to the horses</i>	à l'école	<i>to school</i>
aux généraux	<i>to the generals</i>	à l'église	<i>to church</i>
aux officiers	<i>to the officers</i>	à l'exposition	<i>to the exhibition</i>

EXERCISE ON THE COMPOUND ARTICLE—TO THE *or* AT THE.

I have spoken to the father, to the mother, and to the children. I
j'ai parlé

have given money to the boy, to the girl, and to the servants. Have
 you spoken to the King, to the Queen, and to the officers. I have
 not spoken to the King, but I have spoken to the General, and to the
 officers. Have you given money to the servant? Did you go to
 church? Did you go to school? Did you go to the concert? Have
 you been to the opera? I have been to the concert, to the ball, and
 to the opera. [I am going] to church. My brother [is going] to
 school, and my sister [is going] to the ball.

ELEVENTH LESSON.

When a substantive is taken in a partitive sense, that is to say, when it represents a part or portion of a whole, it must be, in French, preceded by the article *du, de la, des, or de l'*, some or any.

EXAMPLES.

du pain et du fromage	<i>bread and cheese</i>
de la viande	<i>some meat</i>
des œufs et du lard	<i>eggs and bacon</i>
de l'or et de l'argent	<i>gold and silver</i>

Some or *any*, either expressed or understood in English, must, in French, be repeated before every substantive taken in a partitive sense; it is rendered as follows:

<i>some</i> or <i>any</i> †	{	du *	<i>before all nouns masculine singular</i>
		de la	<i>before all nouns feminine singular</i>
		des †	<i>before all nouns plural</i>
		de l'	<i>is used instead of du or de la before all nouns singular, beginning with a vowel, or h mute</i>
donnez-moi, give me	{	du pain	<i>some bread</i>
		du vin	<i>some wine</i>
		du beurre	<i>some butter</i>
		du fromage	<i>some cheese</i>
		du sel	<i>some salt</i>
		du poivre	<i>some pepper</i>
			s'il vous plaît, if you please

* We say *du* instead of *de le* *du pain* and not *de le pain*

† We say *des* instead of *de les* *des pommes* and not *de les pommes*

‡ See Twelfth Lesson, on Idiomatical and Useful Phrases, Part III.

donnez-moi, give me.

du vinaigre	<i>some vinegar</i>
du thé	<i>some tea</i>
du café	<i>some coffee</i>
du lait	<i>some milk</i>
du sucre	<i>some sugar</i>
du bœuf	<i>some beef</i>
du mouton	<i>some mutton</i>
du jus	<i>some gravy</i>
du porc	<i>some pork</i>
du jambon	<i>some ham</i>
du lard	<i>some bacon</i>
de la viande	<i>some meat</i>
de la soupe	<i>some soup</i>
de la rôtie	<i>some toast</i>
de la croûte	<i>some crust</i>
de la mie	<i>some crumb</i>
de la crème	<i>some cream</i>
de la sauce	<i>some sauce</i>
de la bière	<i>some beer</i>
de la salade	<i>some salad</i>
de la farine	<i>some flour</i>
de la moutarde	<i>some mustard</i>
de la gelée	<i>some jelly</i>

s'il vous plaît, if you please.

TWELFTH LESSON.

voulez-vous me donner, will you give me

des pommes, <i>f</i>	<i>some apples</i>
des pommes de terre, <i>f</i> .	<i>some potatoes</i>
des poires, <i>f</i> .	<i>some pears</i>
des prunes, <i>f</i> .	<i>some plums</i>
des pêches, <i>f</i> .	<i>some peaches</i>
des abricots, <i>m</i> .	<i>some apricots</i>
des amandes, <i>f</i> .	<i>some almonds</i>
des groseilles à maquereau, <i>f</i> .	<i>some gooseberries</i>
des groseilles, <i>f</i> .	<i>some currants</i>
des fraises, <i>f</i> .	<i>some strawberries</i>
des framboises, <i>f</i> .	<i>some raspberries</i>
des cerises, <i>f</i> .	<i>some cherries</i>
des noix, <i>f</i> .	<i>some walnuts</i>
des noisettes, <i>f</i> .	<i>some nuts</i>
des châtaignes, <i>f</i> .	<i>some chestnuts</i>

voulez-vous me donner, will you give me

des marrons, <i>m.</i>	some large chestnuts
des marrons-d'Inde, <i>m.</i>	some horse chestnuts
des avelines, <i>f.</i>	some filberts
des homards (<i>asp.</i>) <i>m.</i>	some lobsters
des huîtres (<i>mute</i>) <i>f.</i>	some oysters
des harengs (<i>asp.</i>) <i>m.</i>	some herrings
des oiseaux, <i>m.</i>	some birds
des chandelles, <i>f.</i>	some candles
de l'or, <i>m.</i>	some gold
de l'argent, <i>m.</i>	some money or silver
de l'encre, <i>f.</i>	some ink
de l'honneur, <i>m.</i>	some honour
de l'humanité, <i>f.</i>	some humanity
de l'harmonie, <i>f.</i>	some harmony
de l'ordre, <i>m.</i>	some order
de l'eau, <i>f.</i>	some water
de l'eau-de-vie, <i>f.</i>	some brandy

EXERCISE ON—SOME, or ANY.

We have some wine for you, some beer for your sister, and some money for your brother. Give me some bread, some cheese, and some mustard. Have you any money in your purse? Yes, I have some gold and silver. Have you any fruit in your garden? Yes, we have some apples, pears, plums, and strawberries. [Is there] any wine in the decanter? Yes, [there is] wine in the decanter, and water in the jug. Is there any brandy in the bottle? Yes, there is brandy in the bottle, water in the kettle, and glasses on the table.

nous avons vin, m. pour bière, f. votre
donnez-moi pain, m. fromage, m.
moutarde, f. dans bourse, f.
— m.
carafon, m. il y a y a-t-il eau
cruche, f. eau-de-vie bouteille, f.
bouilloire, f. verres sur — f.

THIRTEENTH LESSON.

When a substantive, taken in a partitive sense, (that is to say, representing a part or portion of the whole) is preceded by an adjective, the article *le, the*, is suppressed, and instead of *du, de la, des, de l'*, we use only the preposition *de*.

j'ai du pain
 j'ai de bon pain

I have some bread
 I have good bread

nous avons <i>du</i> vin	<i>we have some wine</i>
nous avons <i>de</i> bon vin	<i>we have good wine</i>
vous avez <i>des</i> cigares	<i>you have some cigars</i>
vous avez <i>de</i> bons cigares	<i>you have good cigars</i>
ce sont <i>des</i> fleurs	<i>these are flowers</i>
ce sont <i>de</i> belles fleurs	<i>these are fine flowers</i>
ce sont <i>de</i> beaux chevaux	<i>these are fine horses</i>
nous avons <i>des</i> amis	<i>we have friends</i>
nous avons <i>de</i> vrais amis	<i>we have true friends</i>
avez-vous <i>des</i> livres?	<i>have you any books?</i>
avez-vous <i>de</i> bon livres?	<i>have you any good books?</i>
ce sont <i>de</i> jolis livres	<i>these are pretty books</i>
ce sont <i>de</i> bons cigares	<i>these are good cigars</i>

EXERCISE ON—SOME, OR ANY—BEFORE AN ADJECTIVE.

I have bread and cheese; I have some good bread and [good] cheese. We have some milk; we have some good milk. We have some cream; we have very good cream. Have you any brandy? Have you some good brandy? We have some apples in our garden; we have beautiful apples in our garden. Have you any friends in London? Have you any good friends here? I have some roses in my garden; I have some beautiful roses in my garden. I have seen some ladies in the drawing room. I have seen some beautiful ladies in the drawing room.

FOURTEENTH LESSON.

In negative sentences, we suppress the article *le, the*, and instead of *du, de la, des, de l'*, we use only the preposition *de*; and if the substantive begins with a vowel, or *h* mute, *d'* instead of *de*.

<i>du</i> pain	<i>some bread, or any bread</i>
<i>pas de</i> pain	<i>no bread, or not any bread</i>
<i>du</i> vin	<i>some wine, or any wine</i>
<i>pas de</i> vin	<i>no wine, or not any wine</i>
<i>de la</i> viande	<i>some meat, or any meat</i>
<i>pas de</i> viande	<i>no meat, or not any meat</i>

<i>de la bière</i>	<i>some beer, or any beer</i>
<i>pas de bière</i>	<i>no beer, or not any beer</i>
<i>des pommes</i>	<i>some apples, or any apples</i>
<i>pas de pommes</i>	<i>no apples, or not any apples</i>
<i>des chevaux</i>	<i>some horses, or any horses</i>
<i>pas de chevaux</i>	<i>no horses, or not any horses</i>
<i>de l'or</i>	<i>some gold, or any gold</i>
<i>pas d'or</i>	<i>no gold, or not any gold</i>
<i>de l'argent</i>	<i>some money, or any money</i>
<i>pas d'argent</i>	<i>no money, or not any money</i>
<i>des amis</i>	<i>some friends</i>
<i>pas d'amis</i>	<i>no friends, or not any friends</i>
<i>des œufs</i>	<i>some eggs</i>
<i>pas d'œufs</i>	<i>no eggs, or not any eggs</i>
<i>j'ai du pain</i>	<i>I have some bread</i>
<i>je n'ai pas de pain</i>	<i>I have no bread</i>
<i>nous avons du fromage</i>	<i>we have some cheese</i>
<i>nous n'avons pas de fromage</i>	<i>we have no cheese</i>
<i>vous avez de la persévérance</i>	<i>you have perseverance</i>
<i>vous n'avez pas de persévérance</i>	<i>you have no perseverance</i>
<i>j'ai de la patience</i>	<i>I have patience</i>
<i>je n'ai pas de patience</i>	<i>I have no patience</i>
<i>nous avons des pommes</i>	<i>we have apples</i>
<i>nous n'avons pas de pommes</i>	<i>we have no apples</i>
<i>vous avez des amis</i>	<i>you have friends</i>
<i>vous n'avez pas d'amis</i>	<i>you have no friends</i>
<i>il a de l'argent</i>	<i>he has money</i>
<i>il n'a pas d'argent</i>	<i>he has no money</i>

EXERCISE ON—SOME, OR ANY—IN NEGATIVE SENTENCES.

I have some gold ; I have no gold. My brother has some money ;
my brother has no money. My sister has neither gold nor silver.
We have patience and perseverance ; we have no patience ; he has no
perseverance. He has neither patience nor perseverance. We have
pens and ink, but no paper ; we have neither pens, [nor] ink, nor
paper, m. He has a watch ; he has no watch. We shall have some
money if we are good boys ; we shall have no money if we are not
good boys. We have neither bread nor butter.

RECAPITULATORY LESSON ON THE ARTICLE.

		mas. sing.	fem. sing.	plural	before a vowel or h mute		
					l'	instead of le or la	
com- pound	simple the	le	la	les	de l'	„	du „ de la
	of or from the	du	de la	des	à l'	„	au „ à la
	to or at the	au	à la	aux	de l'	„	du „ de la
	some or any	du	de la	des	d'	„	de
	not any or no	de	de	de			

le père	<i>the father</i>
les pères	<i>the fathers</i>
du père	<i>of the father</i>
des pères	<i>of the fathers</i>
au père	<i>to the father</i>
aux pères	<i>to the fathers</i>
la mère	<i>the mother</i>
les mères	<i>the mothers</i>
de la mère	<i>of the mother</i>
des mères	<i>of the mothers</i>
à la mère	<i>to the mother</i>
aux mères	<i>to the mothers</i>
l'enfant	<i>the child</i>
les enfants	<i>the children</i>
de l'enfant	<i>of the child</i>
des enfants	<i>of the children</i>
à l'enfant	<i>to the child</i>
aux enfants	<i>to the children</i>
du pain	<i>some bread</i>
pas de pain	<i>no bread or not any bread</i>
de la viande	<i>some meat</i>
pas de viande	<i>not any meat or no meat</i>
des pommes de terre	<i>some potatoes</i>
pas de pommes de terre	<i>no potatoes</i>
de l'eau	<i>some water</i>
pas d'eau	<i>no water</i>

REMARKS ON THE USE OF THE ARTICLE.

We have said (page 8) that there were three cases or instances, in which the article *the* must be used in French, when it is not used in English :—

1st. before substantives generalized

2nd. before substantives particularized

3rd. before substantives individualized

We may add here that, if the substantives are not in one of the above *three cases*, the article *the* is not used in French any more than it is in English.

It follows from this rule that the *article* is not used before a substantive preceded either by the preposition *de* of, or by an adverb of quantity.

EXERCISE.

J'aime les fleurs	<i>I am fond of flowers</i>
donnez-moi des fleurs	<i>give me some flowers</i>
nous avons beaucoup de fleurs	<i>we have a great many flowers</i>
donnez-nous une corbeille de fleurs	<i>give us a basket of flowers</i>
mon frère aime les chevaux blancs	<i>my brother likes white horses</i>
nous avons des chevaux blancs	<i>we have white horses</i>
nous avons plusieurs chevaux blancs	<i>we have several white horses</i>
ma sœur n'aime pas la bière	<i>my sister does not like beer</i>
elle préfère l'eau	<i>she prefers water</i>
donnez-lui de l'eau	<i>give her some water</i>
donnez-lui un verre d'eau	<i>give her a glass of water</i>
ne buvez pas tant d'eau	<i>do not drink so much water</i>
l'or et l'argent sont nécessaires	<i>gold and silver are necessary</i>
nous avons de l'or et de l'argent	<i>we have gold and silver</i>
nous avons beaucoup d'or et d'argent	<i>we have a great deal of gold and silver</i>
la soie est très chère cette année	<i>silk is very dear this year</i>
j'ai acheté de la soie	<i>I have bought some silk</i>
j'ai acheté une robe de soie	<i>I have bought a silk dress</i>
nous avons acheté beaucoup de soie	<i>we have bought a great deal of silk</i>
aimez-vous les pommes	<i>do you like apples</i>
avez-vous des pommes	<i>have you any apples?</i>
j'ai mangé plusieurs pommes	<i>I have eaten several apples</i>
j'ai apporté un panier de pommes	<i>I have brought a basket of apples</i>
nous avons très peu de pommes	<i>we have very few apples</i>
je n'aime pas beaucoup les pommes	<i>I am not very fond of apples</i>
je préfère les fraises	<i>I prefer strawberries</i>
et moi aussi	<i>so do I</i>
la France est un beau pays	<i>France is a beautiful country</i>

j'aime la France mieux que l'An- *I like France better than England*
 gleterre
 avez-vous été en France? *have you been to France?*
 mon frère est revenu de France *my brother has returned from*
France
 il est maintenant en Angleterre *he is now in England*

GENERAL EXERCISE ON THE ARTICLE.

Men are mortal. Children are playful. Horses are very useful.
mortels folâtres utiles
 Bread and water are necessary to man. Flowers are very pretty in
necessaires jolies
 the spring. I like flowers. My brother likes French, and my sister
été m. j' aime François m.
 likes music. [Do you like] roses? Yes, [I am very fond of] roses.
musique f. aimez-vous j' aime beaucoup
 I like red roses better than white. Have you any flowers in your
rouges — mieux que blanches
 garden? Yes, we have beautiful flowers. Have you any fruit? Yes,
belles — m
 we have apples, plums, pears, apricots, strawberries, raspberries, and
 all kinds of fruit. Do you know Captain P.? He has brought a
toutes espèces connaissez-vous il a apporté
 basket of fruit for you. Give me some bread; give me a piece of
panier m. donnez-moi pain m. morceaux m.
 bread. Give me some beer. Give me a glass of beer. We have some
bière f. verre m.
 beef; we have a piece of beef. We have meat for supper; we have
bœuf m. viande f.
 a piece of meat for supper. we have money; we have [a great deal]
beaucoup
 of money. We have no money now. His purse is full of money.
maintenant sa bourse pleine
 His garden is full of flowers. My sister has bought some silk. My
son plein acheté soie f.
 sister has bought a silk dress. I have bought some straw; I have
paille f.
 bought a straw bonnet. Have you any money? No, I have no
chapeau m.
 money.

OF SUBSTANTIVES OR NOUNS.

A substantive or noun is the name of a person or a thing.

There are only two genders in French; all substantives therefore are masculine or feminine.

We have said that the article *le, la, les*, shows or indicates the gender and number of nouns, we will say here

that the word *a* or *an*, *un*, *une* (which we call *adjectif numéral*, numeral adjective) is used to show or indicate the gender of nouns, and is declined as follows:—

	<i>a or an</i>	$\begin{cases} \text{un m.} \\ \text{une f.}^* \end{cases}$
<i>of or from</i>	$\begin{cases} a \text{ or an} \\ \end{cases}$	$\begin{cases} \text{d'un m.} \\ \text{d'une f.} \end{cases}$
<i>to or at</i>	$\begin{cases} a \text{ or an} \\ \end{cases}$	$\begin{cases} \text{à un m.} \\ \text{à une f.} \end{cases}$

FIRST LESSON.

un homme	<i>a man</i>	une jument	<i>a mare</i>
une femme	<i>a woman</i>	un chien	<i>a dog</i>
à un homme	<i>to a man</i>	un chat	<i>a cat</i>
à une femme	<i>to a woman</i>	un jardin	<i>a garden</i>
d'un homme	<i>of a man</i>	une maison	<i>a house</i>
d'une femme	<i>of a woman</i>	une porte	<i>a door</i>
un garçon	<i>a boy</i>	une fenêtre	<i>a window</i>
une fille	<i>a girl</i>	un volet	<i>a shutter</i>
un cheval	<i>a horse</i>		

SECOND LESSON.

ROOM AND FURNITURE.

une chambre	<i>a room, a chamber</i>
une salle à manger	<i>a dining room</i>
un salon	<i>a drawing room</i>
une salle	<i>a parlour</i>
les meubles	<i>the furniture</i>
une table	<i>a table</i>
une conzole	<i>a stand</i>
un pupître	<i>a writing desk</i>
un banc	<i>a form, bank, bench</i>
une chaise	<i>a chair</i>
un fauteuil	<i>an arm chair</i>
un sofa	<i>a sofa</i>
une causeuse	<i>a small sofa</i>
une bergère	<i>a settee</i>

* See Twenty-first Lesson, on Idiomatical and Useful Phrases, Part, III.

un tabouret	<i>a stool</i>
une chambre à coucher	<i>a bedroom</i>
un lit	<i>a bed</i>
un matelas	<i>a mattress</i>
un lit de plume	<i>a featherbed</i>
un traversin	<i>a bolster</i>
un oreiller	<i>a pillow</i>
une taie d'oreiller	<i>a pillow-case</i>
une paire de draps	<i>a pair of sheets</i>
une couverture	<i>a blanket</i>
une courte-pointe	<i>a counterpane</i>
un rideau	<i>a curtain</i>
un bois de lit	<i>a bedstead</i>
une garde-robes	<i>a wardrobe</i>
une commode	<i>a chest of drawers</i>
un tiroir	<i>a drawer</i>
une aiguière	<i>an ewer</i>
une cuvette	<i>a wash-hand basin</i>
une serviette	<i>a towel</i>
un essuie-main	<i>a towel</i>
un cabinet	<i>a closet</i>
un cabinet de toilette	<i>a dressing room</i>
un miroir	<i>a looking glass</i>
une brosse à cheveux	<i>a hair brush</i>
un peigne	<i>a comb</i>
une brosse à dents	<i>a tooth brush</i>
une brosse à ongles	<i>a nail brush</i>

THIRD LESSON.

OF THE TABLE.

une table	<i>a table</i>
une nappe	<i>a table cloth</i>
une serviette	<i>a dinner napkin, or ser viette</i>
un plat	<i>a dish</i>
une assiette	<i>a plate</i>
une soupière	<i>a soup tureen</i>
un couteau	<i>a knife</i>
une fourchette	<i>a fork</i>
une cuiller	<i>a spoon</i>
une cuiller à thé (à café)	<i>a tea spoon (a coffee spoon ;</i>
une salière	<i>salt cellar</i>

une poivrière	}	<i>a pepper box</i>
un vinaigrier		<i>a vinegar cruets</i>
une burette		
un huilier		<i>an oil cruets</i>
un moutardier		<i>a mustard pot</i>
une théière		<i>a tea pot</i>
une cafetière		<i>a coffee pot</i>
une tasse		<i>a cup</i>
une soucoupe		<i>a saucer</i>
un sucrier		<i>a sugar basin</i>
les pincettes, <i>f.</i>		<i>the sugar tongs</i>
un bassin		<i>a basin, or slop basin</i>
un plateau		<i>a tray</i>
une boîte à thé		<i>a tea caddy</i>
une aiguière		<i>a cream jug, or an ewer</i>
une urne		<i>an urn</i>
une bouilloire		<i>a tea kettle</i>
la cuisine		<i>the kitchen</i>
la cuisinière		<i>the cook (woman)</i>
le cuisinier		<i>the cook (man)</i>

FOURTH LESSON.

FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF NOUNS.

The plural of nouns is formed by adding an *s* to the singular.

EXAMPLES.

<i>singular.</i>		<i>plural.</i>	
le père	<i>the father</i>	les pères	<i>the fathers</i>
la mère	<i>the mother</i>	les mères	<i>the mothers</i>
l'enfant	<i>the child</i>	les enfants	<i>the children</i>

But there are some exceptions to this rule.

1st. Nouns ending in the singular with *s*, *x*, or *z*, do not change in the plural.

<i>singular.</i>		<i>plural.</i>	
un fils	<i>a son</i>	deux fils	<i>two sons</i>
un bras	<i>an arm</i>	deux bras	<i>two arms</i>
un nez	<i>a nose</i>	des nez	<i>some noses</i>
une croix	<i>a cross</i>	des croix	<i>some crosses</i>
une noix	<i>a walnut</i>	des noix	<i>some walnuts</i>

2nd. Nouns ending in the singular with *au*, or *eu*, take *x* in the plural.

<i>singular.</i>		<i>plural.</i>	
un tonneau	<i>a cask</i>	deux tonneaux	<i>two casks</i>
un chapeau	<i>a hat</i>	trois chapeaux	<i>three hats</i>
un neveu	<i>a nephew</i>	deux neveux	<i>two nephews</i>
un feu	<i>a fire</i>	deux feux	<i>two fires</i>
un jeu	<i>a game</i>	trois jeux	<i>three games</i>

3rd. The six following nouns, ending in *ou*, also take *x* in the plural.

<i>singular.</i>		<i>plural.</i>	
un bijou	<i>a jewel</i>	des bijoux	<i>some jewels</i>
un caillou	<i>a pebble</i>	des cailloux	<i>some pebbles</i>
un chou	<i>a cabbage</i>	des choux	<i>cabbages</i>
un genou	<i>a knee</i>	deux genoux	<i>two knees</i>
un hibou	<i>an owl</i>	des hiboux	<i>some owls</i>
un joujou	<i>a toy</i>	des joujoux	<i>some toys</i>

Any other noun ending in the singular with *ou*, takes an *s* in the plural.

4th. Nouns ending in the singular with *al* or *aïl*, form their plural by changing *al* or *aïl* into *aux*.

<i>singular.</i>		<i>plural.</i>	
un cheval	<i>a horse</i>	deux chevaux	<i>two horses</i>
un général	<i>a general</i>	trois généraux	<i>three generals</i>
un maréchal	<i>a marshal</i>	deux maréchaux	<i>two marshals</i>
un cardinal	<i>a cardinal</i>	deux cardinaux	<i>two cardinals</i>
un amiral	<i>an admiral</i>	quatre amiraux	<i>four admirals</i>
un caporal	<i>a corporal</i>	trois caporaux	<i>three corporals</i>
un journal	<i>a newspaper</i>	deux journaux	<i>two newspapers</i>
un bail	<i>a lease</i>	deux baux	<i>two leases</i>
le corail	<i>the coral</i>	ces coraux	<i>these corals</i>
l'émail	<i>the enamel</i>	ces émaux	<i>those enamels</i>

Bal, *ball*, évantail, *fan*, gouvernail, *helm*, or *rudder* are excepted, and take *s* for their plural.

<i>singular.</i>		<i>plural.</i>	
un bal	<i>a ball</i>	deux bals	<i>two balls</i>
un évantail	<i>a fan</i>	trois éventails	<i>three fans</i>
un gouvernail	<i>a helm or rudder</i>	les gouvernails	<i>the helms or rudders</i>

The three following nouns have no rules for their plural, it is formed thus :

	<i>singular.</i>		<i>plural.</i>
ciel	<i>sky or heaven</i>	les cieux	<i>the heavens</i>
œil	<i>eye</i>	mes yeux	<i>my eyes</i>
aïeul	<i>grand-father</i>	nos aïeux	<i>our forefathers</i>

EXERCISE ON THE PLURAL OF SUBSTANTIVES.

A table, two tables. A book, three books. My pencil, my pencils.
 — f. *here, m. mon crayon, m. mes.*
 My pen, your pens. My horse, my horses. A hat, two hats. The
ma plume, f. vos mon mes m. deux
 knife, the knives. An arm, two arms. A stocking, two stockings.
couteau, m. bras, m. bas, m.
 A mouse, some mice. A walnut, some walnuts. A knight, two
souris, f. noix, f. chevalier
 knights. A cross, some crosses. The crosses of the knights. The
croix, f.
 flowers of the gardens. The trees of the orchards. An officer and a
arbre verger
 horse, the officers and the horses. A general, two generals. A car-
 dinal, two cardinals. An hospital, the hospitals of the army. A ball,
bal, m.
 three balls. A fan, two fans. A fire, two fires. A jewel, some jew-
éventail, m. feu, m. bijou, m.
 els. A pickpocket, several pickpockets. A picture, some pictures.
filou, m. tableau, m.
 A boat, the boats of the sailors. A ship, a fleet of thirty ships. A
bateau, m. matelot vaisseau, m. flotte f. trente
 bird, several birds. Give me an apple, give me some apples. Give
oiseau, m. plusieurs donnez-moi pomme, f. donnez-
 him a glass of wine, give him two glasses of wine. Give us the
lui verre, m. vin, m. donnez-nous
 knives, the spoons, and the forks.
couteau cuiller fourchette

FIFTH LESSON.

TREES AND FRUIT TREES.

un arbre	<i>a tree</i>	un hêtre	<i>a beech tree</i>
un arbre fruitier	<i>a fruit tree</i>	un peuplier	<i>a poplar</i>
un chêne	<i>an oak</i>	un tremble	<i>an aspen tree</i>
un orme	<i>an elm</i>	un bouleau	<i>a birch tree</i>
un ormeau	<i>a young elm</i>	un charme	<i>a yoke-elm</i>
un frêne	<i>an ash tree</i>	un érable	<i>a maple tree</i>

un tilleul	<i>a linden tree or lime tree</i>	un pêcher	<i>a peach tree</i>
un sapin	<i>a fir tree</i>	un noyer	<i>a walnut tree</i>
un if	<i>a yew tree</i>	un noisetier	<i>a hazel tree</i>
un pommier	<i>an apple tree</i>	un arbre fruitier	<i>a fruit tree</i>
un poirier	<i>a pear tree</i>	un avelinier	<i>a filbert tree</i>
un prunier	<i>a plum tree</i>	un châtaignier	<i>a chestnut tree</i>
un cerisier	<i>a cherry tree</i>	un marronnier	<i>a large chestnut tree</i>
un abricotier	<i>an apricot tree</i>		

SIXTH LESSON.

OF FLOWERS.

une fleur	<i>a flower</i>	un muguet	<i>lily of the valley</i>
une rose	<i>a rose</i>	un lis	<i>a lily</i>
un rosier	<i>a rose tree or rose bush</i>	un pavot	<i>a poppy</i>
une violette	<i>a violet</i>	un dahlia	<i>a dahlia</i>
une tulipe	<i>a tulip</i>	une héliotrope	<i>a heliotrope</i>
une primevère	<i>a primrose or cowslip</i>	un géranium	<i>a geranium</i>
une marguerite	<i>a daisy</i>	une pensée	<i>a heartsease or pansy</i>
une jacinthe	<i>a hyacinth</i>	un perce-neige	<i>a snowdrop</i>
un œillet carné	<i>a carnation</i>	un safran	<i>a crocus</i>
un œillet	<i>a pink</i>	réséda	<i>mignonette</i>
une jonquille	<i>a jonquil</i>	un bouquet	<i>a nosegay</i>
une renoncule	<i>a ranunculus</i>	une guirlande	<i>a garland</i>

SEVENTH LESSON.

OF FISHES.

un poisson	<i>a fish</i>	un barbeau	<i>a barbel</i>
une morue	<i>a cod</i>	un barbillon	<i>a little barbel</i>
une petite morue	<i>a codling</i>	une anguille	<i>an eel</i>
un saumon	<i>a salmon</i>	une alose	<i>a shad</i>
une truite	<i>a trout</i>	une paire de soles	<i>a pair of soles</i>
une truite saumonée	<i>a salmon trout</i>	une raie	<i>a skate</i>
une tanche	<i>a tench</i>	un éperlan	<i>a smelt</i>
une perche	<i>a perch</i>	un merlan	<i>a whiting</i>
un brochet	<i>a pike</i>	un homard, (asp.)	<i>a lobster</i>
		des huîtres (m.)	<i>some oysters</i>

une carpe	<i>a carp</i>	un maquereau	<i>a mackerel</i>
un gardon	<i>a roach</i>	des anchois	<i>anchovies</i>
un goujon	<i>a gudgeon</i>	des chevrettes	<i>shrimps</i>
un hareng (asp.)	<i>a herring</i>	des crevettes	<i>prawns</i>

EIGHTH LESSON.

OF INSECTS.

un insect	<i>an insect</i>	une punaise	<i>a bug</i>
une fourmi	<i>an ant</i>	une araignée	<i>a spider</i>
une abeille	<i>a bee</i>	une sangsue	<i>a leech</i>
une guêpe	<i>a wasp</i>	un limaçon	<i>a snail</i>
un frelon	<i>a hornet</i>	une limace	<i>a slug</i>
une chenille	<i>a caterpillar</i>	une mouche	<i>a fly</i>
un papillon	<i>a butterfly</i>	un moucheron	<i>a gnat</i>
un ver	<i>a worm</i>	une sauterelle	<i>a locust</i>
un ver-à-soie	<i>a silk-worm</i>	une cigale	<i>a grasshopper</i>
un ver-luisant	<i>a glow-worm</i>	un hanneton (asp)	<i>a maybug</i>
une puce	<i>a flea</i>		

NINTH LESSON.

TRADES AND PROFESSIONS.

un boulanger	<i>a baker</i>	un sellier	<i>a sadler</i>
un boucher	<i>a butcher</i>	un bourrelier	<i>a harness-maker</i>
un épicier	<i>a grocer</i>	un tonnelier	<i>a cooper</i>
un banquier	<i>a banker</i>	un coutelier	<i>a cutler</i>
un brasseur	<i>a brewer</i>	un armurier	<i>a gun-smith</i>
un tailleur	<i>a tailor</i>	un chapelier	<i>a hatter</i>
un tourneur	<i>a turner</i>	un teinturier	<i>a dyer</i>
un tanneur	<i>a tanner</i>	un fermier	<i>a farmer</i>
un pêcheur	<i>a fisherman</i>	un vitrier	<i>a glazier</i>
un imprimeur	<i>a printer</i>	un peintre	<i>a painter</i>
un relieur	<i>a bookbinder</i>	un jardinier	<i>a gardener</i>
un libraire	<i>a bookseller</i>	un pépiniériste	<i>a nurseryman</i>
un maçon	<i>a bricklayer</i>	un bottier	<i>a bootmaker</i>
un charron	<i>a cartwright</i>	un cordonnier	<i>a shoemaker</i>
un tisserand	<i>a weaver</i>	un chirurgien	<i>a surgeon</i>
un tapissier	<i>a upholsterer</i>	un médecin	<i>a physician</i>
un horloger	<i>a watchmaker</i>	un avocat	<i>a lawyer, bar-</i>
un ébéniste	<i>a cabinet maker</i>		<i>rister</i>

un menuisier	<i>a joiner</i>	un avoué	<i>a lawyer, attorney, solicitor</i>
un charpentier	<i>a carpenter</i>		
un carrossier	<i>a coach-maker</i>	un notaire	<i>a notary</i>

TENTH LESSON.

TITLES AND DIGNITIES.

un Empereur	<i>an Emperor</i>	un chanoine	<i>a canon</i>
une Impératrice	<i>an Empress</i>	un ecclésiastique	<i>a clergyman</i>
un Roi	<i>a King</i>	un officier	<i>an officer</i>
une Reine	<i>a Queen</i>	un colonel	<i>a colonel</i>
un prince	<i>a prince</i>	un lieutenant-colonel	<i>a lieutenant-colonel</i>
une princesse	<i>a princess</i>		
un duc	<i>a duke</i>	un major	<i>a major</i>
une duchesse	<i>a duchess</i>	un capitaine	<i>a captain</i>
un marquis	<i>a marquis</i>	un lieutenant	<i>a lieutenant</i>
une marquise	<i>a marchioness</i>	un sous-lieutenant	<i>an under-lieutenant</i>
un comte	<i>a count, or earl</i>		
une comtesse	<i>a countess</i>	un adjudant	<i>an adjutant</i>
un vicomte	<i>a viscount</i>	un sergent-major	<i>a sergeant-major</i>
une vicomtesse	<i>a viscountess</i>		
un baron	<i>a baron</i>	un sergent	<i>a sergeant</i>
une baronne	<i>a baroness</i>	un caporal	<i>a corporal</i>
un archevêque	<i>an archbishop</i>	un soldat	<i>a soldier</i>
un évêque	<i>a bishop</i>	un matelot	<i>a sailor</i>
un doyen	<i>a dean</i>		

ELEVENTH LESSON.

DIFFERENT PARTS OF THE HUMAN BODY.

la tête	<i>the head</i>	les favoris, m.	<i>the whiskers</i>
les cheveux, m.	<i>the hair (always used in the pl. in French)</i>	les moustaches, f.	<i>the moustachios</i>
		la bouche	<i>the mouth</i>
		les lèvres, f.	<i>the lips</i>
une belle chevelure, f.	<i>a beautiful head of hair</i>	la lèvre supérieure	<i>the upper lip</i>
les oreilles, f.	<i>the ears</i>	la lèvre inférieure	<i>the under lip</i>
le front	<i>the forehead</i>	les dents, f.	<i>the teeth</i>
les sourcils, m.	<i>the eyebrows, the brows</i>	les gencives, f.	<i>the gums</i>
les cils, m.	<i>the eye lashes</i>	les mâchoires, f.	<i>the jaws, the jaw bones</i>

les paupières, <i>f.</i>	<i>the eye lids</i>	la langue	<i>the tongue</i>
les yeux, <i>m.</i>	<i>the eyes</i>	la gorge	<i>the throat</i>
les prunelles, <i>f.</i>	<i>the eye balls, or apples of the eyes, or pupils</i>	le cou	<i>the neck</i>
		les épaules, <i>f.</i>	<i>the shoulders</i>
le nez	<i>the nose</i>	les bras, <i>m.</i>	<i>the arms</i>
les narines, <i>f.</i>	<i>the nostrils</i>	les coudes, <i>m.</i>	<i>the elbows</i>
le cartilage	<i>the cartilage</i>	les poignets, <i>m.</i>	<i>the wrists</i>
les joues, <i>f.</i>	<i>the cheeks</i>	les poings, <i>m.</i>	<i>the fists</i>
le menton	<i>the chin</i>	les mains, <i>f.</i>	<i>the hands</i>
la barbe	<i>the beard</i>	les doigts, <i>m.</i>	<i>the fingers</i>
les pouces, <i>m.</i>	<i>the thumbs</i>	les cuisses, <i>f.</i>	<i>the thighs</i>
les jointures, <i>f.</i>	<i>the knuckles</i>	les genoux, <i>m.</i>	<i>the knees</i>
les articulations, <i>f.</i>		les jambes, <i>f.</i>	<i>the legs</i>
les ongles	<i>the nails</i>	les mollets, <i>m.</i>	<i>the calf of the leg</i>
le corps	<i>the body</i>	les coude-pieds, <i>m.</i>	<i>the insteps</i>
la poitrine	<i>the chest</i>	les chevilles du pied, <i>f.</i>	<i>the ankles</i>
le sein	<i>the breast, the bosom</i>	les pieds, <i>m.</i>	<i>the feet</i>
le dos	<i>the back</i>	les orteils	<i>the toes</i>
les reins, <i>f.</i>	<i>the loins</i>	la plante des pieds	<i>the sole of the foot</i>
la taille	<i>the waist, shape, or figure</i>	les os, <i>m.</i>	<i>the bones</i>
la ceinture	<i>the waist</i>	les côtes, <i>f.</i>	<i>the ribs</i>
les côtés, <i>m.</i>	<i>the sides</i>	la peau	<i>the skin</i>
les hanches, <i>f.</i>	<i>the hips</i>	la face	<i>the face</i>
(<i>asp.</i>)		la figure	
		le visage	

TWELFTH LESSON.

PASSIONS, AFFECTIONS, AND SENSATIONS OF THE MIND.

l'ame	<i>the soul</i>	la volonté	<i>the will</i>
l'esprit	<i>the mind</i>	la bonne volonté	<i>good will</i>
l'amour	<i>(the) love</i>	la vérité	<i>truth</i>
l'amitié	<i>friendship</i>	le mensonge	<i>falsehood, un-</i>
la haine	<i>hatred</i>		<i>truth</i>
l'inimitié	<i>enmity</i>	la fausseté	<i>falsehood</i>
la sagesse	<i>wisdom</i>	la tromperie	<i>deceit</i>
la raison	<i>reason</i>	le plaisir	<i>pleasure</i>
le bon sens	<i>good sense</i>	la joie	<i>joy</i>

le sens commun	<i>common sense</i>	le chagrin	<i>sorrow</i>
la folie	<i>folly</i>	la douleur	<i>grief, pain</i>
la bêtise	<i>silliness</i>	la pitié	<i>pity</i>
la stupidité	<i>stupidity</i>	la piété	<i>piety</i>
l'espérance	<i>hope</i>	l'oisiveté	<i>idleness</i>
l'espoir	<i>hope</i>	la paresse	<i>laziness</i>
le désespoir	<i>despair</i>	la diligence	<i>diligence</i>
l'envie	<i>envy</i>	l'activité	<i>activity</i>
la bonté	<i>goodness or kindness</i>	le désir	<i>desire</i>
		la crainte	<i>fear</i>
la méchanceté	<i>wickedness</i>	la frayeur	<i>fright</i>
la hardiesse	<i>boldness</i>	la furie	<i>fury, fierceness</i>
le courage	<i>courage</i>	la colère	<i>anger, passion</i>
la bravoure	<i>bravery</i>	la douceur	<i>gentleness, mildness, meekness</i>
la valeur	<i>valour, bravery</i>		
la patience	<i>patience</i>	la politesse	<i>politeness</i>
l'impatience	<i>impatience</i>	la flatterie	<i>flattery</i>
le zèle	<i>zeal</i>		

THIRTEENTH LESSON.

GENTLEMEN'S WEARING APPAREL.

un chapeau	<i>a hat</i>
une casquette	<i>a cap</i>
un col	<i>a stock, a neckcloth</i>
un collet	<i>a collar</i>
une cravate	<i>a cravat</i>
un habit	<i>a coat</i>
une veste	<i>a boy's jacket</i>
un pardessus	<i>a great coat, or over coat</i>
un surtout	<i>a great coat, or surtout</i>
un gilet	<i>a waistcoat</i>
un manteau	<i>a cloak</i>
une paire de pantalons	<i>a pair of trousers</i>
une paire de bottes	<i>a pair of boots</i>
une paire d'escarpins	<i>a pair of pumps</i>
une paire de souliers	<i>a pair of shoes</i>
une paire de pantonfles	<i>a pair of slippers, or slippers</i>
une paire de gants	<i>a pair of gloves</i>
un gant	<i>a glove</i>
un poignet	<i>a wristband</i>
un mouchoir de poche	<i>a pocket handkerchief</i>
un foulard	<i>a silk pocket handkerchief</i>

LADIES' WEARING APPAREL.

un chapeau		<i>a bonnet</i>
un bonnet		<i>a cap</i>
une coiffure		<i>a head dress</i>
des boucles d'oreilles		<i>ear rings</i>
des pendants d'oreilles		<i>ear drops</i>
une bague		<i>a ring</i>
un collier		<i>a necklace</i>
un bracelet		<i>a bracelet</i>
un collet	}	<i>a collar</i>
une colerette		
un fichu		<i>a neck handkerchief</i>
un châle		<i>a shawl</i>
une écharpe		<i>a scarf</i>
un manteau		<i>a cloak</i>
une-mante		<i>a mantle</i>
un mantelet		<i>a mantelet</i>
une mantille		<i>a mantle, or mantilla</i>
une palatine	}	<i>a tippet</i>
une pélerine		
un boa		<i>a boa</i>
un manchon		<i>a muff</i>
une paire de manchettes		<i>a pair of cuffs</i>
un gant		<i>a glove</i>
une paire de gants		<i>a pair of gloves</i>
une paire de mitaines		<i>a pair of mits, or mittens</i>
un mouchoir		<i>a handkerchief</i>
un mouchoir de poche		<i>a pocket handkerchief</i>
un mouchoir de batiste		<i>a cambric handkerchief</i>
de la batiste		<i>some cambric</i>
de la dentelle		<i>some lace</i>
une robe		<i>a gown, or dress</i>
une robe de soie		<i>a silk dress</i>
une robe de bal		<i>a ball dress</i>
une manche		<i>a sleeve</i>
une paire de bottines		<i>a pair of boots</i>
une paire de souliers		<i>a pair of shoes</i>
une paire de bas		<i>a pair of stockings</i>

OF ADJECTIVES.

An Adjective is a word which expresses or shows the qualities, the forms, the shapes, or the colours ascribed to persons or things.

We divide adjectives into five classes, viz.—

l'adjectif qualificatif	<i>shows the quality, the form, the shape, the colour, etc.</i>
l'adjectif possessif	<i>shows the possession</i>
l'adjectif démonstratif	<i>shows or points out the object of which we speak</i>
l'adjectif indéfini	<i>indicates an indefinite number of persons or things</i>
l'adjectif numéral	<i>indicates the number of persons or things</i>

DE L'ADJECTIF QUALIFICATIF.

The *qualifying adjectives* express or show the quality, the shape, or the colour ascribed to a person or a thing, and must, in French, always agree in gender and number, with the nouns which they qualify.

EXAMPLES.

un <i>petit</i> garçon	<i>a little boy</i>
une <i>petite</i> fille	<i>a little girl</i>
un <i>grand</i> garçon	<i>a great boy</i>
une <i>grande</i> fille	<i>a great girl</i>
deux <i>petits</i> garçons	<i>two little boys</i>
deux <i>petites</i> filles	<i>two little girls</i>
deux <i>grands</i> garçons	<i>two great boys</i>
deux <i>grandes</i> filles	<i>two great girls</i>

FORMATION DU FEMININ DANS LES ADJECTIFS.

FIRST LESSON.

1 *Règle*.—Adjectives ending with an *e* mute in the masculine termination, remain the same in the feminine. (No exception.)

aimable	<i>amiable</i>	sale	<i>dirty</i>
agréable	<i>agreeable</i>	propre	<i>clean</i>
admirable	<i>admirable</i>	facile	<i>easy</i>
aveugle	<i>blind</i>	difficile	<i>difficult, hard</i>

chauve	<i>bald</i>	riche	<i>rich</i>
timide	<i>bashful, timid</i>	pauvre	<i>poor</i>
brave	<i>brave</i>	juste	<i>just</i>
téméraire	<i>rash</i>	injuste	<i>unjust</i>
tiède	<i>lukewarm</i>	triste	<i>sad, dull</i>
rouge	<i>red</i>	habile	<i>clever, skilful</i>
rose	<i>pink</i>	rare	<i>scarce, rare, un-</i>
jeune	<i>young</i>		<i>common</i>
jaune	<i>yellow</i>	malade	<i>ill, sick</i>

SECOND LESSON.

2 Règle.—Adjectives that do not end with an *e* mute in the masculine termination, are made feminine by adding *e* to them.

petit, <i>m.</i>	} <i>small, little</i>	laid, <i>m.</i>	} <i>ugly</i>
petite, <i>f.</i>		laide, <i>f.</i>	
grand, <i>m.</i>	} <i>tall, large</i>	joli, <i>m.</i>	} <i>pretty</i>
grande, <i>m.</i>		jolie, <i>f.</i>	
méchant, <i>m.</i>	} <i>naughty, wicked</i>	plein, <i>m.</i>	} <i>full</i>
méchante, <i>f.</i>		pleine, <i>f.</i>	
grossier, <i>m.</i>	} <i>coarse</i>	lourd, <i>m.</i>	} <i>heavy, dull</i>
grossière, <i>f.</i>		lourde, <i>f.</i>	
fâché, <i>m.</i>	} <i>sorry, angry</i>	léger, <i>m.</i>	} <i>light, weak,</i>
fâchée, <i>f.</i>		legère, <i>f.</i>	
amer, <i>m.</i>	} <i>bitter</i>	blond, <i>m.</i>	} <i>light colour,</i>
amère, <i>f.</i>		blonde, <i>f.</i>	
hardi, <i>m.</i>	} <i>bold</i>	étroit, <i>m.</i>	} <i>narrow</i>
hardie, <i>f.</i>		étroite, <i>f.</i>	
chaud, <i>m.</i>	} <i>warm</i>	fier, <i>m.</i>	} <i>proud</i>
chaude, <i>f.</i>		fière, <i>f.</i>	
froid, <i>m.</i>	} <i>cold</i>	prêt, <i>m.</i>	} <i>ready</i>
froide, <i>f.</i>		prête, <i>f.</i>	
noir, <i>m.</i>	} <i>black</i>	lent, <i>m.</i>	} <i>slow</i>
noire, <i>f.</i>		lente, <i>f.</i>	
gris, <i>m.</i>	} <i>grey</i>	fort, <i>m.</i>	} <i>strong</i>
grise, <i>f.</i>		forte, <i>f.</i>	
vert, <i>m.</i>	} <i>green</i>	reconnaisant <i>m.</i>	} <i>thankful,</i>
verte, <i>f.</i>		reconnaisante, <i>f.</i>	
bleu, <i>m.</i>	} <i>blue</i>	Français, <i>m.</i>	} <i>French</i>
bleue, <i>f.</i>		Française, <i>f.</i>	
brun, <i>m.</i>	} <i>brown</i>	Anglais, <i>m.</i>	} <i>English</i>
brune, <i>f.</i>		Anglaise, <i>f.</i>	

THIRD LESSON.

3 *Règle*.—Adjectives ending with *f* in the masculine, are made feminine by changing *f* into *ve*, (no exception).

actif, m.	} active	bref, m.	} brief, short
active, f.		brève, f.	
vif, m.	} lively	attentif, m.	} attentive
vive, f.		attentive, f.	
veuf	widower	natif, m.	} native
veuve	widow	native, f.	
neuf, m.	} new, (never been used or worn)	positif, m.	} positive
neuve, f.		positive, f.	

FOURTH LESSON.

4 *Règle*.—Adjectives ending with *x* in the masculine, are made feminine by changing *x* into *se*.

heureux, m.	} happy	frileux, m.	} chilly, sensi- ble of cold
heureuse, f.		frileuse, f.	
malheureux, m.	} unhappy, un- fortunate, un- lucky, wretch- ed	soigneux, m.	} careful
malheureuse, f.		soigneuse, f.	
		joyeux, m.	} joyful, merry,
		joyeuse, f.	
curieux, m.	} curious	laborieux, m.	} laborious
curieuse, f.		laborieuse, f.	
affreux, m.	} frightful	paresseux, m.	} lazy, idle
affreuse, f.		paresseuse, f.	
généreux, m.	} generous	fameux, m.	} famous
généreuse, f.		fameuse, f.	
jaloux, m.	} jealous		
jalouse, f.			

No exception to this rule but the four following adjectives, which form their feminine as follows:—

doux, m.	} sweet, mild,	roux, m.	} red-haired
douce, f.		gentle	
faux, m.	} false	vieux, m.	} old
fausse, f.		vieille, f.	

FIFTH LESSON.

5 *Règle*.—Adjectives ending in *el*, *eil*, *ul*, *ien*, *on*, *as*, *os*,

form their feminine by doubling the last consonant, and adding an *e* mute.

<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	
el	elle	cruel	cruelle	<i>cruel</i>
eil	eille	pareil	pareille	<i>similar, alike, such</i>
ul	ulle	nul	nulle	<i>none, void, unmeaning</i>
ien	ienne	ancien	ancienne	<i>ancient, senior, old</i>
on	onne	bon	bonne	<i>good</i>
as	asse	gras	grasse	<i>fat</i>
os	osse	gros	grosse	<i>large, big, stout</i>

EXAMPLES.

un homme <i>cruel</i>	<i>a cruel man</i>
une femme <i>cruelle</i>	<i>a cruel woman</i>
un livre <i>pareil</i>	<i>a similar book, or such a book</i>
une bourse <i>pareille</i>	<i>a purse like it</i>
un <i>chretien</i>	<i>a christian man</i>
une <i>chretienne</i>	<i>a christian woman</i>
un bon garçon	<i>a good boy</i>
une bonne fille	<i>a good girl</i>
ce garçon est très <i>gras</i>	<i>this boy is very fat</i>
cette fille est très <i>grasse</i>	<i>this girl is very fat</i>
cet homme est très <i>gros</i>	<i>that man is very stout</i>
cette femme est très <i>grosse</i>	<i>that woman is very stout</i>

SIXTH LESSON.

6 *Règle*.—Adjectives ending in *eur*, deriving from the present participle of a verb, form their feminine by changing *eur* into *euse*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>mas.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	
chanteur	chanteuse	<i>singer</i>
danseur	danseuse	<i>dancer</i>
trompeur	trompeuse	<i>deceitful, deceiver</i>
dormeur	dormeuse	<i>sleepers</i>
il est bon chanteur	<i>he is a good singer</i>	
elle est bonne chanteuse	<i>she is a good singer</i>	
votre frère est bon danseur	<i>your brother is a good dancer</i>	

votre sœur est bonne danseuse	<i>your sister is a good dancer</i>
ce garçon est trompeur	<i>that boy is deceitful</i>
cette fille est trompeuse	<i>that girl is deceitful</i>
cet homme est grand mangeur	<i>that man is a great eater</i>
cette femme est grande mangeuse	<i>that woman is a great eater</i>

Adjectives ending in *teur* not derived from a present participle, form their feminine by changing *teur* into *trice*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>mas.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	
accusateur	accusatrice	<i>accuser</i>
acteur	actrice	<i>actor, actress</i>
bienfaiteur	bienfaitrice	<i>benefactor, benefactress</i>
conducteur	conductrice	<i>conductor, conductress</i>
directeur	directrice	<i>director, directrix</i>
inspecteur	inspectrice	<i>inspector</i>
instituteur	institutrice	<i>schoolmaster, school-</i> <i>mistress</i>
protecteur	protectrice	<i>protector, protectress</i>

Adjectives in *érieur* which convey to the mind an idea of opposition or comparison, follow the general rule of taking an *e* mute for the feminine, as :—

<i>mas.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	
antérieur	antérieure	<i>anterior</i>
postérieur	postérieure	<i>posterior</i>
intérieur	intérieure	<i>interior</i>
extérieur	extérieure	<i>exterior</i>
supérieur	supérieure	<i>superior</i>
inférieur	inférieure	<i>inferior</i>
majeur	majeure	<i>major</i>
mineur	mineure	<i>minor</i>
ultérieur	ultérieure	<i>ulterior</i>

EXERCISE ON ADJECTIVES.

N.B.—The pupil must make the adjective agree with the noun.

My brother is a good boy. My sister is a good girl. My brothers are good boys. My sisters are good girls. I have bought a beautiful book. I have bought a beautiful dress. I have seen two beautiful little boys. I have seen two beautiful little girls. A pretty little

dog. Two pretty little dogs. My brother is very industrious. My
 sister is very industrious. Those men are happy. These women are
 happy. [There is] a great boy in my uncle's garden. There is a
 great girl in my mother's room. That man is very stout. These
 women are very fat. We have a large garden and two large orchards.
 We have a large house with two large rooms. A beautiful black
 horse. A beautiful black mare. Two beautiful black horses. Three
 beautiful black mares. Good boys are always happy. Naughty girls
 are always unhappy. I have a blue coat, and two blue dresses. I
 have a green bonnet, three pink dresses, and four pair of black gloves,
 That boy is very cruel; those boys are very cruel. That girl is very
 cruel, those girls are very cruel. My brother is very attentive; your
 brothers are very attentive. My sister is very attentive; your sisters
 are very attentive.

FOURTH LESSON.

The following adjectives have no regular formation of the feminine, and therefore cannot be brought under any rule; the pupil is requested to learn them by heart for both genders. Their feminine is formed as under:—

blanc, m.	} white	oblong, m.	} oblong
blanche, f.		oblongue, f.	
franc, m.	} sincere, can-	bénin, m.	} benign
franche, f.	} did, frank	bénigne, f.	
sec, m.	} dry	malin, m.	} mischievous,
sèche, f.		maligne, f.	} roguish
public, m.	} public	favori, m.	} favourite
publique, f.		favorite, f.	
caduc, m.	} decrepid, de-	coi, m.	} still, snug
caduque, f.	} caying, infirm	coite, f.	
turc, m.	} turkish	beau, m.	} fine, hand-
turque, f.		belle, f.	} some, beau-
			} tiful

grec, m.	} <i>greek, or</i>	jumeau, m.	} <i>twin</i>
grecque, f.		jumelle, f.	
frais, m.	} <i>fresh</i>	nouveau, m.	} <i>new. (mean-</i>
fraiche, f.		nouvelle, f.	
épais, m.	} <i>thick</i>	fou, m.	} <i>foolish, mad</i>
épaisse, f.		folle, f.	
long, m.	} <i>long</i>	mou, m.	} <i>soft, mellow</i>
longue, f.		molle, f.	

EXERCISE ON ADJECTIVES THAT HAVE NO REGULAR
FORMATION OF THE FEMININE.

A white horse; three white horses. A white mare; four white
blanc *jument quatre*
mares. The public good; the public authority. A thick fog; a thick
bien, m. *autorité, f.* *épais brouillard, m.*
smoke. A large piece of bread; three large pieces of meat. A large
fumée, f. *gros morceau, m.*
apple; five large apples. These little boys are very fat; these little
pomme, f. *gras*
girls are very fat. A handsome little boy; a handsome little girl.
beau
Several handsome little boys; several handsome little girls. My
plusieurs
favourite dog. My favourite flower. A long poem; a long lesson.
favori *fleur, f.* *poème, m.* *leçon, f.*
Have you seen my new picture? Have you brought your two new
ou nouveau tableau, m. *apporté vos*
pieces of music? Have you read your new book? Have you made
musique *lu* *livre, m.* *fai*
a new discovery? An old hat; an old coat. That man is very
découverte, f. *vieux chapeau, m.* *habit, m. h. m. cet homme est*
old; these women are very old. Some dry bread, m.; some dry
ces *sont* *sec*
leaves. That wine [is not] fresh; this water is not fresh. That
feuilles, f. *ce* *n'est pas frais* *cette eau, f.*
form is too low; these chairs are too low.
banc, m. trop bas *ces chaises, f.*

EIGHTH LESSON

FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF ADJECTIVES.

GENERAL RULE.

The plural of adjectives is formed by the addition of an *s* to the singular, as:—

m.	{ grand grands	} tall, great, large
f.	{ grande grandes	
m.	{ petit petits	} small, little
f.	{ petite petites	
m.	{ joli jolis	} pretty
f.	{ jolie jolies	

This rule is, without any exception, for the feminine; but the masculine termination has the three following:—

1st. *Exception*.—Adjectives masculine ending in *s* or *x* do not change in the plural.

EXAMPLES.

cet homme est gras	that man is fat
ces hommes sont gras	these men are fat
ce garçon est heureux	this boy is happy
ces garçons sont heureux	those boys are happy
ce cheval est très gros	this horse is very big or large
ces chevaux sont très gros	these horses are very big or large

2nd. *Exception*.—Adjectives ending in *au*, take *x* in the plural.

EXAMPLES.

j'ai un nouveau livre	I have a new book
j'ai deux nouveaux livres	I have two new books
nous avons un beau cheval	we have a beautiful horse
nous avons trois beaux chevaux	we have three beautiful horses

3rd. *Exception*.—Adjectives ending in *al*, form their plural masculine by changing *al* into *aux*.

EXAMPLES.

égal	égaux	equal, even
libéral	libéraux	liberal
original	originaux	original
moral	moraux	moral

Obs.—A few adjectives ending in *al* follow the general rule, that is to say, they take an *s* in the plural, but these adjectives are very seldom used.

NINTH LESSON.

PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

In French, the adjectives of quality are generally placed after the nouns.

EXAMPLES.

un cheval noir	<i>a horse black (black horse)</i>
une maison blanche	<i>a house white (white house)</i>
une amande douce	<i>an almond sweet (a sweet almond)</i>
une pomme amère	<i>an apple bitter (a bitter apple)</i>
une table ronde	<i>a table round (a round table)</i>
une dame aimable	<i>a lady amiable (an amiable lady)</i>
un monsieur très poli	<i>a gentleman very polite (a very polite gentleman)</i>
un enfant paresseux	<i>a child lazy (a lazy child)</i>

Except the following, which when used singly, must be put before the nouns; they are exceptions to the rule.

jeune	<i>young</i>	grand	<i>great, large, tall</i>
vieux, m. *	} <i>old</i>	gros, m.	} <i>big, stout, large</i>
vieille, f.		grosse, f.	
ancien, m.	} <i>ancient, old</i>	petit	} <i>little, small</i>
ancienne, f.		joli	
nouveau, m. *	} <i>new (meaning</i>	beau, m. *	} <i>handsome, fine</i>
nouvelle, f.		belle, f.	
bon, m.	} <i>good</i>	long, m.	} <i>long</i>
bonne, f.		longue, f.	
mauvais	<i>bad</i>	brave	<i>brave, gallant</i>
méchant	<i>wicked, naughty</i>		

Obs.—The pupils are requested to remember that these adjectives must be put *before* the nouns, and all the others must be put *after*.

TENTH LESSON.

OF THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

There are three degrees of comparison; viz, the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.

* *Vieux, nouveau, and beau*, are changed into *vieil, nouvel, and bel*, before a noun masculine singular, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

POSITIVE.

The positive is the adjective itself; merely expressing the quality of a person or a thing without any comparison, as :—

un enfant studieux	<i>a studious child</i>
le mérite est modeste	<i>merit is modest</i>
le savoir est précieux	<i>knowledge is precious</i>

COMPARATIVE.

The comparative draws a comparison between two or more objects.

There are three sorts of comparatives, viz., of equality, superiority, and inferiority.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Equality</i>	Je suis aussi grand que vous	<i>I am as tall as you</i>
<i>Superiority</i>	Je suis plus grand que vous	<i>I am (more tall) taller than you</i>
<i>Inferiority</i>	{ Je suis moins grand que vous	<i>I am less tall than you</i>
	ou { Je ne suis pas si grand que vous	<i>or I am not so tall as you</i>

The comparative of equality is formed by placing the word *aussi*, as, before the adjective, and *que*, as, after it ;

Mon frère est aussi grand que vous
<i>My brother is as tall as you</i>
aussi ——— que
as ——— as

The comparative of superiority is formed by putting the word *plus*, more, before the adjective, and *que*, than, after it ; as,

Mon frère est plus riche que vous
<i>My brother is more rich (richer) than you</i>
plus ——— que
more ——— than
er ——— than

The comparative of inferiority is formed by putting the word *moins*, less, before the adjective, and *que*, than, after it :

l'Afrique est moins peuplée que l'Europe
Africa is less populous than Europe
 moins ———— que
 less ———— than

We also formed this comparative by putting the verb in the negative, with the words *pas si*, not so, before the adjective, and *que*, as, after it:—

Je ne suis pas si riche que vous
I am not so rich as you
 pas si ———— que
 not so ———— as

N.B.—The words *aussi*, *plus*, *moins*, must be repeated before every adjective.

SUPERLATIVE.

The superlative expresses the quality in the highest or lowest degree.

There are two sorts of superlatives; the relative and the absolute.

SUPERLATIVE RELATIVE.

The superlative relative expresses a *relation* or *comparison* with another object; it is formed by putting before the comparative, the article *le*, *la*, *les*, in its simple or compound state.

EXAMPLES.

Le chien est l'animal *le plus* fidèle *the dog is the most faithful animal*
 Le chien est *le plus* fidèle *des* *the dog is the most faithful of ani-*
 animaux *mals*

Il est l'homme *le plus* heureux du monde *he is the happiest man in the world*

Il est *le plus* heureux *des* hommes *he is the happiest of men*

The superlative relative is also formed by putting before the comparative, the words *mon*, *ma*, *mes*, *my*; *son*, *sa*, *ses*, *his* or *her*; *notre*, *nos*, *our*; *votre*, *vos*, *your*; *leur*, *leurs*, *their*.

EXAMPLES.

Mon plus petit cheval	<i>my smallest horse</i>
Mon plus grand ennemi	<i>my greatest enemy</i>
Votre plus grande erreur	<i>your greatest error</i>

SUPERLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

The superlative absolute does not express any comparison, it merely expresses the quality, in the highest or lowest degree; it is formed by putting one of the adverbs, *fort*, *bien*, *very*; *extrêmement*, *extremely*; *infiniment*, *infinitely*; *excessivement*, *excessively*, *exceedingly*; or any other adverbs expressing a very high or very low degree of quality.

EXERCISE ON THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

My book is good, yours is better, but his is the best. My gram-
livre, m. bon le vôtre mais le sien gram-
 mar is good, yours is better, but hers is the best. Your brother is
maître, f. la sienne
 very tall, my cousin is taller, but Charles is the tallest. I am as tall
grand
 as you, I am taller than you, I am not so tall as you. My brother
 is very handsome, my brother is as handsome as you, my brother is
beau
 handsomer than you. My brother is not so handsome as you, you
 are the handsomest. My sister is very handsome. My sister is as
 handsome as you, my sister is handsomer than you. My sister is not
 so handsome as you, you are the handsomest. He is very happy, she
heureux
 is as happy as he. She is happier than he, she is the happiest in the
de
 school. That boy is very generous, he is as generous as his sister, he
généreux
 is more generous than his cousin, he is not so generous as you, for
car
 you are the most generous of the family.
famille, f.

ELEVENTH LESSON.

There are in French three adjectives and three adverbs, which of themselves (that is to say, without the words *plus* or *moins*) express a comparative of superiority or inferiority; these are,

Adjectives.

<i>positive</i>	<i>comparative</i>	<i>superlative</i>
bon <i>good</i>	meilleur <i>better</i>	le, la, or les meilleurs <i>the best</i>
mauvais <i>bad</i>	pire <i>worse</i>	le, la, or les pire, <i>the</i> <i>worst</i>
petit <i>little, small</i>	moindre <i>less</i>	le, la, or les moindre, <i>the least</i>

Adverbs.

<i>positive</i>	<i>comparative</i>	<i>superlative</i>
bien <i>well</i>	mieux <i>better</i>	le mieux <i>the best</i>
mal <i>bad, badly</i>	pis <i>worse</i>	le pis <i>the worst</i>
peu <i>little</i>	moins <i>less</i>	le moins <i>the least</i>

Plus mauvais, plus petit, plus mal, can be used instead of *pire, moindre, pis*; but never *plus bon, plus bien*, instead of *meilleur, mieux*.

Obs.—The adjectives *meilleur, pire, moindre*, qualify nouns; the adverbs *mieux, pis, moins*, must be used with verbs.

EXAMPLES.

Adjectives.

son cheval est bon	<i>his horse is good</i>
le vôtre est meilleur	<i>yours is better</i>
le mien est le meilleur	<i>mine is the best</i>
sa grammaire est bonne	<i>his grammar is good</i>
la mienne est meilleure	<i>mine is better</i>
la vôtre est la meilleure	<i>yours is the best</i>
mes livres sont bons	<i>my books are good</i>
les siens sont meilleurs	<i>his are better</i>
les nôtres sont les meilleurs	<i>ours are the best</i>

Adverbs.

vous chantez bien	<i>you sing well</i>
ma sœur chante mieux	<i>my sister sings better</i>
mon frère chante le mieux	<i>my brother sings the best</i>
j'écris bien	<i>I write well</i>
vous écrivez mieux	<i>you write better</i>
ma sœur écrit le mieux	<i>my sister writes the best</i>

OBSERVATION ON THE COMPARATIVES—MEILLEUR, MIEUX;
PLUS, MOINS.

The comparatives *meilleur, mieux, plus, moins*, followed by *que*, than, require *ne* before the verb that comes after *que*; (*except when the first verb is in the negative, then ne is not required before the second*).

ces pommes sont meilleures que je ne le croyais	<i>these apples are better than I thought</i>
mon vin est meilleur que vous ne le pensez	<i>my wine is better than you think</i>
votre vin n'est pas meilleur que je le croyais	<i>your wine is not better than I thought</i>
ma sœur chante mieux qu'elle ne joue	<i>my sister sings better than she plays</i>
votre frère joue mieux qu'il ne chante	<i>your brother plays better than he sings</i>
les femmes parlent mieux qu'elles n'écrivent	<i>women speak better than they write</i>
les hommes ne chantent pas mieux qu'ils écrivent	<i>men do not sing better than they write</i>
mon frère a plus d'argent que vous ne le pensez	<i>my brother has more money than you think</i>
ma sœur n'a pas plus d'argent que vous le pensiez	<i>my sister has no more money than you thought</i>
cet homme est moins généreux qu'on ne le croit	<i>that man is less generous than one thinks</i>
il a plus de patience que je ne le croyais	<i>he has more patience than I thought</i>
vous êtes plus riche que nous ne le pensions	<i>you are richer than we thought</i>

N.B.—The more, the less, when repeated, or used in opposition to each other, are not rendered in French by the superlative, but by the comparative; *plus, moins*, and the order in which the words must be placed in the sentence is as follows:—*More the days are long, more the nights are short, &c.*

EXAMPLES.

plus je travaille, moins je gagne *the more I work, the less money*
d'argent *I earn*

plus vous ferez de progrès, plus votre mère sera contente	<i>the more you [will] improve, the more pleased your mother will be</i>
plus nous étudions, plus nous ap- prenons	<i>the more we study, the more we learn</i>
moins nous faisons de fautes, plus notre maître est content	<i>the fewer mistakes we make, the more pleased our master is</i>
moins vous étudiez, moins vous apprenez	<i>the less you study, the less you learn</i>
plus j'étudie le français, plus je l'aime	<i>the more I study French, the more I like it</i>
plus nous resterons longtemps ici, plus nous dépenserons d'argent	<i>the longer we [shall] stay here, the more money we shall spend</i>
plus nous avons de patience mieux nous réussissons	<i>the more patience we have, the better we succeed</i>

TWELFTH LESSON.

ON THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

<i>Adjective</i>	{	bon	<i>good</i>
		meilleur	<i>better</i>
		le meilleur	<i>the best</i>
		pas si bon	<i>not so good</i>
<i>Adverb</i>	{	bien	<i>well</i>
		mieux	<i>better</i>
		le mieux	<i>the best</i>
		pas si bien	<i>not so well</i>
<i>Adjective</i>	{	grand	<i>tall, large</i>
		plus grand	<i>taller, larger</i>
		le plus grand	<i>the tallest, the largest</i>
		pas si grand	<i>not so tall, not so large</i>

je suis pauvre	<i>I am poor.</i>
je suis aussi pauvre que vous	<i>I am as poor as you</i>
je suis plus pauvre que vous	<i>I am poorer than you</i>
je ne suis pas si pauvre que vous	<i>I am not so poor as you</i>
je suis le plus pauvre	<i>I am the poorest</i>
je chante bien	<i>I sing well</i>
je chante aussi bien que vous	<i>I sing as well as you</i>
je chante mieux que vous	<i>I sing better than you</i>
je ne chante pas si bien que vous	<i>I do not sing so well as you</i>

vous chantez le mieux	<i>you sing the best</i>
mon vin est bon	<i>my wine is good</i>
mon vin est <i>aussi</i> bon <i>que</i> le vôtre	<i>my wine is as good as yours</i>
mon vin est <i>meilleur</i> <i>que</i> le vôtre	<i>my wine is better than yours</i>
mon vin n'est pas si bon <i>que</i> le vôtre	<i>my wine is not so good as yours</i>
votre vin est le <i>meilleur</i>	<i>your wine is the best</i>
ma sœur est <i>très</i> jolie	<i>my sister is very pretty</i>
ma sœur est <i>aussi</i> jolie <i>que</i> vous	<i>my sister is as pretty as you</i>
ma sœur est <i>plus</i> jolie <i>que</i> vous	<i>my sister is prettier than you</i>
ma sœur n'est pas si jolie <i>que</i> vous	<i>my sister is not so pretty as you</i>
vous êtes la <i>plus</i> jolie	<i>you are the prettiest</i>
elle chante <i>très</i> bien	<i>she sings very well</i>
mon frère chante <i>mieux</i> encore	<i>my brother sings better still</i>
mais ma sœur chante le mieux	<i>but my sister sings the best</i>

EXERCISE ON THE COMPARATIVE BETTER—MEILLEUR
AND MIEUX.

N.B.—The pupil is requested to remember that *meilleur* goes with a *noun*, and *mieux* with a *verb*.

Your wine is very good; but mine is much better. My wine is as
vin, m. le mien beaucoup
 good as yours. My wine is better than yours. My wine is decidedly
décidément
 the best. You sing very well; but my sister sings much better than
chantes chante
 you. You sing as well as I; you sing better than I; you [do not sing]
moi ne chantes pas
 so well as I. My sister sings decidedly the best. Your horses are
 very good; but mine are much better. My apples are very good;
f.
 they are as good as yours; they are better than yours; they are the
 best in the country. Your sisters read very well; they read as well
de pays, m. lisent
 as you; they read better than you; but they [do not read] so well as
ne lisent pas
 your brother. Who has the best book? Who sings the best? Who
qui a
 has the best horses? Who reads the best? My daughters are the
lit
 best scholars. My daughters are the best musicians. My daughters
élèves musicien
 sing the best.

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

The possessive adjectives show the possession ; they *must* be placed before nouns, and agree in gender and number with the noun before which they are placed : these adjectives are :—

<i>my</i>	{	<i>mon</i>	<i>before a noun masculine singular</i>
		<i>ma</i>	<i>before a noun feminine singular</i>
		<i>mes</i>	<i>before all nouns plural</i>
<i>thy</i>	{	<i>ton</i>	<i>before a noun masculine singular</i>
		<i>ta</i>	<i>before a noun feminine singular</i>
		<i>tes</i>	<i>before all nouns plural</i>
<i>his,</i> <i>her,</i> <i>or its</i>	{	<i>son</i>	<i>before a noun masculine singular</i>
		<i>sa</i>	<i>before a noun feminine singular</i>
		<i>ses</i>	<i>before all nouns plural</i>
<i>our</i>	{	<i>notre</i>	<i>before all nouns singular</i>
		<i>nos</i>	<i>before all nouns plural</i>
<i>your</i>	{	<i>votre</i>	<i>before all nouns singular</i>
		<i>vos</i>	<i>before all nouns plural</i>
<i>their</i>	{	<i>leur</i>	<i>before all nouns singular</i>
		<i>leurs</i>	<i>before all nouns plural</i>

OBSERVATION.

{	<i>mon</i>	<i>must be used instead of</i>	<i>ma</i>	}	<i>before a noun feminine singular, beginning with a vowel, or h mute</i>
	<i>ton</i>		<i>ta</i>		
	<i>son</i>		<i>sa</i>		

FIRST LESSON.

<i>mon père</i>	<i>my father</i>	<i>mon frère</i>	<i>my brother</i>
<i>ma mère</i>	<i>my mother</i>	<i>ma sœur</i>	<i>my sister</i>
<i>mes frères</i>	<i>my brothers</i>	<i>mon fusil</i>	<i>my gun</i>
<i>mes sœurs</i>	<i>my sisters</i>	<i>mon jardin</i>	<i>my garden</i>
<i>mon cousin, m.</i>	<i>my cousin, m.</i>	<i>mon champ</i>	<i>my field</i>
<i>ma cousine, f.</i>	<i>my cousin, f.</i>	<i>mon chapeau</i>	<i>my hat</i>
<i>mon oncle</i>	<i>my uncle</i>	<i>mon habit</i>	<i>my coat</i>
<i>ma tante</i>	<i>my aunt</i>	<i>mon ami, m.</i>	} <i>my friend</i>
<i>mon neveu</i>	<i>my nephew</i>	<i>mon amie, f.</i>	
<i>ma nièce</i>	<i>my niece</i>	<i>mon crayon</i>	<i>my pencil</i>

mon parrain	<i>my godfather</i>	ma grammaire	<i>my grammar</i>
ma marraine	<i>my godmother</i>	mon dictionnaire	<i>my dictionary</i>
mon filleul	<i>my godson</i>	mon cahier	<i>my copy book</i>
ma filleule	<i>my goddaughter</i>	mon ardoise, <i>f.</i>	<i>my slate</i>
mon cheval	<i>my horse</i>	ma plume	<i>my pen</i>
ma jument	<i>my mare</i>	mon encre, <i>f.</i>	<i>my ink</i>
mes chevaux	<i>my horses</i>	mon argent	<i>my money</i>
mon chien	<i>my dog</i>	ma bourse	<i>my purse</i>

SECOND LESSON.

son père	<i>his or her father</i>
sa mère	<i>his or her mother</i>
son frère	<i>his or her brother</i>
sa sœur	<i>his or her sister</i>
son ami, <i>m.</i>	<i>his or her friend, m.</i>
son amie, <i>f.</i>	<i>his or her friend, f.</i>
son amitié	<i>his or her friendship</i>
son argent	<i>his or her money</i>
son maître	<i>his or her master</i>
son institutrice	} <i>his or her governess ; teacher</i>
sa gouvernante	
son élève	<i>his or her pupil</i>
ses élèves	<i>his or her pupils</i>
notre maison	<i>our house</i>
notre cuisine	<i>our kitchen</i>
notre cuisinier	<i>our cook</i>
nos chevaux	<i>our horses</i>
nos vaches	<i>our cows</i>
votre cour	<i>your yard</i>
votre grange	<i>your barn</i>
votre écurie	<i>your stable</i>
vos écuries	<i>your stables</i>
vos pommes	<i>your apples</i>
vos pommes de terre	<i>your potatoes</i>
vos choux	<i>your cabbages</i>
vos choux-fleurs	<i>your cauliflowers</i>
leurs carottes	<i>their carrots</i>
leurs navets	<i>their turnips</i>
leurs pois	<i>their peas</i>
leurs radis	<i>their radishes</i>
leurs concombres	<i>their cucumbers</i>

leur bonté	<i>their kindness</i>
leur fidélité	<i>their fidelity, faithfulness</i>
leur richesse	<i>their riches, wealth</i>
leur pauvreté	<i>their poverty</i>
leur famille	<i>their family</i>

EXERCISE ON THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

My father, my mother, and my sisters are in Paris. His brother,
his sister, and his cousins are very industrious. Her uncle, her aunt,
and her brothers are very poor. Our money is in the bank. Our
friends are richer than yours. Your friend, Doctor B., is very ill.
Your horses are in the stable. Their house is very large. Their
children are happier than your nephews and nieces. My money is in
my purse. My friend, Miss D., is a very good girl. My old friend,
Mr. S., is a very rich man. Her gold and her silver are in her pocket.
Her pockets are full of gold and silver. Her governess is very happy
in England.
en Angleterre

OF DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

The Demonstrative Adjectives are so called, because they *demonstrate* or *point out* the object or objects of which we speak. They must be placed before nouns.

These adjectives are :—

<i>this</i> or <i>that</i>	{	ce	before a noun masculine singular, (beginning with a consonant)
		cet	before a noun masculine singular (beginning with a vowel, or h mute)
		cette	before all nouns feminine singular
<i>these</i> or <i>those</i>	{	ces	before all nouns plural singular

LESSON.

ce garçon	<i>this or that boy</i>
cet homme	<i>this or that man</i>
cet enfant	<i>this or that child</i>
ce cheval	<i>this or that horse</i>
ce chien	<i>this or that dog</i>
cette femme	<i>this or that woman</i>
cette fille	<i>this or that girl</i>
cette maison	<i>this or that house</i>
cette chambre	<i>this or that room</i>
cette pomme	<i>this or that apple</i>
cette pomme de terre	<i>this or that potatoe</i>
ce monsieur	<i>this or that gentleman.</i>
cette dame	<i>this or that lady</i>
cette demoiselle	<i>this or that young lady</i>
ces enfans	<i>these or those children</i>
ces messieurs	<i>these or those gentlemen</i>
ces dames	<i>these or those ladies</i>
ces demoiselles	<i>these or those young ladies</i>
cet arbre	<i>this or that tree</i>
cet argent	<i>this or that money</i>
cet or	<i>this or that gold</i>
cette encre	<i>this or that ink</i>
cette orange	<i>this or that orange</i>
cet habit	<i>this or that coat</i>
ce parapluie	<i>this or that umbrella</i>
ces livres	<i>these or those books</i>
ces crayons	<i>these or those pencils</i>
ces chevaux	<i>these or those horses</i>
ces couteaux	<i>these or those knives</i>
ces fourchettes	<i>these or those forks</i>
ces cuillers	<i>these or those spoons</i>
ces cuillers à café	<i>these or those coffee or tea spoons</i>

EXERCISE ON THE DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

That boy, that girl, and those children are very pretty. That man and that child are very happy. What [do you think] of that horse?

What do you think of these horses? This man and this woman are richer than you. This wine is not good. This beer is not fresh.

These apples are not ripe. That lady is very handsome. That little

boy is very industrious. That little girl is very industrious also, but
 those great girls are very idle. This man, this woman, and these ^{aussi}
^{grand} ^{pareseux} children are happier than you. That money is for you, this purse is
 for your sister, and these oranges are for that pretty little girl. Give
 me that umbrella if you please. Give this apple to that boy, and those
^{s'il vous plaît}
 pears to these good little girls.

OF INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES.

These Adjectives are called *indefinite*, because they are always placed before nouns taken in an indefinite or general manner; that is to say, without expressing any particular number of persons or things.

The indefinite adjectives are:—

aucun-e	{ require ne before the verb	no, none, not any	
nul-le		no, none	
pas un		not one, not any	
chaque		each, every	
même		same, alike	
plusieurs		several, many	
{ quel, m. s. quelle, f. s. quels, m. p. quelles, f. p.	}	what or which	
quelque			some
quelques		a few, some	
quelconque		whatever, whatsoever	
autre		other, another	
{ tout, m. s. tous, m. p. toute, f. s. toutes, f. p.	}	all any, every	

LESSON.

aucun homme	<i>no man</i>
aucune femme	<i>no woman</i>
nul homme	<i>no man</i>
nulle femme	<i>no woman</i>
je n'ai pas un schelling	<i>I have not a shilling</i>
je n'ai pas une plume	<i>I have not a pen</i>
chaque pays	<i>every country</i>
chaque personne	<i>each person</i>
le même vin	<i>the same wine</i>
la même viande	<i>the same meat</i>
la même femme	<i>the same woman</i>
les mêmes hommes	<i>the same men</i>
plusieurs garçons	<i>several boys</i>
plusieurs filles	<i>several girls</i>
plusieurs enfants	<i>several children</i>
quel garçon	<i>what or which boy</i>
quel fille	<i>what or which girl</i>
quels hommes	<i>what or which men</i>
quelles femmes	<i>what or which women</i>
donnez-moi quelques pommes	<i>give me a few apples</i>
donnez-lui quelques prunes	<i>give him a few plums</i>
donnez-moi un livre quelconque	<i>give me any book whatever</i>
donnez-moi un autre livre	<i>give me another book</i>
tout homme peut faire cela	<i>any man can do this or that</i>
toute femme peut faire cela	<i>any woman can do that or this</i>
tous les hommes ne sont pas égaux	<i>all men are not equal</i>
toutes les femmes ne sont pas égales	<i>all women are not equal</i>
tout le vin	<i>all the wine</i>
toute la viande	<i>all the meat</i>
tous les jours	<i>every day</i>
toutes les semaines	<i>every week</i>
tous les ans	<i>every year</i>
tous les matins	<i>every morning</i>
tous les soirs	<i>every evening</i>

EXERCISE ON THE INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES.

No man is happier than you. No woman is more industrious than your sister. I have not a shilling in my purse. I have not a single
 — m. course, f. seul

lesson to learn. Every country has its customs. I have read the
leçon, f. apprendre pays, m. coutume, f. la
 same book. I have learnt the same lesson as you. I have seen the
m. appris vu
 same boys in your uncle's garden. I have seen several pretty little
m.
 girls in your mother's little room. What book have you read? What
chambre, f.
 lesson have you learnt? Which bonnet [shall I put on?] Which
chapeau, m. mettrai-je
 dress [will you put on?] Give me a few walnuts. Give us a few
mettres-vous noix
 lessons. Give me any book whatever. Give me another lesson. Give
un
 me another glass of wine. Any man can do this. Any woman can
verre, m.
 do that as well as you. All men are equal before the law. All wo-
devant loi, f.
 men are equal before the laws of this country. He has lost all his
il a perdu
 money. He has eaten all the meat. He has given all these books to
m. mangé viande, f. donné
 his sister. He comes here every day. She goes to school every
vient ici elle va
 morning. She goes to London every week. He goes to Paris every
 year. We go to church every Sunday.
allons

OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

The Numeral Adjectives express the number of persons or things.

There are two sorts of Numeral Adjectives; the *Cardinal* and the *Ordinal*.

The Cardinal Numbers express the number of persons or things.

The Ordinal Numbers show the order in which persons or things are placed.

The Cardinal Numbers are:—

1	<i>un m. une, f.</i>	<i>one, or a, an</i>
2	<i>deux</i>	<i>two</i>
3	<i>trois</i>	<i>three</i>
4	<i>quatre</i>	<i>four</i>
5	<i>cinq</i>	<i>five</i>

6	six	<i>six</i>
7	sept	<i>seven</i>
8	huit	<i>eight</i>
9	neuf	<i>nine</i>
10	dix	<i>ten</i>
11	onze	<i>eleven</i>
12	douze	<i>twelve</i>
13	treize	<i>thirteen</i>
14	quatorze	<i>fourteen</i>
15	quinze	<i>fifteen</i>
16	seize	<i>sixteen</i>
17	dix-sept	<i>seventeen</i>
18	dix-huit	<i>eighteen</i>
19	dix-neuf	<i>nineteen</i>
20	vingt	<i>twenty</i>
21	vingt-et-un	<i>twenty-one</i>
22	vingt-deux	<i>twenty-two</i>
23	vingt-trois	<i>twenty-three</i>
24	vingt-quatre	<i>twenty-four</i>
25	vingt-cinq	<i>twenty-five</i>
26	vingt-six	<i>twenty-six</i>
27	vingt-sept	<i>twenty-seven</i>
28	vingt-huit	<i>twenty-eight</i>
29	vingt-neuf	<i>twenty-nine</i>
30	trente	<i>thirty</i>
31	trente-et-un	<i>thirty-one</i>
32	trente-deux	<i>thirty-two</i>
33	trente-trois	<i>thirty-three</i>
34	trente-quatre	<i>thirty-four</i>
35	trente-cinq	<i>thirty-five</i>
36	trente-six	<i>thirty-six</i>
37	trente-sept	<i>thirty-seven</i>
38	trente-huit	<i>thirty-eight</i>
39	trente-neuf	<i>thirty-nine</i>
40	quarante	<i>forty</i>
41	quarante-et-un	<i>forty-one</i>
42	quarante-deux	<i>forty-two</i>
43	quarante-trois	<i>forty-three</i>
44	quarante-quatre	<i>forty-four</i>
45	quarante-cinq	<i>forty-five</i>
46	quarante-six	<i>forty-six</i>
47	quarante-sept	<i>forty-seven</i>
48	quarante-huit	<i>forty-eight</i>

49	quarante-neuf	<i>forty-nine</i>
50	cinquante	<i>fifty</i>
51	cinquante-et-un	<i>fifty-one</i>
52	cinquante-deux	<i>fifty-two</i>
53	cinquante-trois	<i>fifty-three</i>
54	cinquante-quatre	<i>fifty-four</i>
55	cinquante-cinq	<i>fifty-five</i>
56	cinquante-six	<i>fifty-six</i>
57	cinquante-sept	<i>fifty-seven</i>
58	cinquante-huit	<i>fifty-eight</i>
59	cinquante-neuf	<i>fifty-nine</i>
60	soixante	<i>sixty</i>
61	soixante-et-un	<i>sixty-one</i>
62	soixante-deux	<i>sixty-two</i>
63	soixante-trois	<i>sixty-three</i>
64	soixante-quatre	<i>sixty-four</i>
65	soixante-cinq	<i>sixty-five</i>
66	soixante-six	<i>sixty-six</i>
67	soixante-sept	<i>sixty-seven</i>
68	soixante-huit	<i>sixty-eight</i>
69	soixante-neuf	<i>sixty-nine</i>
70	soixante-dix	<i>seventy</i>
71	soixante-et-onze	<i>seventy-one</i>
72	soixante-douze	<i>seventy-two</i>
73	soixante-treize	<i>seventy-three</i>
74	soixante-quatorze	<i>seventy-four</i>
75	soixante-quinze	<i>seventy-five</i>
76	soixante-seize	<i>seventy-six</i>
77	soixante-dix-sept	<i>seventy-seven</i>
78	soixante-dix-huit	<i>seventy-eight</i>
79	soixante-dix-neuf	<i>seventy-nine</i>
80	quatre-vingt	<i>eighty</i>
81	quatre-vingt-un	<i>eighty-one</i>
82	quatre-vingt-deux	<i>eighty-two</i>
83	quatre-vingt-trois	<i>eighty-three</i>
84	quatre-vingt-quatre	<i>eighty-four</i>
85	quatre-vingt-cinq	<i>eighty-five</i>
86	quatre-vingt-six	<i>eighty-six</i>
87	quatre-vingt-sept	<i>eighty-seven</i>
88	quatre-vingt-huit	<i>eighty-eight</i>
89	quatre-vingt-neuf	<i>eighty-nine</i>
90	quatre-vingt-dix	<i>ninety</i>
91	quatre-vingt-onze	<i>ninety-one</i>

92	quatre-vingt-douze	<i>ninety-two</i>
93	quatre-vingt-treize	<i>ninety-three</i>
94	quatre-vingt-quatorze	<i>ninety-four</i>
95	quatre-vingt-quinze	<i>ninety-five</i>
96	quatre-vingt-seize	<i>ninety-six</i>
97	quatre-vingt-dix-sept	<i>ninety-seven</i>
98	quatre-vingt-dix-huit	<i>ninety-eight</i>
99	quatre-vingt-dix-neuf	<i>ninety-nine</i>
100	cent	<i>a hundred</i>
101	cent-un	<i>a hundred and one</i>
110	cent-dix	<i>a hundred and ten</i>
120	cent-vingt	<i>a hundred and twenty</i>
130	cent-trente	<i>a hundred and thirty</i>
140	cent-quarante	<i>a hundred and forty</i>
150	cent-cinquante	<i>a hundred and fifty</i>
200	deux cent	<i>two hundred</i>
1,000	mille	<i>one thousand</i>
1,000,000	un million	<i>a million</i>

N. B. *Quatre-vingt* and *cent* are the only numeral adjectives that can take the mark of the plural. *Quatre-vingt* takes an *s* in the plural when followed by a noun: *quatre-vingts ans*; *quatre-vingts hommes*. But remains invariable when it is followed by another number: *quatre-vingt-deux ans*; *quatre-vingt-douze hommes*.

Cent takes an *s* in the plural when it is multiplied by another number and followed by a noun:

deux cents hommes
trois cents francs

But remains invariable when followed by another number:—

deux cent-dix hommes
trois cent-vingt francs

Mille, a thousand, never takes an *s* in the plural:—

trois mille francs
six mille hommes

In speaking of the Christian era, we abridge *mille* into *mil*:—

mil huit cent cinquante-six 1856
il mourut en mil huit cent quarante 1840

The Ordinal Numbers are :—

1 ^{er}	{ le premier, <i>m.</i> }	1 st	<i>the first</i>
1 ^{ere}	{ la première, <i>f.</i> }		
2 ^e	deuxième	2 nd	<i>second</i>
3 ^e	troisième	3 rd	<i>third</i>
4 ^e	quatrième	4 th	<i>fourth</i>
5 ^e	cinquième	5 th	<i>fifth</i>
6 ^e	sixième	6 th	<i>sixth</i>
7 ^e	septième.	7 th	<i>seventh</i>
8 ^e	huitième	8 th	<i>eighth</i>
9 ^e	neuvième	9 th	<i>ninth</i>
10 ^e	dixième	10 th	<i>tenth</i>
11 ^e	onzième	11 th	<i>eleventh</i>
12 ^e	douzième	12 th	<i>twelfth</i>
13 ^e	treizième	13 th	<i>thirteenth</i>
14 ^e	quatorzième	14 th	<i>fourteenth</i>
15 ^e	quinzième	15 th	<i>fifteenth</i>
16 ^e	seizième	16 th	<i>sixteenth</i>
17 ^e	dix-septième	17 th	<i>seventeenth</i>
18 ^e	dix-huitième	18 th	<i>eighteenth</i>
19 ^e	dix-neuvième	19 th	<i>nineteenth</i>
20 ^e	vingtième	20 th	<i>twentieth</i>
21 ^e	vingt-et-unième	21 st	<i>twenty-first</i>
22 ^e etc.	vingt-deuxième	22 nd	<i>twenty-second etc.</i>
30 ^e	trentième	30 th	<i>thirtieth</i>
31 ^e	trente-et-unième	31 st	<i>thirty-first</i>
32 ^e etc.	trente-deuxième	32 nd	<i>thirty-second</i>
40 ^e	quarantième	40 th	<i>fortieth</i>
41 ^e	quarante-et-unième	41 st	<i>forty-first</i>
42 ^e etc.	quarante-deuxième	42 nd	<i>forty-second, etc.</i>
50 ^e	cinquantième	50 th	<i>fiftieth</i>
60 ^e	soixantième	60 th	<i>sixtieth</i>
70 ^e	soixante-dixième	70 th	<i>seventieth</i>
80 ^e	quatre-vingtième	80 th	<i>eightieth</i>
90 ^e	quatre-vingt-dix- ième	90 th	<i>ninetieth</i>
100 ^e	centième	100 th	<i>hundreth</i>
1000 ^e etc.	millième	1000 th	<i>thousandth, etc.</i>

IMPORTANT OBSERVATION.

In two instances the French make use of the Cardinal numbers instead of the Ordinal.

1st. In speaking of the date of the month :—

le deux Mars	<i>the second of March</i>
le cinq Avril	<i>the fifth of April</i>
le vingt-huit Août	<i>the twenty-eighth of August</i>
le 19 Septembre, etc.	<i>the 19th of September, etc.</i>

2nd. In speaking of sovereigns, we use the Cardinal numbers without any article before that number :—

Henri quatre	<i>Henry the fourth</i>
Charles dix	<i>Charles the tenth</i>
Louis dix-huit	<i>Louis the eighteenth</i>
Napoléon III	<i>Napoleon the third</i>

The first of the series is excepted from this rule, for we say :—

le premier Avril
Charles premier
Napoléon premier, etc.

OF PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are words which are used instead of nouns to avoid repetition.

We divide pronouns into five classes, viz. :—

Personal	pronouns
Possessive	„
Demonstrative	„
Relative	„
Indefinite	„

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Personal pronouns are used to represent the names of persons or things.

These pronouns are :

NOMINATIVE OR SUBJECT.

je	<i>I</i>
tu	<i>thou</i>
il	<i>he</i> or <i>it</i>
elle	<i>she</i> or <i>it</i>
nous	<i>we</i>
vous	<i>you</i>
ils	<i>they</i> , m.
elles	<i>they</i> , f.

These pronouns must be used with a verb, of which they are the subject or nominative.

moi	<i>I</i>
toi	<i>thou</i>
lui	<i>he</i>
elle	<i>she</i>
nous	<i>we</i>
vous	<i>you</i>
eux	<i>they</i> , m.
elles	<i>they</i> , f.

These pronouns are used without verbs. They are also used in answer to a question.

EXAMPLES.

je parle	<i>I speak</i>	c'est moi	<i>it is I</i>
tu chantes	<i>thou singest</i>	c'est toi	<i>it is thou</i>
il mange	<i>he eats</i>	c'est lui	<i>it is he</i>
elle mange	<i>she eats</i>	c'est elle	<i>it is she</i>
nous parlons	<i>we speak</i>	c'est nous	<i>it is we</i>
vous parlez	<i>you speak</i>	c'est vous	<i>it is you</i>
ils vont	<i>they go</i>	ce sont eux	<i>it is they</i> , m.
elles vont	<i>they go</i>	ce sont elles	<i>it is they</i> , f.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS USED WITH ACTIVE VERBS.

OBJECTIVE OR OBJECT. <i>direct</i>	OBJECTIVE OR ACCUSATIVE. <i>indirect</i>	
me <i>me</i>	me <i>to me</i>	These pronouns must be used with active verbs, to which they are the object. They <i>must be put before</i> the verb in simple tenses, and <i>before</i> the auxiliary in compound tenses, but never before the past participle.
te <i>thee</i>	te <i>to thee</i>	
le <i>him</i> or <i>it</i>	lui <i>to him</i>	When the verb is in the imperative mood, these pronouns are put after it; and <i>moi</i> , <i>toi</i> , are used instead of <i>me</i> , <i>te</i> , but only in the affirmative.
la <i>her</i> or <i>it</i>	lui <i>to her</i>	
nous <i>us</i>	nous <i>to us</i>	
vous <i>you</i>	vous <i>to you</i>	
les <i>them</i>	leur <i>to them</i>	

EXAMPLES ON SIMPLE TENSES.

without preposition.

il me voit	he sees me
il te voit	he sees thee
il le voit	he sees him
il la voit	he sees her
il nous voit	he sees us
il vous voit	he sees you
il les voit	he sees them
regardez-moi	look at me
ne me regardez pas	do not look at me
baisez-moi	kiss me
ne me baisez pas	do not kiss me

with the preposition to, à

elle me parle	she speaks to me
elle te parle	she speaks to thee
elle lui parle	she speaks to him
elle lui parle	she speaks to her
elle nous parle	she speaks to us
elle vous parle	she speaks to you
elle leur parle	she speaks to them
parlez-moi	speak to me
ne me parlez pas	do not speak to me
écrivez-moi	write to me
ne m'écrivez pas	do not write to me

EXAMPLES ON COMPOUND TENSES.

without preposition.

il m'a vu	he has seen me
il t'a vu	he has seen thee
il l'a vu	he has seen him
il l'a vue	he has seen her
il nous a vus	he has seen us
il vous a vu	he has seen you
il les a vus	he has seen them, m.
il les a vues	he has seen them, f.

with the preposition to, à.

elle m'a parlé	she has spoken to me
elle t'a parlé	she has spoken to thee
elle lui a parlé	she has spoken to him

elle lui a parlé	<i>she has spoken to her</i>
elle nous a parlé	<i>she has spoken to us</i>
elle vous a parlé	<i>she has spoken to you</i>
elle leur a parlé	<i>she has spoken to them, m.</i>
elle leur a parlé	<i>she has spoken to them, f.</i>

Obs.—Nothing but the objective pronouns *me*, or *to me*, *thee*, or *to thee*, *him*, or *to him*, etc., can be put before the verb. If the objective be a noun, that noun is (as in English) placed after the verb; but the pronouns go before,

EXAMPLES.

je vous connais	<i>I know you</i>
je connais votre frère	<i>I know your brother</i>
nous les connaissons	<i>we know them</i>
nous connaissons vos frères	<i>we know your brothers</i>
je lui ai parlé	<i>I have spoken to him</i>
j'ai parlé à votre ami	<i>I have spoken to your friend</i>

PERSONAL PRONOUNS USED WITH PREPOSITIONS.

moi	<i>me</i>	} These pronouns are used with neuter verbs, and must be put after the preposition which is always required with a neuter verb.
toi	<i>thee</i>	
lui	<i>him</i>	
elle	<i>her</i>	
nous	<i>us</i>	
vous	<i>you</i>	
eux	<i>them, m.</i>	
elles	<i>them, f.</i>	} These are also the pronouns that must be used after any preposition.

EXAMPLES.

voulez-vous aller avec	<div> <div>moi</div> <div>lui</div> <div>elle</div> <div>nous</div> <div>eux</div> <div>elles</div> </div>	<i>will you go with</i>	<div> <div>me</div> <div>him</div> <div>her</div> <div>us</div> <div>them, m.</div> <div>them, f.</div> </div>
elle chantera après	<div> <div>moi</div> <div>toi</div> <div>lui</div> <div>elle</div> <div>nous</div> <div>vous</div> <div>eux</div> <div>elles</div> </div>	<i>she will sing after</i>	<div> <div>me</div> <div>thee</div> <div>him</div> <div>her</div> <div>us</div> <div>you</div> <div>them, m.</div> <div>them, f.</div> </div>

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

NOMINATIVE OR SUBJECT.		OBJECTIVE OR OBJECT.			
<i>used with verbs.</i>	<i>used with- out verbs.</i>	<i>used with verbs.</i>		<i>used with prepositions.</i>	
<i>I</i> Je	<i>I</i> moi	<i>me</i> me	<i>to me</i> me	<i>me</i> moi	
<i>thou</i> tu	<i>thou</i> toi	<i>thee</i> te	<i>to thee</i> te	<i>thee</i> toi	
<i>he</i> il	<i>he</i> lui	<i>him or it</i> le	<i>to him</i> lui	<i>him</i> lui	
<i>she</i> elle	<i>she</i> elle	<i>her or it</i> la	<i>to her</i> lui	<i>her</i> elle	
<i>we</i> nous	<i>we</i> nous	<i>us</i> nous	<i>to us</i> nous	<i>us</i> nous	
<i>you</i> vous	<i>you</i> vous	<i>you</i> vous	<i>to you</i> vous	<i>you</i> vous	
<i>they</i> { ils elles	<i>they</i> { eux elles	<i>them</i> les	<i>to them</i> leur	<i>them</i> { eux elles	
<i>en</i> chante	<i>c'est</i> moi	<i>il</i> me connaît	<i>il</i> me parle	<i>avec</i> moi	
<i>tu</i> chantes	<i>c'est</i> toi	<i>il</i> te connaît	<i>il</i> te parle	<i>avec</i> toi	
<i>il</i> ou <i>elle</i> chante	<i>c'est</i> lui	<i>il</i> le connaît	<i>il</i> lui parle	<i>après</i> lui	
<i>nous</i> chantons	<i>c'est</i> elle	<i>il</i> la connaît	<i>il</i> nous parle	<i>pour</i> elle	
<i>vous</i> chantez	<i>c'est</i> nous	<i>il</i> nous connaît	<i>il</i> vous parle	<i>contre</i> nous	
<i>ils</i> ou <i>elles</i> chan- tent	<i>c'est</i> vous	<i>il</i> vous connaît	<i>il</i> leur parle	<i>de</i> vous	
<i>ils</i> ont chanté	<i>ce</i> sont eux ou elles	<i>il</i> les connaît	<i>il</i> leur a parlé	<i>d'</i> { eux elles	

Obs.—When the pronouns *it*, (*le*, *la*) and *them*, (*eux*, *elles*) are used with a preposition, they can represent only persons; if *it* or *them*, when used with a preposition represent things, the pronoun *en*, or *y*, must in French be used, (*see page 76*).

EXERCISE ON THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

N.B. Personal pronouns objective to verbs, go before the verb except in the imperative mood.

EXAMPLES.

I to him speak

je lui parle

I to him have spoken

je lui ai parlé

[*I shall see*] *je verrai* him to-morrow; *demain* I shall see her to-morrow; I shall see you to-morrow; I shall see them [next week]. I have seen him; *la semaine prochaine* *vu* I have seen her; I have seen you; I have seen them. Will you *voulez-vous* speak to me? Will you speak to him? Will you speak to them? *parler*

Will you speak to my father? Have you seen my brother? yes, I have seen him. Did you speak to him? no, I did not speak to him. *avez-vous parlé*

[I would give] you a book if you were a good boy. [I would have] *je donnerais* *étais* *j'aurais*
 given you an orange if you had been a good girl. I shall speak after *donné*
 him, and not after her. We will go with them. She wishes to dance *m.*
 with me. She will sing after him. Give me a book. Give him an
 apple. Give them some money.

OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

The possessive pronouns take the place of a noun before mentioned, and at the same time denote possession.

N.B. The pupils are requested not to confound the possessive adjectives with the possessive pronouns.

ADJECTIVES. <i>only used before nouns.</i>	PRONOUNS. <i>only used instead of nouns.</i>
<i>my</i> { <i>mon</i> <i>ma</i> <i>mes</i>	<i>mine</i> { <i>le mien, m.</i> <i>la mienne, f.</i> <i>les miens, les miennes, p.</i>
<i>thy</i> { <i>ton</i> <i>ta</i> <i>tes</i>	<i>thine</i> { <i>le tien, m.</i> <i>la tienne, f.</i> <i>les tiens, les tiennes, p.</i>
<i>his,</i> <i>her,</i> <i>or its</i> { <i>son</i> <i>sa</i> <i>ses</i>	<i>his,</i> <i>hers,</i> <i>or its</i> { <i>le sien, m.</i> <i>la sienne, f.</i> <i>les siens, les siennes, p.</i>
<i>our</i> { <i>notre</i> <i>nos</i>	<i>ours</i> { <i>le nôtre, m., la nôtre, f.</i> <i>les nôtres, p.</i>
<i>your</i> { <i>votre</i> <i>vos</i>	<i>yours</i> { <i>le vôtre, m., la vôtre, f.</i> <i>les vôtres, p.</i>
<i>their</i> { <i>leur</i> <i>leurs</i>	<i>theirs</i> { <i>le leur, m., la leur, f.</i> <i>les leurs, p.</i>

Obs.—The possessive adjective *must be* placed before a noun, and agree with that noun.

The possessive pronoun must take the place of a noun mentioned in the sentence, and agree with that noun.

EXAMPLES

j'ai vu mon père et le vôtre	<i>I have seen my father and yours</i>
j'ai vu ma mère et la vôtre	<i>I have seen my mother and yours</i>
j'ai vu mes frères et les vôtres	<i>I have seen my brothers and yours</i>
j'ai vu mes sœurs et les siennes	<i>I have seen my sisters and his</i>
sa sœur et la mienne	<i>his sister and mine</i>
son frère et le mien	<i>her brother and mine</i>
ses sœurs et les miennes	<i>her sisters and mine</i>
ses frères et les miens	<i>his brothers and mine</i>
votre maison et la mienne	<i>your house and mine</i>
vos maisons et les miennes	<i>your houses and mine</i>
leur jardin et le sien	<i>their garden and hers</i>
leurs jardins et les siens	<i>their gardens and his</i>
notre cheval et le vôtre	<i>our horse and yours</i>
nos chevaux et les vôtres	<i>our horses and yours</i>
notre maison et la vôtre	<i>our house and yours</i>
nos maisons et les vôtres	<i>our houses and yours</i>

EXERCISE ON THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

My brother and yours are in the garden. Your sister and mine are very great friends. My books, his, yours, and theirs, are in the other room. Your father and hers are very rich; but mine is very poor. Your sisters and his are very handsome; but mine are handsome still. Her dress and yours are very pretty; but mine is the prettiest. Your house is not so large as mine; but my horses are not so beautiful as yours. My brother is taller than yours. My brothers are older than yours. Your sister sings better than mine. My sisters play better than yours. My book and yours are better than hers. Your book and mine are better bound than hers.

OBSERVATION.

The pupil is requested to take notice that the possessive pronouns must be preceded by the article *le*, *la*, or *les*. Whereas the possessive adjectives cannot take the article.

When the possessive pronouns are used with the preposition *of* or *to*, they are declined as follows:—

<i>of mine</i>	du mien, <i>m.</i>	} <i>singular</i>
	de la mienne, <i>f.</i>	
	des miens, <i>m.</i>	} <i>plural</i>
	des miennes, <i>f.</i>	
<i>of his or hers</i>	du sien, <i>m.</i>	} <i>singular</i>
	de la sienne, <i>f.</i>	
	des siens, <i>m.</i>	} <i>plural</i>
	des siennes, <i>f.</i>	
<i>of ours</i>	du nôtre, <i>m.</i>	}
	de la nôtre, <i>f.</i>	
	des nôtres, <i>p.</i>	}
<i>of yours</i>	du vôtre, <i>m.</i>	}
	de la vôtre, <i>f.</i>	
	des vôtres, <i>p.</i>	}
<i>of theirs</i>	du leur, <i>m.</i>	}
	de la leur, <i>f.</i>	
	des leurs, <i>p.</i>	}
<i>to mine</i>	au mien, <i>m.</i>	} <i>singular</i>
	à la mienne, <i>f.</i>	
	aux miens, <i>m.</i>	} <i>plural</i>
	aux miennes, <i>f.</i>	
<i>to his or hers</i>	au sien, <i>m.</i>	} <i>singular</i>
	à la sienne, <i>f.</i>	
	aux siens, <i>m.</i>	} <i>plural</i>
	aux siennes, <i>f.</i>	
<i>to ours</i>	au nôtre, <i>m.</i>	}
	à la nôtre, <i>f.</i>	
	aux nôtres, <i>p.</i>	}
<i>to yours</i>	au vôtre, <i>m.</i>	}
	à la vôtre, <i>f.</i>	
	aux vôtres, <i>p.</i>	}
<i>to theirs</i>	au leur, <i>m.</i>	}
	à la leur, <i>f.</i>	
	aux leurs, <i>p.</i>	}

IMPORTANT LESSON ON THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

The Possessive Pronouns *mine, yours, etc., of mine, of yours, etc.*, are used in French *only* to avoid the repetition of the noun expressed in the sentence, as :—

votre frère et le mien	<i>your brother and mine (my brother)</i>
sa sœur et la mienne	<i>his sister and mine (my sister)</i>
il parle de votre frère et du mien	<i>he speaks of your brother and of mine (of my brother)</i>
je parle de votre sœur et de la mienne	<i>I speak of your sister and of mine (of my sister)</i>
il a parlé à mon père et au vôtre	<i>he has spoken to my father and to yours</i>
j'ai parlé à ma mère et à la vôtre	<i>I have spoken to my mother and to yours</i>
j'ai parlé à mes sœurs et aux vôtres	<i>I have spoken to my sisters and to yours</i>
je parle de mes frères et des vôtres	<i>I speak of my brothers and of yours (of your brothers)</i>

In the above sentences, the *possessive pronoun* is used instead of the *noun*, to avoid repetition; so *your brother and mine*, is instead of *your brother and my brother*; *he speaks of your brother and of mine*, is instead of *he speaks of your brother and of my brother*, etc.

The pupil will remember that it is *only* in such sentences as the above, that the French make use of the *possessive pronouns*.

The English say—I know a friend of yours

The French say—I know one of your friends.

je connais un de vos amis	<i>I know a friend of yours</i>
j'ai vu un de ses amis	<i>I have seen a friend of hers</i>
un de mes amis m'a dit cela	<i>a friend of mine told me that</i>
nous demeurons dans une de leurs maisons	<i>we live in a house of theirs</i>

In asking certain questions relating to possession, as :—*Whose book is this? Whose house is that? etc.*, the English reply by making use of the possessive pronoun—*mine, yours*, etc., but the French do not use these pronouns, because the question being asked in French in a different way, requires *necessarily* a different answer; instead of saying, *Whose book is this? mine*—the French say, *to whom is that book? to me*. The question means—*to whom does that book belong?* the answer is, *to me*; it belongs to me.

In all such sentences, the English use the possessive pronouns, but the French do not.

EXAMPLES.

à qui est ce crayon ? à moi	<i>whose pencil is this ? mine</i>
à qui est cette maison ? à mon père	<i>whose house is that ? my father's</i>
ce livre n'est pas à vous	<i>this book is not yours</i>
il est à mon frère	<i>it is my brother's</i>
j'ai vu un de vos amis	<i>I have seen a friend of yours</i>
vous avez vu un de mes amis	<i>you have seen a friend of mine</i>
à qui est ce parapluie ? à moi	<i>whose umbrella is that ? mine</i>
votre cheval est bon	<i>that horse of yours is good</i>
une de vos maisons	<i>a house of yours</i>
une de ses amies	<i>a friend of hers</i>

EXERCISE ON THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

N.B. { possessive adjectives can only be used *before* nouns
 { possessive pronouns can only be used *instead* of nouns

I speak of my father and of yours. He speaks of my mother and of his. He speaks of my sisters and of yours. I have spoken to my brother and to yours. He has spoken to my mother and to his. She has spoken to my sisters, to yours, to his, and to theirs. Give an orange to my brother, and an apple to yours. Speak to my father; I will speak to yours. [If you will write] to my mother, [I will write] to yours.

I have seen a friend of yours to-day. Have you a book, of mine amongst yours? [Do you know] Doctor R.? yes, he is a friend of mine.

Whose hat is this? mine. Whose umbrella is that, yours? Whose house is that? my father's. Whose horses are these? my uncle's.

OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The demonstrative pronouns demonstrate or point out as it were, the persons or things which they represent.

N.B. The pupil must not confound the demonstrative adjectives with the demonstrative pronouns.

These pronouns are :

ADJECTIVES only used be- fore nouns	PRONOUNS only used instead of nouns	This pronoun is generally used before the verb to be ; as, <i>c'est moi, it is I ; c'est vous, it is you :</i> or is fol- lowed by <i>qui</i> , or <i>que</i> , as, <i>ce que vous dites est vrai, what (that which) you say is true ; vous savez ce qui est bon, you know that which is good.</i>
<i>this</i> { <i>ce</i> or { <i>cet</i> <i>that</i> { <i>cette</i>	<i>it, this,</i> { <i>that, these</i> { <i>ce</i>	These pronouns always relate to a noun expressed before, and cannot be used without being followed by the preposition of <i>de</i> , or by the relative pronoun <i>qui</i> or <i>que</i> ; as, <i>mon livre et celui de ma sœur</i> <i>my book and that of my sister</i> <i>celui de, celui qui, celle que</i> <i>that of, that which</i> <i>ceux de, ceux qui, celles que</i> <i>those of, those who</i> <i>celui qui parle, he who</i> <i>speaks, or the one that</i> <i>speaks ; ceux que vous con-</i> <i>naissiez, those [whom] you</i> <i>know</i>
<i>these</i> { or { <i>ces</i> <i>those</i> {	<i>this</i> { <i>celui-ci, m.</i> { <i>celle-ci, f.</i> <i>that</i> { <i>celui-là, m.</i> { <i>celle-là, f.</i> <i>these</i> { <i>ceux-ci, m.</i> { <i>celles-ci, f.</i> <i>those</i> { <i>ceux-là, m.</i> { <i>celles-là, f.</i>	These pronouns denote among two or more objects, the nearest or the farthest ; as, <i>this one, celui-ci</i> <i>that one, celui-là</i> <i>celle-ci (nearest)</i> <i>celle-là (farthest)</i> <i>these ones, ceux-ci</i> <i>celles-ci, (nearest)</i> <i>those ones, ceux-là</i> <i>celles-là, (farthest)</i>
	<i>this</i> { <i>ceci</i> <i>that</i> { <i>cela</i>	Are never joined to a noun, they stand for something pointed at, but not named ; they mean <i>this thing</i> or <i>that thing</i> . They have no plural : as, <i>je n'aime pas</i> <i>cela, I do not like that (that</i> <i>thing) ; ne faites pas cela,</i> <i>do not do that (that thing)</i>

LESSON ON THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

J'ai lu mon livre et celui de votre frère.

I have read my book and that of your brother

J'ai lu ma lettre et celle de votre sœur.

I have read my letter and that of your sister

Vous avez mangé votre pomme et celle de votre ami.

You have eaten your apple and that of your friend

Vous avez dépensé votre argent et celui de votre frère.

You have spent your money and that of your brother

J'ai vu vos chevaux et ceux de votre père aussi.

I have seen your horses and those of your father also

Nous avons vu vos maisons et celles de vos amis aussi.

We have seen your houses and those of your friends also

Voici deux livres donnez-moi celui-ci (the nearer)

Here are two books give me this (one)

Et donnez celui-là (the farthest) à votre frère.

and give that (one) to your brother

Donnez-moi celui qui est sur la table.

Give me the one that is on the table

Donnez-moi celui que vous avez lu.

Give me the one (that) you have read

Ne dites pas cela.

Do not say that

Ne faites pas cela.

do not do this

Qui vous a dit cela?

who told you that?

* EXERCISE ON THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

My garden is very pretty, but your father's (that of your father)

m.

is prettier. Our house is very large, but that of your sister is larger

f.

still. I have spent my money, and that of your brother. You have

encore

dépensé

m.

torn your dress, and that of your cousin. My brother has lost his

déchiré

robe, f.

perdu

marbles, and those of his companion. I have seen your horses, and

billes, f.

camarade

those of your son; they are very handsome, but I prefer my brother's (those of my brother).

voici

f

(Here are) two beautiful apples, give this to

your brother and that to your sister. Here are two beautiful books,

m.

this is for you, and that is for me. I like these horses, but I prefer

j'aime

my brother's (those of my brother). That book is good but this is

better. That little girl sings well, but this sings better, that one

sings the best. Who told you that? Can you do this? no, I cannot

qui vous a dit

pouvez-vous faire

je ne puis pas

do that. Why [do you believe] this and that? I believe this, but

pourquoi

croyez-vous

je crois

H

I do not believe all that. Who is that? It is I; it is you; it is your brother. These are my books. These are fine horses. That is my pencil. This is my sister.

OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The relative pronouns relate to a person or a thing before mentioned, which is called *antecedent*.

These pronouns are :

qui	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{who} \\ \textit{that} \\ \textit{which} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Nominative to a verb.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{le monsieur } \textit{qui} \text{ parle.} \\ \text{la dame } \textit{qui} \text{ chante.} \\ \text{le livre } \textit{qui} \text{ est sur la} \\ \text{table.} \end{array} \right.$
que	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{whom} \\ \textit{that} \\ \textit{which} \\ \textit{what} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Objective to a verb.} \\ \\ \textit{Frequently under-} \\ \textit{stood in English, but} \\ \textit{must always be ex-} \\ \textit{pressed in French.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{l'homme } \textit{que} \text{ vous voyez.} \\ \text{les livres } \textit{que} \text{ vous avez} \\ \text{lus.} \\ \text{la dame } \textit{que} \text{ vous aimez.} \\ \textit{que} \text{ dites-vous?} \\ \textit{que} \text{ voulez-vous?} \end{array} \right.$
quoi?	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{what?} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Interrogative pronoun.} \\ \textit{Used with a preposition} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{de quoi parlez-vous?} \\ \text{à quoi pensez-vous?} \\ \text{avec quoi avez-vous fait} \\ \text{cela?} \end{array} \right.$
dont	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{of whom} \\ \textit{of which} \\ \textit{whose} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Must be placed imme-} \\ \text{diately after the noun} \\ \text{to which it refers.} \\ \text{Cannot be used in-} \\ \text{terrogatively.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{le monsieur } \textit{dont} \text{ vous} \\ \text{parlez.} \\ \text{la dame } \textit{dont} \text{ vous avez} \\ \text{le livre.} \\ \text{six chevaux, } \textit{dont} \text{ trois} \\ \text{noirs.} \\ \text{l'enfant } \textit{dont} \text{ le père est} \\ \text{à Paris.} \end{array} \right.$
which	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{lequel, m.} \\ \text{laquelle, f.} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{singular} \end{array} \right.$ $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{lesquels, m.} \\ \text{lesquelles, f.} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{plural} \end{array} \right.$		$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{voici deux livres, } \textit{lequel} \text{ vou-} \\ \text{lez-vous?} \\ \textit{here are two books, which will} \\ \text{you have?} \\ \\ \text{voici deux roses, } \textit{laquelle} \text{ pré-} \\ \text{férez-vous?} \\ \textit{here are two roses, which do} \\ \text{you prefer?} \end{array} \right.$
of which	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{duquel, m.} \\ \text{de laquelle, f.} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{singular} \end{array} \right.$ $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{desquels, m.} \\ \text{desquelles, f.} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{plural} \end{array} \right.$		$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{duquel parlez-vous?} \\ \textit{of which do you speak?} \\ \\ \text{de laquelle parlez-vous?} \\ \textit{of which do you speak?} \end{array} \right.$

<i>to which</i>	auquel, <i>m.</i>	} <i>singular</i>	auquel donnez-vous la pré- férence?
	à laquelle, <i>f.</i>		<i>to which do you give the pre- ference?</i>
	auxquels, <i>m.</i>	} <i>plural</i>	à laquelle a-vous parlé?
	auxquelles, <i>f.</i>		<i>to which did you speak?</i>

Remark, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{who} \\ \textit{which} \text{ qui,} \\ \textit{whom} \end{array} \right\}$ Used with prepositions can only have reference to persons.

à	} <i>qui</i>	to,	} <i>which</i>
de		of	
avec		with	
pour		for	
après		after	
avant		before	

Which, used with a preposition refers to persons or things, but more particularly to things.

duquel	}	of which
avec lequel		with which
pour laquelle		for which
sur lesquelles		on which
dans lequel		in which

In *que*, the letter *e* is cut off before a vowel; in *qui*, the letter *i* is *never* cut off.

EXAMPLES.

qu'est-ce que vous dites? *what do you say?*
 qui est le plus grand? *who is the tallest?*

EXERCISE ON THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Who is that gentleman? What gentleman? The one that speaks
parle
 so well. Who is that lady that [is speaking] to your mother? It is
parle
 the lady that we saw yesterday. Give me that book that is on that
vimes hier m.
 table. Give me the book that you have read. The lady of whom
f. lu
 you speak is my cousin. I have lost four of my birds, two of which
parlez perdu

died last week, and two this morning. I have seen six beautiful
moururent *ou* *beau*
 horses, three of which are as white as snow, and the three others as
blanc *neige, f.*
 black as jet. My brother has taken something, the effect of which
noir *jais, m.* *pris quelque chose* *effet, m.*
 was astonishing. The gentleman whose horse is at the door. The
a été étonnant *porte, f.*
 lady whose daughter you have taught. [Here are] two horses, which
enseigné *voici*
 [do you prefer?] Here are two oranges, which will you have? Do
préfèrez-vous
 you know that boy to whom [I have been speaking?] Do you know
j'ai *parlé*
 the gentleman for whom [I have been working?] the book in which
j'ai *travaillé*
 you have written your name. The chair on which you are sitting is
écrit *nom* *chaise, f.* *assis*
 broken. The pencil with which you have written your name is very
cassé
 bad sir. Who is in the garden? What have you done?
fait

EN { *some*
any
of it
for it
with it
of him
of her
of them }

This relative or supplying pronoun is very frequently used in French; it holds the place of a word already mentioned, which we do not wish to repeat, (it is used in speaking of persons or things.)

EXAMPLES.

avez-vous de l'argent?	have you any money?
oui j'en ai.	yes I have some
voulez-vous m'en donner?	will you give me some?
je vous en donnerai si vous en	I will give you some if you want
avez besoin.	any
combien de frères avez-vous?	how many brothers have you?
j'en ai trois.	I have three (of them)
mon père a trois chevaux com-	my father has three horses, how
bien votre père en a-t'il?	many has yours? (horses)
il en a quatre.	he has four (horses)
vous avez beaucoup d'amis mais	you have many friends, but I
j'en ai plus que vous.	have more than you
	(friends)
avez-vous des ennemis?	have you any enemies?
non je n'en ai point.	no I have none (enemies)
avez-vous des amis?	have you any friends?

oui j'en ai plusieurs.
j'en suis bien aise.
et moi aussi.

yes I have several (friends)
I am very glad of it
so am I

Y { *to him*
to her
to it
to them
in it
in them
therein
there }

This relative or supplying pronoun relates sometimes to persons, but speaking of things it is of frequent and indispensable use, as it must always take the place of a word mentioned before, and which we do not wish to repeat, (particularly used in speaking of places).

EXAMPLES.

j'irai à Paris l'année prochaine	<i>I shall go to Paris next year</i>
voulez-vous y aller avec moi ?	<i>will you go with me ? (there)</i>
étiez-vous au concert hier soir ?	<i>were you at the concert last night ?</i>
non je n'y étais pas, y étiez-vous ?	<i>no I was not, were you (there)</i>
allez-vous quelquefois au théâtre ?	<i>do you sometimes go to the theatre ?</i>
je n'y vais que très rarement.	<i>I go but very seldom (there)</i>
je n'y vais jamais.	<i>I never go-(there)</i>
mon frère n'aime pas y aller.	<i>my brother does not like to go (there)</i>
si vous allez à Paris j'aimerais y aller avec vous.	<i>if you go to Paris I should like to go with you</i>
j'y consens très volontiers si votre père veut y consentir.	<i>I willingly consent to it if your father will consent to it</i>
je suis sûre qu'il y consentira.	<i>I am sure he will consent to it</i>
votre café n'est pas assez sucré	<i>your coffee is not sweet enough,</i>
mettez y du sucre.	<i>put some sugar in it</i>

N.B. The relative or supplying pronouns *en* and *y*, must be expressed in French, though they are frequently understood in *English* and must be put before the verb, except when the verb is in the imperative mood (affirmative), then the pronoun must be put after the verb.

vous avez de l'argent, voulez-vous m'en donner ?	<i>you have some money, will you give me some ?</i>
vous avez des pommes donnez-m'en.	<i>you have some apples, give me some ?</i>
je vous en ai donné assez.	<i>I have given you enough (of them)</i>

EXERCISE ON THE RELATIVE OR SUPPLYING PRONOUNS

EN AND Y.

Have you any money? Yes, I have some. Will you give me a
 little? [I will give] you as much as you like. How many brothers
 have you? I have three. We have two horses, how many have
 you? We have four. My brother has one more than you, for he
 has five. You have many books, but I have more than you. He
 has some money in his purse, but I have none in mine. I am very
 sorry for it, but he is very glad of it. Were you at the concert last
 night? yes I was, were you? no I was not, (there) but my brother
 was. Will you consent to accompany me? Yes, I consent to it with
 pleasure. I am [very much] obliged to you for it. Your tea is not
 sweet enough, put some sugar in it. I thank you [there is] enough.

peu je donnerai voudrez. combien de
car
beaucoup de mais
dans bourse, f. point
fâché bien aise étiez-vous — m. hier
soir étais
consentir à accompagner consens avec
plaisir très obligé n'est pas
assez sucré mettez sucre, m. remercie il y a

OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

The indefinite pronouns denote persons and things in an indefinite and general manner.

These pronouns are :

on	one, people, they, we
quiconque	whoever, whosoever, any person whatever
quelqu'un, m. } quelqu'une, f. }	somebody, some one
quelques-uns, m. } quelques-unes, f. }	a few, some, (a few of, some of)
chacun, m. } chacune, f. }	each, every one
autrui	others, other people
l'un l'autre	one another, each other, (two)
les uns, les autres	one another, each other, (more than two)

l'un et l'autre	<i>both *</i>
tous les deux, <i>m.</i> }	<i>both of them</i>
toutes les deux, <i>f.</i> }	
personne	<i>nobody, no one, not any body</i>
tout le monde	<i>every body, every one</i>

OBSERVATION.

The pronoun *on* is of very extensive use in the French language; we employ it whenever we speak in general terms, without designating any particular person.

The pronoun *on* always requires the verb to be in the third person singular.

The pronoun *personne* also requires the verb to be in the third person singular, and takes the negative *ne* before the verb.

LESSON.

<i>on</i> dit qu'il est marié.	<i>they say he is married</i>
<i>on</i> m'a dit cela.	<i>I was told so, they told me so</i>
<i>on</i> dit que vous chantez très bien.	<i>they say you sing very nicely</i>
qui vous a dit cela?	<i>who told you that?</i>
<i>on</i> me l'a dit.	<i>I was told so</i>
<i>on</i> m'a donné un livre.	<i>I had a book given me</i>
quelqu'un me l'a dit.	<i>somebody told me so</i>
vous a-t-on envoyé un paquet?	<i>had you a parcel sent you?</i>
quiconque vous a dit cela ne	<i>whoever told you that (so), did</i>
vous a pas dit la vérité.	<i>not tell you the truth</i>
<i>on</i> dit qu'elle est très malade.	<i>they say she is very ill</i>
<i>on</i> leur a dit de venir ici.	<i>they were told to come here</i>
quelqu'un m'a dit qu'elle est	<i>somebody told me she is better</i>
mieux.	
<i>personne</i> ne m'a dit cela.	<i>nobody told me that</i>
vous a-t-on dit de venir?	<i>have you been told to come?</i>
<i>personne</i> n'est venu me voir.	<i>nobody came to see me</i>
<i>personne</i> ne chante aussi bien	<i>nobody sings so well as you</i>
que vous.	
<i>personne</i> ne peut faire cela.	<i>nobody can do this (or that)</i>

* The word *both* cannot in French be followed by a substantive. We do not say: both my father and mother; we say my father and my mother, *mon père et ma mère*. We do not say: both my sisters; we say, my two sisters, *mes deux sœurs*. We do not say: both religion and piety; we say, religion and piety, *la religion et la piété*, etc.

personne ne croit cela.
avez-vous vu *quelqu'un*?

non, je n'ai vu *personne*.

connaissez-vous *quelqu'un*?
non, je ne connais *personne*.
tout le monde vous connaît.
tout le monde sait cela.
tout le monde peut faire cela.
ils s'aiment *l'un l'autre*.
aimons-nous *les uns les autres*.

je les aime *l'un et l'autre*. }
je les aime *tous les deux*. }
je les aime *tous*.
et moi aussi.

nobody believes that
have you seen anybody? (*somebody*)

no, I have not seen anybody (*nobody*)

do you know anybody?

no, I know nobody

everybody knows you

everybody knows that

everybody can do that

they love each other, (*two*)

let us love one another, (*more than two*)

I like them both

I like them all

so do I

EXERCISE ON THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

They say that Mr. D. is in Paris. Whosoever is rich is [everything]
dit que *à* *tout*

Whoever is poor [is nothing]. Whoever told you so is wrong. Some
n'est rien *a dit cela a tort*

one knocks at the door. Somebody told me that this morning. Give
frappe *a dit* *matin, m.*

me a few of these cherries. I have seen somebody in your garden.
cerises, f.

[Do not speak] ill of other people, everybody [will respect] you. If
ne parlez pas mal *respectera* *si*

you respect nobody, nobody [will respect] you. These two little boys
respectez *ne respectera*

love each other. [Let us love] one another, it is a divine precep
s'aiment *aimons-nous* *divin*

taught by our Saviour.
enseigné par *Sauveur*

OF VERBS.

The verb is a word which expresses affirmation.

There are six kinds of verbs :—

les deux verbes auxiliaires

les verbes actifs

les verbes passifs

les verbes neutres

les verbes pronominaux

les verbes impersonnels

the two auxiliary verbs

the active

the passive

the neuter

the pronominal

the impersonal

OF THE NOMINATIVE OR SUBJECT—SUJET.

We call *nominative* or *subject*, the *person* or the *thing* that does the action expressed by the verb.

When we say, nous étudions, *we study*; the action expressed by the word *study*, is done by *us* or *we*, the pronoun *we*, doing the action of *studying* is *nominative* or *subject* to the verb *study*. Mon frère travaille, *my brother works*; the action of *working* is done or performed by my brother, the noun *brother* is *nominative* or *subject* to the verb *work*.

An easy way of finding the nominative or subject, is to put before the verb the question *qui est-ce qui?* who? for persons, *qu'est-ce qui?* what? for things; the answer will show the nominative:

EXAMPLES.

"vous chantez très bien."
you sing very well

qui est-ce qui chante?
who sings?

"cette maison est bien bâtie."
that house is well built

qu'est-ce qui est bien bâtie?
what is well built?

the answer to "qui est-ce qui chante?" est vous.
who sings? is you

the answer to "qu'est-ce qui est bien bâtie?" est cette maison.
what is well built? is that house

Vous is nominative (sujet) to the verb sing, chante;
maison is nominative (sujet) to the verb is, est

OF THE OBJECTIVE OR OBJECT (RÉGIME).

The *objective* or *object* is the person or the thing that receives the action expressed by the verb.

We, in French, call the person or the thing that receives the action expressed by the verb *régime* or *complément*, they are so called because they complete the affirmation of the verb.

There are two sorts of *régimes*, le régime direct, et le régime indirect.

RÉGIME DIRECT.

The *régime direct* is the word upon which the action of the verb falls directly, without the help of any preposition.

An easy and simple way of finding the *régime direct* of

a verb, is to put after that verb, the question *qui ?* for persons, or *quoi ?* for things; the answer will show the *régime direct*.

EXAMPLES.

j'aime ma mère. <i>I love my mother</i>	j'aime qui ? <i>I love whom ?</i>	ma mère. <i>my mother</i>
j'aime l'Angleterre. <i>I like England</i>	j'aime quoi ? <i>I like what ?</i>	l'Angleterre. <i>England</i>
j'ai lu votre livre. <i>I have read your book</i>	j'ai lu quoi ? <i>I have read what ?</i>	votre livre. <i>your book</i>

The words *mère*, *Angleterre*, and *livre*, are the *régimes directs* of the verbs *aimer* and *lire*. They are called *régimes directs* because they do not require any preposition to convey the action expressed by the verb.

REGIME INDIRECT.

The *régime indirect* is the word upon which the action of the verb cannot fall directly without the help of a preposition.

An easy and simple way of finding the *régime indirect* of a verb, is to put after that verb the questions *à qui ?* *de qui ?* etc., for persons, and *à quoi ?* *de quoi ?* etc., for things; the answer will shew the *régime indirect*.

j'ai écrit à ma mère. <i>I have written to my mother</i>	j'ai écrit à qui ? <i>I have written to whom ?</i>	à ma mère. <i>to my mother</i>
je vous parle. <i>I speak to you</i>	je parle à qui ? <i>I speak to whom ?</i>	à vous. <i>to you</i>
nous parlons de votre maison. <i>we are speaking of your house</i>	nous parlons de quoi ? <i>we are speaking of what ?</i>	de votre maison. <i>of your house</i>

The answers *à ma mère*, *à vous*, *de votre maison*, are the *régimes indirects* of the verbs *écrire* and *parler*. They are called *régimes indirects* because the action expressed by the verb cannot be conveyed without the help of a preposition.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB.

avoir, *to have*.

INFINITIF.

avoir, *to have*.

present participle	past participle.
ayant <i>having</i>	eu <i>had</i>

INDICATIF.

PRESENT.

1	j'ai	<i>I have</i>
	tu as	<i>thou hast</i>
	il a	<i>he has</i>
	elle a	<i>she has</i>
	nous avons	<i>we have</i>
	vous avez	<i>you have</i>
	ils ont	<i>they have, m.</i>
	elles ont	<i>they have, f.</i>

IMPARFAIT.

2	si, if	j'avais	<i>I had</i>	or used to have
		tu avais	<i>thou hadst</i>	
		il avait	<i>he had</i>	
		nous avions	<i>we had</i>	
		vous aviez	<i>you had</i>	
		ils avaient	<i>they had</i>	

PASSE DEFINI.

3	aussitôt que	j'eus	as soon as	<i>I had</i>
		tu eus		<i>thou hadst</i>
		il eut		<i>he had</i>
		nous eûmes		<i>we had</i>
		vous eûtes		<i>you had</i>
		ils eurent		<i>they had</i>

FUTUR.

4	j'aurai	<i>I shall or will have</i>
	tu auras	<i>thou shalt have</i>
	il aura	<i>he shall have</i>
	nous aurons	<i>we shall have</i>
	vous aurez	<i>you shall have</i>
	ils auront	<i>they shall have</i>

CONDITIONNEL.

	j'aurais	<i>I should or would have</i>
	tu aurais	<i>thou wouldst have</i>
	il aurait	<i>he would have</i>
5	nous aurions	<i>we would have</i>
	vous auriez	<i>you would have</i>
	ils auraient	<i>they would have</i>

IMPERATIF.

	aie	<i>have (thou)</i>
6	ayons	<i>let us have</i>
	ayez	<i>have (you)</i>

SUBJONCTIF.

PRESENT.

	que j'aie	<i>that I may have</i>
	que tu aies	<i>that thou mayest have</i>
	qu'il ait	<i>that he may have</i>
7	que nous ayons	<i>that we may have</i>
	que vous ayez	<i>that you may have</i>
	qu'ils aient	<i>that they may have</i>

IMPARFAIT.

	que j'eusse	<i>that I might have</i>
	que tu eusses	<i>that thou mightest have</i>
	qu'il eût	<i>that he might have</i>
8	que nous eussions	<i>that we might have</i>
	que vous eussiez	<i>that you might have</i>
	qu'ils eussent	<i>that they might have</i>

EXERCISE ON THE VERB—TO HAVE.

I have a book, and my sister has a basket full of strawberries. We
panier, m. plein
 have a beautiful white horse. We used to have a pretty little dog.
blanc

As soon as we had finished our breakfast we went for a walk. We
aussitôt que fini déjeuner allâmes faire promenade, f.
 shall have some money to-morrow. We would have a horse if we
demain

had enough money. We would have had two horses if we had had
assez de
 enough money. My brother would have a French book if he had
 time to read it. My brother would have had a French book if he had
le temps de lire

had time to read it. I would have a carriage if I had as much money
voiture, f. autant de
 as you. I would have had a carriage if I had had the opportunity.
occasion
 Let us have a little patience—have a little perseverance. [I must
un peu de il faut que je
 have a new hat. [He must] have a new coat. [My brother must]
neuf chapeau, m. il faut qu'il habit, m. il faut que mon frère
 have his money. We must have a little courage. You must have a
 little money. They must have something to eat. [These ladies must
quelque chose à manger il faut que ces dames
 have something to do.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB.

Etre, to be.

INFINITIF.

être, to be.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

étant being

PAST PARTICIPLE

été been

INDICATIF.

PRESENT.

	je suis	I am
	tu es	thou art
	il est	he is
	elle est	she is
1	nous sommes	we are
	vous êtes	you are
	ils sont	they are, m.
	elles sont	they are, f.

IMPARFAIT.

	si j'étais,	if I was *	or used to be
	tu étais	thou wast	
	il était	he was	
2	nous étions	we were	
	vous étiez	you were	
	ils étaient	they were	

* The imparfait, *was, était*, expresses the state in which a person or a thing was or used to be in a time passed; the passé défini, *was, fut*, expresses an action done, performed momentarily in a time past.

PASSE DEFINI.

3	aussitôt que	je fus	as	<i>I was</i>
		tu fus		<i>thou wast</i>
		il fut		<i>he was</i>
		nous fûmes	as soon as	<i>we were</i>
		vous fûtes		<i>you were</i>
		ils furent		<i>they were</i>

FUTUR.

	je serai	<i>I shall or will be</i>
	tu seras	<i>thou shalt be</i>
	il sera	<i>he shall be</i>
4	nous serons	<i>we shall be</i>
	vous serez	<i>you shall be</i>
	ils seront	<i>they shall be</i>

CONDITIONNEL.

	je serais	<i>I should or would be</i>
	tu serais	<i>thou wouldst be</i>
	il serait	<i>he would be</i>
5	nous serions	<i>we would be</i>
	vous seriez	<i>you would be</i>
	ils seraient	<i>they would be</i>

IMPERATIF.

	sois	<i>be (thou)</i>
6	soyons	<i>let us be</i>
	soyez	<i>be (you)</i>

SUBJONCTIF.

PRESENT.

	que je sois	<i>that I may be</i>
	que tu sois	<i>that thou mayest be</i>
	qu'il soit	<i>that he may be</i>
7	que nous soyons	<i>that we may be</i>
	que vous soyez	<i>that you may be</i>
	qu'ils soient	<i>that they may be</i>

IMPARFAIT.

	que je fusse	<i>that I might be</i>
8	que tu fusses	<i>that thou mightest be</i>
	qu'il fût	<i>that he might be</i>

que nous fussions	<i>that we might be</i>
que vous fussiez	<i>that you might be</i>
qu'ils fussent	<i>that they might be</i>

EXERCISE ON THE VERB—TO BE.

I am very happy. He is happier than you. She is very industrious.
heureux *industrieux*
 Your sister is more industrious than mine. We are very glad to see
bien aise de voir
 you. You are very tall for your age. They are as rich as your
grand pour *riche*
 father. These young ladies are very modest.
demoiselles *e.*

I used to be very studious. I was very generous when I was
studieux *généreux* *quand*
 young. We were very happy when we were at school. You have
jeune *école*
 been very busy to-day. Your sister was very busy when I saw her.
occupé aujourd'hui *vis*
 We shall be very glad to see your sister to-night. You would be
de *ce soir*
 very happy if you were more industrious. You would have been
eux
 happier if you had been more attentive to your lessons. Be modest
heureux
 and discreet. Let us be diligent. [We must] be good girls if we
e. *il faut que nous*
 wish to be rewarded. [You must] be faithful to your friends, your
voulons *récompensé* *il faut que vous* *fidèle* *ami*
 friends will be faithful to you.

OF ACTIVE VERBS.

An active verb expresses an action done by the subject, and has a *régime direct* (object),

Nous aimons notre maître. *We love our master.*

Nous, is the subject, *aimons*, the active verb, and *maître* the *régime direct* or object.

Obs.—A verb is active, whenever you can put after it the word *quelqu'un*, somebody, or *quelque chose*, something; *nous aimons quelqu'un*, *vous avez fait quelque chose*.

There are in French four different conjugations, which are known by the termination of the infinitive.

the 1st. terminates in	<i>er</i>
the 2nd.	„ <i>ir</i>
the 3rd.	„ <i>oir</i>
the 4th.	„ <i>re</i>

FIRST CONJUGATION IN *ER*.

INFINITIF.

Parler, *to speak.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

parlant, *speaking*

PAST PARTICIPLE.

parlé, *spoken*

INDICATIF.

PRESENT.

	je parle	<i>I speak or am speaking *</i>
	tu parles	<i>thou speakest or art speaking</i>
1	il parle	<i>he speaks or is speaking</i>
	nous parlons	<i>we speak or are speaking</i>
	vous parlez	<i>you speak or are speaking</i>
	ils parlent	<i>they speak or are speaking</i>

IMPARFAIT.

	je parlais	<i>I was speaking *</i>	<i>or used to speak</i>
	tu parlais	<i>thou wast speaking</i>	
2	il parlait	<i>he was speaking</i>	
	nous parlions	<i>we were speaking</i>	
	vous parliez	<i>you were speaking</i>	
	ils parlaient	<i>they were speaking</i>	

PASSE DEFINI.

	je parlai	<i>I spoke</i>
	tu parlas	<i>thou spokest</i>
3	il parla	<i>he spoke</i>
	nous parlâmes	<i>we spoke</i>
	vous parlâtes	<i>you spoke</i>
	ils parlèrent	<i>they spoke</i>

* In French we never use the verb *to be* with any other verb; we cannot say, *je suis parlant*, we say, *je parle*; we cannot say, *j'étais parlant*, we say, *je parlais* instead of *j'étais parlant*; *nous chantions*, instead of *nous étions chantant*; *je lisais*, instead of *j'étais lisant*; *j'ai lu*, instead of *j'ai été lisant*; *nous avons pensé*, instead of *nous avons été pensant*.

FUTUR.

	je parlerai	<i>I shall or will speak</i>
	tu parleras	<i>thou shalt speak</i>
4	il parlera	<i>he shall speak</i>
	nous parlerons	<i>we shall speak</i>
	vous parlerez	<i>you shall speak</i>
	ils parleront	<i>they shall speak</i>

CONDITIONNEL.

	je parlerais	<i>I should or would speak</i>
	tu parlerais	<i>thou wouldst speak</i>
5	il parlerait	<i>he would speak</i>
	nous parlerions	<i>we would speak</i>
	vous parleriez	<i>you would speak</i>
	ils parleraient	<i>they would speak</i>

IMPERATIF.

	parle	<i>speak (thou)</i>
6	parlons	<i>let us speak</i>
	parlez	<i>speak (you)</i>

SUBJONCTIF.

PRESENT.

	que je parle	<i>that I may speak</i>
	que tu parles	<i>that thou mayest speak</i>
7	qu'il parle	<i>that he may speak</i>
	que nous parlions	<i>that we may speak</i>
	que vous parliez	<i>that you may speak</i>
	qu'ils parlent	<i>that they may speak</i>

IMPARFAIT.

	que je parlasse	<i>that I might speak</i>
	que tu parlasses	<i>that thou mightest speak</i>
8	qu'il parlât	<i>that he might speak</i>
	que nous parlussions	<i>that we might speak</i>
	que vous parlassiez	<i>that you might speak</i>
	qu'ils parlassent	<i>that they might speak</i>

Thus are conjugated more than 3,000 French verbs of the first conjugation, terminating in *er*.

The following table will teach the pupil to write or conjugate any verb ending in the infinitive in *er*, by changing *er* into the terminations given in the following table.

PRONOUNS.	INFINITIVE. parl—er, <i>to speak.</i>				PRESENT PARTICIPLE. parl—ant, <i>speak—ing.</i>		PAST PARTICIPLE. parl—é, <i>spok—en—ed.</i>	
	Indicative.				Condi- tional.	Impe- rative.	Subjunctive.	
	Présent.	Impar- fait.	Passé défini.	Future.			Présent.	Impar- fait.
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
je	e	ais	ai	erai	erais	—	e	asse
tu	es	ais	as	eras	erais	e	es	asses
il	e	ait	a	era	erait	—	e	ât
nous	ons	ions	âmes	erons	erions	ons	ions	ussions
vous	ez	iez	âtes	erez	eriez	ez	iez	assiez
ils	ent	aient	èrent	eront	eraient	—	ent	assent

The pupil may now write or conjugate all the following verbs, by simply referring to the above table.

arriver *to arrive*
 allumer *to light*
 appeler *to call*
 passer chez *to call upon*
 apporter *to bring (carry)*
 amener *to bring (lead)*
 acheter *to buy*
 avaler *to swallow*
 aimer *to love, to like*
 apprivoiser *to tame*
 arracher *to snatch*
 avouer *to confess*
 arrêter *to stop*
 assister *to assist*
 assister à *to attend (be pre-
sent)*
 avancer *to advance*

balayer *to sweep*
 baisser *to lower*
 baisser *to let down*
 baiser *to kiss*
 blesser *to wound*
 boîter *to go lame*
 brûler *to burn*
 badiner *to joke*
 boutonner *to button*
 brosser *to brush*
 brasser *to brew*
 bêcher *to dig*
 bercer *to rock*
 briser *to break*
 commencer à *to begin*
 couper *to cut*

chatouiller	<i>to tickle</i>	enseigner	<i>to teach</i>
chasser	<i>to shoot (with a gun)</i>	espérer	<i>to hope</i>
chasser	<i>to hunt</i>	essuyer	<i>to wipe</i>
chauffer	<i>to warm</i>	ébaucher	<i>to sketch</i>
continuer à	<i>to continue</i>	esquisser	<i>to sketch</i>
cacher	<i>to hide, to conceal</i>	écumer	<i>to foam</i>
chercher	<i>to look for, to seek</i>	ébranler	<i>to shake</i>
changer	<i>to change</i>	écouter	<i>to listen to</i>
casser	<i>to break</i>	effrayer	<i>to frighten</i>
compter	<i>to count, to reckon</i>	épier	<i>to spy</i>
		égratigner	<i>to scratch</i>
couler	<i>to flow</i>	enterrer	<i>to bury</i>
considérer	<i>to consider</i>	exiger	<i>to require</i>
commander	<i>to command</i>	étudier	<i>to study</i>
chanter	<i>to sing</i>	épargner	<i>to spare, to save</i>
		étonner	<i>to astonish</i>
		emporter	<i>to take away, (to carry)</i>
donner	<i>to give</i>	emmener	<i>to take away, (to lead)</i>
durer	<i>to last</i>		
déjeuner	<i>to breakfast</i>		
diner	<i>to dine</i>	fermer	<i>to shut</i>
danser	<i>to dance</i>	fermer à clef	<i>to lock</i>
diminuer	<i>to diminish</i>	fumer	<i>to smoke</i>
dégoûter	<i>to disgust</i>	faucher	<i>to mow</i>
diviser	<i>to divide</i>	frissonner	<i>to shiver, to shudder</i>
deviner	<i>to guess</i>		
délier	<i>to loosen</i>	flatter	<i>to flatter</i>
délier	<i>to untie</i>	flamber	<i>to blaze</i>
douter	<i>to doubt</i>	frotter	<i>to rub</i>
désespérer	<i>to despair</i>	frapper	<i>to knock, to strike</i>
découper	<i>to carve</i>	fouetter	<i>to whip</i>
déchirer	<i>to tear, to rend</i>		
demander	<i>to ask, to ask for</i>		
dessiner	<i>to draw</i>	garder	<i>to keep</i>
désirer	<i>to wish, to desire</i>	glisser	<i>to slide, to slip</i>
demeurer	<i>to dwell, to live</i>	glaner	<i>to glean</i>
débarquer	<i>to land</i>	goûter	<i>to taste</i>
		grimper	<i>to climb</i>
éclairer	<i>to lighten</i>	griffonner	<i>to scribble</i>
empêcher de	<i>to prevent, to hinder</i>	graver	<i>to engrave</i>
			<i>to scold</i>
essayer de	<i>to try to</i>	gronder	<i>to growl</i>
employer	<i>to use, to employ</i>		

habiter	<i>to inhabit</i>	mendier	<i>to beg</i>
hisser	<i>to hoist</i>	mépriser	<i>to despise, to scorn</i>
habiller	<i>to dress</i>	montrer	<i>to show</i>
habituer	<i>to use, to accus- tom</i>	nettoyer	<i>to clean</i>
hacher	<i>to chop, to hash</i>	nier	<i>to deny</i>
hâler	<i>to scorch, to burn</i>	nager	<i>to swim</i>
informer	<i>to acquaint, to in- form</i>	oser	<i>to dare</i>
imprimer	<i>to impress, to print</i>	ôter	<i>to take off</i>
improviser	<i>to extemporize</i>	ôter	<i>to take away</i>
inviter	<i>to invite</i>	obliger de	<i>to oblige</i>
inonder de	<i>to overrun, to overflow</i>	oublier	<i>to forget</i>
inventer	<i>to invent</i>	prier	<i>to pray</i>
jeter	<i>to throw, to cast, fling</i>	prier de	<i>to request</i>
juger	<i>to judge</i>	pêcher	<i>to sin</i>
jurer	<i>to swear</i>	pêcher	<i>to fish</i>
jouer	<i>to play</i>	passer	<i>to pass</i>
jeûner	<i>to fast</i>	passer chez	<i>to call upon</i>
labourer	<i>to plough</i>	patiner	<i>to skate</i>
laisser	<i>to leave (some- thing)</i>	partager	<i>to share</i>
laisser tomber	<i>to drop</i>	porter	<i>to carry, to take to (a place)</i>
lier	<i>to bind</i>	porter	<i>to wear</i>
lier	<i>to tie</i>	presser	<i>to squeeze</i>
laver	<i>to wash</i>	pleurer	<i>to weep, to cry</i>
louer	<i>to praise</i>	penser, à	<i>to think</i>
mener	<i>to take to (lead)</i>	pardonner, à	<i>to forgive, to par- don</i>
monter	<i>to mount</i>	prodiguer	<i>to lavish</i>
monter	<i>to wind up</i>	pousser	<i>to shoot (in vege- tation)</i>
mêler	<i>to mix</i>	planter	<i>to plant</i>
manger	<i>to eat</i>	payer	<i>to pay</i>
manquer	<i>to miss, to fail to want, to be short of</i>	plier	<i>to fold, to bend</i>
marquer	<i>to mark</i>	ployer	<i>to bend, to bow</i>
		prêcher	<i>to preach</i>
		plisser	<i>to plait</i>
		quitter	<i>to leave (a place) to quit to part with</i>

répéter	to repeat	taquiner	to tease
réciter	to recite	tourner	to turn
régner	to reign	tomber	to fall
rester	{ to stay to remain	tonner	to thunder
remuer	to stir, to move	trouver	to find
regarder	to look at	tâcher de	to try to
ramasser	to pick up	trembler	to shake, to trem- ble
repasser	to iron	tirer	to pull off, to draw
ramper	to creep	tousser	to cough
relier	to bind	tuer	to kill
souffler	to blow	tromper	to deceive
saigner	to bleed	tricoter	to knit
soulever	to lift up	toucher	to touch
souper	to sup	travailler	to work
soupçonner	to suspect	tisser	to weave
sauter	to jump	user	to wear out
semer	to sow	usurper	to usurp
souhaiter	to wish	voyager	to travel
signer	to sign	visiter	to visit
sonner	to ring	verser	to pour, to upset
scier	to saw	voler	to steal, to rob
siffler	to whistle, to hiss		
soliciter	to solicit		
sommeiller	to slumber		

Remarks on the Orthography of some Verbs of the first Conjugation.

1st. In verbs ending in *ger*, as *manger*, to eat, *partager*, to share, the letter *e* must always follow the *g* before the vowels *a*, *o*, as *nous mangeons*, *je mangeais*, *il jugea*, etc; this is done to soften the pronounciation of the letter *g*, which is hard before *a* and *o*.

Thus are conjugated :

abréger	to abridge	corriger	to correct
affliger	to afflict	dédommager	to indemnify
allonger	to lengthen	interroger	to interrogate
arranger	to set in order	juger	to judge

ménager	to manage	ravager	to ravage
nager	to swim	saccager	to sack, to plunder
partager	to share		
plonger	to dip, plunge, to dive	songer	to think, dream
		venger	to revenge
ranger	to set in order, to range	voyager	to travel, etc.

2nd. Verbs ending in *cer*, as *placer*, *menacer*, take a cedilla under the (*ç*) when placed immediately before the vowels *a*, *o*, as *il avança*, *nous avançons*.

This takes place in order to preserve to the *c* the soft pronunciation of the letter *s*, because *c* is hard before *a*, *o*.

Thus are conjugated :—

avancer	to advance	percer	to bore
annoncer	to announce	prononcer	to pronounce
amorcer	to bait, to decoy	renoncer	to renounce
forcer	to force, to compel	sucer	to suck
		tracer	to trace, etc.
menacer	to threaten		

3rd. Verbs ending in *er*, and which have the final syllable of the infinitive preceded by *e* short (*é*) as *considérer*, *répéter*, change that *e* short into *e* open or long, (*è*) before a mute syllable, as *je repète*, *il digère*, *ils espèrent*.

Thus are conjugated :—

altérer	to alter	modérer	to moderate
céder	to cede	opérer	to operate
célébrer	to celebrate	persévérer	to persevere
céler	to conceal, hide	préférer	to prefer
décéder	to die	régner	to reign
digérer	to digest	révéler	to reveal
empiéter	to encroach	tempérer	to temper, calm
espérer	to hope	tolérer	to tolerate
excéder	to exceed	pénétrer	to penetrate
inquiéter	to disturb, vex		

4th. Verbs ending in *er*, which have the final syllable of the infinitive preceded by *e* mute (*e*) as *lever*, *mener*, change

that *e* mute (*e*) into *e* open (*è*) before a mute syllable, as, *lever je lève, ils lèvent, mener, elle mène, vous mènerez.*

Thus are conjugated :—

achever	to finish	peser	to weigh
dépecer	to carve meat	promener	to walk
enlever	to lift up	ramener	to bring back
lever	to lift up, remove	relever	to raise again
mener	to lead	semer	to sow, etc.

5th. In verbs ending in the infinitive with *eler, eter*, as *appeler, jeter, projeter*, etc.. the letters *l* and *t* are doubled when followed by an *e* mute (*e*) or a syllable mute; *j'appelle, vous appellerez, ils appellent, tu jettes, elles projettent*, etc., but we would write with a single *l* or *t*, *nous appelons, vous projetez il jeta*; because the vowel which follows *l, t*, is not an *e* mute (*e*) or a syllable mute.

Thus are conjugated :—

acheter	to buy	carreler	to pave with square tiles
becqueter	to peck		
cacheter	to seal	chanceler	to totter
crocheter	to pick a lock	ciseler	to chase, carve
décacheter	to unseal	déceler	to reveal, disclose
empaqueter	to pack up	ensorceler	to bewitch
épousseter	to dust	étinceler	to sparkle
étiqueter	to put a note to	épeler	to spell
feuilleter	to turn over a book	ficeler	to cord, tie with packthread
fureter	to ferret		
jeter	to throw	geler	to freeze
projeter	to project	harceler	to torment, tease
rejeter	to reject	niveler	to level
amonceler	to heap up	peler	to peel, pare
appeler	to call	rappeler	to recall
atteler	to put to	renouveler	to renew, etc.
bourreler	to torment, rack		

Remark. The above observation is not applicable to the verbs *céler, révéler, empiéter, végéter*, etc., which, ending in *éler, éter*, and not in *eler, eter*, cannot double the consonants *l, t*, but changes the *e* short (*é*) into *e* open (*è*) before an *e* mute, *je cèle, je révèle, ils végètent, ils empiètent* (See page 94).

6th. Verbs ending in the present participle with *iant*, as *prier*, *lier*, *nier*, etc., in which the present participle is *priant*, *liant*, *niant*, take *ii* in the first and second person plural, of the *imparfait* in the *indicatif*, and of the *present* of the *subjonctif*: *nous priions*, *vous priez*, *que nous lions*, *que vous liez*. This takes place in order to distinguish these tenses from the present indicative, which is, *nous prions*, *vous priez*, *nous lions*, *vous liez*, etc.

Thus are conjugated:—

allier	to join with, ally	initier	to initiate
amplifier	to amplify	lier	to tie, bind
apprécier	to appreciate	manier	to handle
associer	to associate	négocier	to negotiate
bonifier	to improve	plier	to fold, bend
certifier	to certify	remercier	to thank
colorier	to apply colours to a picture	sacrifier	to sacrifice
décrier	to cry down	supplier	to supplicate
dédier	to dedicate	simplifier	to simplify
épier	to spy	terrifier	to terrify
expier	to expiate	varier	to vary, alter

7th. Verbs ending in the present participle in *yant*, as *pâyer*, *appuyer*, etc., in which the present participle is *payant*, *appuyant*, take a *y* and an *i* in the first and second person plural, of the *imparfait* of the *indicatif*, and of the *present* of the *subjonctif*: *nous payions*, *vous payiez*, *que nous appuyions*, *que vous appuyiez*.

All verbs ending in the infinitive with *yer*, change the *y* into *i* before an *e* mute (*e*), or a syllable mute (*ent*); *je paie*, *il paie*, *elles paient*, *nous paierons*, etc.

Thus are conjugated;—

balayer	to sweep	délayer	to dilute
bégayer	to stammer	déployer	to display
côtoyer	to coast	effrayer	to frighten
condoyer	to elbow	employer	to employ
déblayer	to rid, clear	ennuyer	to weary, annoy
défrayer	to defray	essayer	to try

essuyer	to wipe	octroyer	to grant
louvoyer	to tack	plancheoyer	to board
nettoyer	to clean	rayer	to erase, to cross
noyer	to drown	rudoyer	to use roughly

EXERCISE ON VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

We breakfast [every morning] at eight o'clock. We used to breakfast
déjeuner tous les matins heure
fast every morning [at half-past eight]. We were breakfasting when
à huit heures et demie quand
your brother came. We breakfasted yesterday with Mr. D.'s brother.
vint hier avec
We shall breakfast with her to-morrow morning. We would breakfast
demain matin
fast with you if you were a good girl. We would have breakfasted
bon
with you if you had been a good girl. I would give you a new
neuf
bouquet if you were more attentive to your lessons. I would have
chapeau
given you a new dress if you had been more industrious. We would
robe, f.
invite him if he were a little more agreeable in society. We would
inviter en société
have invited them if they had not been so proud with my brother.
fier
Let us forgive them, for they are repentant. Forgive him for this
pardonner à car pour
time. Let us call your sister. Let us call upon Mr. D. [You must]
fois, f. appeler passer chez il faut que vous
call us to-morrow morning. You must call upon us to-morrow
demain matin
evening. [He must] confess his fault. Your sister must begin to
soir il faut qu'il confesser commencer à
learn French. [I wish you to] speak to my sister. [I should like
apprendre je désire que vous je voudrais que
you to] speak to her.
vous

SECOND CONJUGATION IN *IR*.

INFINITIF.

Finir, to finish.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.
finissant, finishing.PAST PARTICIPLE.
fini, finished.

K

INDICATIF.

PRESENT.

	je finis	<i>I finish or am finishing</i>
	tu finis	<i>thou finishest or art finishing</i>
	il finit	<i>he finishes or is finishing</i>
1	nous finissons	<i>we finish or are finishing</i>
	vous finissez	<i>you finish or are finishing</i>
	ils finissent	<i>they finish or are finishing</i>

IMPARFAIT.

	je finissais	<i>I was finishing</i>	<i>or used to finish</i>
	tu finissais	<i>thou wast finishing</i>	
	il finissait	<i>he was finishing</i>	
2	nous finissions	<i>we were finishing</i>	
	vous finissiez	<i>you were finishing</i>	
	ils finissaient	<i>they were finishing</i>	

PASSE DEFINI.

	je finis	<i>I finished</i>
	tu finis	<i>thou finishedst</i>
	il finit	<i>he finished</i>
3	nous finîmes	<i>we finished</i>
	vous finîtes	<i>you finished</i>
	ils finirent	<i>they finished</i>

FUTUR.

	je finirai	<i>I shall or will finish</i>
	tu finiras	<i>thou shalt finish</i>
	il finira	<i>he will finish</i>
4	nous finirons	<i>we shall finish</i>
	vous finirez	<i>you shall finish</i>
	ils finiront	<i>they shall finish</i>

CONDITIONNEL.

	je finirais	<i>I would or should finish</i>
	tu finirais	<i>thou wouldst finish</i>
	il finirait	<i>he would finish</i>
5	nous finirions	<i>we would finish</i>
	vous finiriez	<i>you would finish</i>
	ils finiraient	<i>they would finish</i>

IMPERATIF.

	finis	<i>finish (thou)</i>
6	finissons	<i>let us finish</i>
	finissez	<i>finish (you)</i>

SUBJONCTIF.

PRESENT.

	que je finisse	<i>that I may finish</i>
	que tu finisses	<i>that thou mayst finish</i>
	qu'il finisse	<i>that he may finish</i>
7	que nous finissions	<i>that we may finish</i>
	que vous finissiez	<i>that you may finish</i>
	qu'ils finissent	<i>that they may finish</i>

IMPARFAIT.

	que je finisse	<i>that I might finish</i>
	que tu finisses	<i>that thou mightst finish</i>
	qu'il finît	<i>that he might finish</i>
8	que nous finissions	<i>that we might finish</i>
	que vous finissiez	<i>that you might finish</i>
	qu'ils finissent	<i>that they might finish</i>

The following table will teach the pupil to write or to conjugate any verb ending in *ir*, by changing *ir* into the terminations given in the following table :—

PRONOUNS.	INFINITIVE. <i>fin—ir, to finish.</i>				PRESENT PARTICIPLE. <i>fin—issant, finish—ing.</i>		PAST PARTICIPLE. <i>fin—i, finish—ed.</i>	
	Indicative.				Condi- tional.	Impe- rative.	Subjunctive.	
	Présent.	Impar- fait.	Passé défini.	Future.			Présent.	Impar- fait.
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
je	is	issais	is	irai	irais	—	isse	issee
tu	is	issais	is	iras	irais	is	isses	issee
il	it	issait	it	ira	irait	—	isse	it
nous	issons	issions	imes	irons	irions	issons	issions	issions
vous	issez	issiez	îtes	irez	iriez	issez	issiez	issiez
ils	issent	issaient	irent	iront	iraient	—	issent	issent

Thus are conjugated the following verbs :—

avertir	to warn
agir	to act
attendrir	to soften
asservir	to enslave
applaudir	to applaud
adoucir	to sweeten
affaiblir	to weaken
aplanir	to level
accomplir	to accomplish, to fulfil
affranchir	to frank a letter

bâtir	to build
bannir	to banish
bénir	to bless

compatir	to sympathise
convertir	to convert
choisir	to choose, to select

définir	to define
démolir	to demolish
désobéir à	to disobey

établir	to establish
enrichir	to enrich
embellir	to embellish
éblouir	to dazzle
ensevelir	to bury, to shroud

fournir	to supply, furnish
franchir	to leap over
fleurir	to blossom

finir de	to finish
grandir	to grow tall
garnir	to furnish, trim
guérir	to cure
gémir	to groan, moan

jouir de	to enjoy, to possess
----------	----------------------

languir	to languish
---------	-------------

nourrir	to feed
---------	---------

obéir à	to obey
---------	---------

punir	to punish
pâler	to grow pale
polir	to polish
périr de	to perish
pourrir	to rot

remplir	to fill, discharge, to fulfil
---------	-------------------------------

retentir	to resound
réussir	to succeed, be successful

rougir	to blush
réfléchir	to reflect
raffaichir	to refresh

saisir	to seize, to lay hold
--------	-----------------------

trahir	to betray
--------	-----------

EXERCISE ON VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

I am building a large house for my nephew. She blushes when
bâtir grand f. neveu rougir
 you speak to her. My sister grows pale when we speak of that
pâler
 event. She always acts very prudently. He used to act very incon-
évènement, m. agir toujours prudemment incon-

siderately, but now he acts conscientiously. He succeeded in his
sidérément *consciencieusement* *réussir dans*
 undertaking. He has succeeded in his business. He will punish you
entreprise, f. *affaires, pl.*
 if you are not industrious. He would punish you young ladies if
mesdemoiselles
 you were not industrious. He would have punished them if they
eux *m.*
 had not been attentive to their lessons. I will warn your brother of
avertir
 his danger. I would have warned him if he had been in danger.
m. *en*
 Finish your breakfast. Have you finished your breakfast? You
déjeuner
 must finish your work to-day. You must have finished reading that
ouvrage *de lire*
 book by three o'clock. [I wish you to] punish that boy for he has
à *heures* *je désire que vous* *car*
 been very lazy.
 paresseux

THIRD CONJUGATION IN OIR.

INFINITIF.

Devoir, *to owe.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

devant, *owing.*

PAST PARTICIPLE.

dû, *owed.*

INDICATIF.

PRESENT.

	je dois	<i>I owe</i>
	tu dois	<i>thou owest</i>
	il doit	<i>he owes</i>
1	nous devons	<i>we owe</i>
	vous devez	<i>you owe</i>
	ils doivent	<i>they owe</i>

IMPARFAIT.

	je devais	<i>I was owing</i>
	tu devais	<i>thou wast owing</i>
	il devait	<i>he was owing</i>
3	nous devions	<i>we were owing</i>
	vous deviez	<i>you were owing</i>
	ils devaient	<i>they were owing</i>

or used to owe

PASSE DEFINI.

	je dus	<i>I owed</i>
	tu dus	<i>thou owedst</i>
	il dut	<i>he owed</i>
3	nous dûmes	<i>we owed</i>
	vous dûtes	<i>you owed</i>
	ils durent	<i>they owed</i>

FUTUR.

	je devrai	<i>I shall or will owe</i>
	tu devras	<i>thou shalt owe</i>
	il devra	<i>he shall owe</i>
4	nous devrons	<i>we shall owe</i>
	vous devrez	<i>you shall owe</i>
	ils devront	<i>they shall owe</i>

CONDITIONNEL.

	je devrais	<i>I should or would owe</i>
	tu devrais	<i>thou wouldst owe</i>
	il devrait	<i>he would owe</i>
5	nous devrions	<i>we would owe</i>
	vous devriez	<i>you would owe</i>
	ils devraient	<i>they would owe</i>

IMPERATIF.

	dois	<i>owe (thou)</i>
6	devons	<i>let us owe</i>
	devez	<i>owe (you)</i>

SUBJONCTIF.

PRESENT.

	que je doive	<i>that I may owe</i>
	que tu doives	<i>that thou mayst owe</i>
	qu'il doive	<i>that he may owe</i>
7	que nous devions	<i>that we may owe</i>
	que vous deviez	<i>that you may owe</i>
	qu'ils doivent	<i>that they may owe</i>

IMPARFAIT.

	que je dusse	<i>that I might owe</i>
	que tu dusses	<i>that thou mightst owe</i>
	qu'il dût	<i>that he might owe</i>
8	que nous dussions	<i>that we might owe</i>
	que vous dussiez	<i>that you might owe</i>
	qu'ils dussent	<i>that they might owe</i>

The pupil will now learn the following table of terminations, which will teach him to write or conjugate any verbs ending in the infinitive in *avoir*, by changing *avoir* into the terminations given in the following table.

PRONOMS	INFINITIVE. d—avoir, to owe.				PRESENT PARTICIPLE. d—avant, owing.		PAST PARTICIPLE. d—u, owed.	
	Indicative.				Condi- tional.	Impe- rative.	Subjunctive.	
	Présent.	Impar- fait.	Passé défini.	Future.			Présent.	Impar- fait.
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
je	ois	avais	us	evrai	evrais	—	oive	ussee
tu	ois	avais	us	evras	evrais	ois	oives	usses
il	oit	avait	ut	evra	evrait	—	oive	ût
nous	evons	evions	ûmes	evrons	evrions	evons	evions	ussions
vous	eviez	eviez	ûtes	evrez	evriez	eviez	eviez	ussiez
ils	oivent	oient	urent	evront	evraient	—	oivent	ussent

The pupil can now write or conjugate the following verbs by referring to the above table.

apercevoir	to perceive, dis- cover	recevoir	to receive
percevoir	to collect	devoir	to owe
concevoir	to conceive	redevoir	to owe still or again

Obs.—In the third conjugation, verbs ending in *avoir* are the only ones that are conjugated like *devoir*, all other verbs ending in *oir*, as *voir*, to see, *savoir*, to know, etc., are irregular and are to be learned separately, (*see Irregular Verbs.*)

The verb *devoir*, is used in French not only in the sense of *owing money*, but also in the sense of *should* or *ought*; as:—

je devrais parler	<i>I ought to speak</i>
vous devriez chanter	<i>you should or ought to sing</i>

Devoir, is used in French instead of the verb *être*, to be,

when this verb is in English followed by another verb in the infinitive; as:—

nous devons chanter ce soir
mon frère doit aller à Paris

*we are to sing this evening
my brother is to go to Paris*

Devoir, is also used in French in the sense of *must*, when this English word does not express necessity, obligation, compulsion, or want; as:—

vous devez être fatigué
il doit être très riche

*you must be tired
he must be very rich*

EXAMPLES ON THE PRESENT.

je dois
tu dois
il doit
nous devons
vous devez
ils doivent

chanter

*I am
thou art
he is
we are
you are
they are*

to sing

EXAMPLES ON THE IMPERFECT.

je devais
tu devais
il devait
nous devions
vous deviez
ils devaient

aller

*I was
thou wast
he was
we were
you were
they were*

to go

EXAMPLES ON—MUST.

je dois être fatigué
tu dois être fatigué
il doit être fatigué
elle doit être fatiguée
nous devons être fatigués
vous devez être fatigué
ils doivent être fatigués, *m.*
elles doivent être fatiguées, *f.* }

*I must be tired
thou must be tired
he must be tired
she must be tired
we must be tired
you must be tired
they must be tired*

EXAMPLES ON—MUST HAVE BEEN.

j'ai dû être content
tu as dû être content
il a dû être content

*I must have been pleased
thou must have been pleased
he must have been pleased*

nous avons dû être contents	<i>we must have been pleased</i>
vous avez dû être contents	<i>you must have been pleased,</i>
ils ont dû être contents, <i>m.</i>	<i>they must have been pleased</i>
elles ont dû être contentes, <i>f.</i> }	

EXAMPLES ON THE CONDITIONAL.

(should or ought.)

je devrais parler	<i>I should or ought to speak</i>
tu devrais parler	<i>thou shouldst speak</i>
il devrait parler	<i>he ought to speak</i>
nous devrions parler	<i>we ought to speak</i>
vous devriez parler	<i>you ought to speak</i>
ils devraient parler	<i>they ought to speak</i>
vous devriez avoir de l'argent	<i>you ought to have money</i>

EXAMPLES ON—SHOULD OR OUGHT TO HAVE.

j'aurais dû avoir un livre	<i>I ought to have had a book</i>
tu aurais dû avoir un livre	<i>thou shouldst have had a book</i>
il aurait dû avoir un livre	<i>he ought to have had a book</i>
nous aurions dû aller à Paris	<i>we ought to have gone to Paris</i>
vous auriez dû aller à Paris	<i>you ought to have gone to Paris</i>
ils auraient dû aller à Paris	<i>they should have gone to Paris</i>
mon frère aurait dû être content	<i>my brother ought to have been pleased</i>
ma sœur aurait dû être contente	<i>my sister ought to have been pleased</i>
vous auriez dû avoir le prix	<i>you ought to have had the prize</i>

EXERCISE ON VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

He receives letters from Paris every day. He has received some
recevoir
 money to-day. He owes me twenty pounds. I owe you ten shillings.
aujourd'hui *lires*
 We used to receive our friends every evening. We received an
tous les soirs
 invitation last week. We have received an invitation from your
 ——— *f. la semaine dernière* ——— *f.*
 brother. Have you received a letter from my friend? We shall

receive them as your friends. We would receive her with pleasure.
plaisir, m.
 We would have received her with pleasure. My brother would re-
avec
 ceive you with great pleasure if you were a good boy. My brother
grand
 would have received you with great pleasure if you had been a little
recevoir *un peu*
 more attentive to his instructions. Let us receive them all together
f. *ensemble*
 this evening. [I wish you to] receive my little sister in your estab-
je désire que vous *établissement*
 lishment. [He wishes you to] collect the taxes for him. You must
liassement *il désire que vous* *percevoir* *impôt*
 receive us in your company if you please.
compagnie s'il vous plaît

EXERCISE ON IDIOMATICAL TENSES OF THE VERB DEVOIR.

I am to sing a duet with my sister. My brother is to sing a French
chanter *duo, m*
 song this evening. What are we to do this afternoon? You are to
chanson, f. *faire* *après-midi, f.*
 stay at home. What am I to learn? You are to learn your lessons.
rester à la maison *apprendre*
 What is he to write? He is to write his French exercise. We were
 to go for a walk this afternoon. My father was to come here this
aller faire une promenade *venir*
 evening. What was he to do? What were we to learn? You must
 be very tired sir. Your sister must be very pleased. [How old is]
content *quel âge a*
 your niece? She must be ten. She must have been very pleased to
dix ans *de*
 see you. You must have been very ill my poor boy. They must
voir *malade*
 have been surprised to see him. I am very poor. I am to learn
surpris de
 French. My brother is very industrious. He is to have my watch.
montre, f.
 You are very rich. You are to be here this evening. They are very
 lazy. They are to be punished. These girls are very industrious.
 They are to be rewarded.

EXERCISE ON SHOULD OR OUGHT TO—AND SHOULD OR
OUGHT TO HAVE.

You ought to speak to your father. Your father ought to give
parler
 you a new dress. You ought to give us something. Your uncle
robe, f. *quelque chose*

ought to go to Paris. These ladies ought to learn music. They
apprendre musique, f.
 ought to be very rich. She ought not to be so proud. You ought
fier
 not to read that book. They ought not to have my money. Your
lire m.
 sister ought not to have your horse. You ought to have been here
ici
 sir. You ought to have come before miss. You ought to have given
venir avant
 me a silk dress. Your father ought to have given you a velvet bon-
soie velours cha-
 not. You should not do that sir. You ought not to have done that
peau, m. faire
 miss. You ought to play as well as your sister. You ought to have
jouer
 played better than your cousin. He ought not to have been so lazy.
mieux paresseux

FOURTH CONJUGATION IN *RE*.

INFINITIF.

Vendre, to sell.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

vendant, *selling.*

PAST PARTICIPLE

vendu, *sold.*

INDICATIF.

PRESENT.

	je vends	<i>I sell or am selling</i>
	tu vends	<i>thou sellest or art selling</i>
1	il vend	<i>he sells or is selling</i>
	nous vendons	<i>we sell or are selling</i>
	vous vendez	<i>you sell or are selling</i>
	ils vendent	<i>they sell or are selling</i>

IMPARFAIT.

	je vendais	<i>I was selling</i>
	tu vendais	<i>thou wast selling</i>
	il vendait	<i>he was selling</i>
2	nous vendions	<i>we were selling</i>
	vous vendiez	<i>you were selling</i>
	ils vendaient	<i>they were selling</i>

or used to sell

PASSE DEFINI.

	je vendis	<i>I sold</i>
	tu vendis	<i>thou soldest</i>
3	il vendit	<i>he sold</i>
	nous vendîmes	<i>we sold</i>
	vous vendîtes	<i>you sold</i>
	ils vendirent	<i>they sold</i>

FUTUR.

	je vendrai	<i>I shall or will sell</i>
	tu vendras	<i>thou shalt sell</i>
4	il vendra	<i>he shall sell</i>
	nous vendrons	<i>we shall sell</i>
	vous vendrez	<i>you shall sell</i>
	ils vendront	<i>they shall sell</i>

CONDITIONNEL.

	je vendrais	<i>I should or would sell</i>
	tu vendrais	<i>thou wouldst sell</i>
5	il vendrait	<i>he would sell</i>
	nous vendrions	<i>we would sell</i>
	vous vendriez	<i>you would sell</i>
	ils vendraient	<i>they would sell</i>

IMPERATIF.

	vends	<i>sell (thou)</i>
6	vendons	<i>let us sell</i>
	vendez	<i>sell (you)</i>

SUBJONCTIF.

PRESENT.

	que je vende	<i>that I may sell</i>
	que tu vendes	<i>that thou mayst sell</i>
7	qu'il vende	<i>that he may sell</i>
	que nous vendions	<i>that we may sell</i>
	que vous vendiez	<i>that you may sell</i>
	qu'ils vendent	<i>that they may sell</i>

IMPARFAIT.

	que je vendisse	<i>that I might sell</i>
	que tu vendisses	<i>that thou mightst sell</i>
8	qu'il vendît	<i>that he might sell</i>
	que nous vendissions	<i>that we might sell</i>
	que vous vendissiez	<i>that you might sell</i>
	qu'ils vendissent	<i>that they might sell</i>

The pupil will now learn the following table of terminations, which will teach him to write or conjugate any regular verb ending in the infinitive with *dre*, by changing *dre* into the terminations given in the following table.

PRONOMS.	INFINITIVE. ven—dre, <i>to sell.</i>				PRESENT PARTICIPLE. ven—dant, <i>sell—ing.</i>		PAST PARTICIPLE. ven—du, <i>sold.</i>	
	Indicative.				Condi- tional.	Impe- rative.	Subjunctive.	
	Présent.	Impar- fait.	Passé défini.	Future.			Présent.	Impar- fait.
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
je	ds	dais	dis	drai	drais	—	de	disse
tu	ds	dais	dis	dras	drais	ds	des	disses
il	d	daît	dit	dra	draît	—	de	dit
nous	dons	dions	dîmes	drons	drions	dons	dions	dissions
vous	dez	diez	dîtes	dre	driez	dez	diez	dissiez
ils	dent	daient	dirent	dront	draient	—	dent	dissent

The pupil may now write or conjugate the following verbs, simply by referring to the above table.

attendre *to wait for*
 attendre *to expect*
 correspondre *to correspond*
 condescendre *to condescend*
 confondre *to confound*
 descendre *to come down*
 défendre *to forbid*
 détordre *to untwist*
 étendre *to stretch out*
 entendre *to hear **
 fendre *to cleave*
 fondre *to melt*
 mordre *to bite*

perdre *to lose, to waste*
 pendre *to hang*
 dépendre (de) *to depend (upon)*
 prétendre *to pretend*
 répandre *to spill, spread*
 rendre *to render, return*
 répondre (à) *to answer*
 refondre *to melt again*
 revendre *to sell again*
 suspendre *to suspend*
 tendre *to spread*
 tondre *to shear, crop*
 tordre *to twist*

* *to hear*
to hear from
to hear of
to hear that

entendre
 recevoir des nouvelles de
 entendre parler de
 entendre dire que

The preceding verbs are called *regular verbs*, because they are all conjugated, or written regularly according to the model given for each conjugation.

EXERCISE ON VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

We are waiting for you sir. We were waiting for your sister.

attendre

We did not expect you to-day. You are wasting your time. You

attendre

perdre

temps

have been wasting your time for nothing sir. I am losing my money.

rien

I have lost two lessons. I hear you miss. I have heard them sing.

entendre

chanter

Do you correspond with your cousin? I have been corresponding with him, but we do not correspond now. I hear somebody sing.

mais

quelqu'un

I come down every morning at eight o'clock. I used to come down

descendre

heure

formerly at seven. I came down yesterday morning at nine. I shall

autrefois

come down to-morrow morning at six o'clock if I can. I would

heure

puis

come down at five o'clock if I could. Come down sir, we are waiting

pouvais

for you. You must come down miss, your mother is waiting for you.

Your mother [wishes you to] come down directly miss. [We wish

désire que vous

tout de suite

nous désirons

them] to come down [at the same time] as you sir.

qu'ils

en même temps

EXERCISE ON THE ENGLISH VERB—TO HEAR.

Have you heard Miss B. sing? Yes, I have heard her. Have you heard from your brother? No, I have not heard from him yet. Have you heard of that accident? Yes, we have heard of it. Have

m.

you heard that Miss C. was married? Yes, I heard it this morning.

marié

My father (has) heard from Paris this morning, I (have) heard you sing this morning. We (have) heard of a dreadful accident this

terrible

m.

morning, have you heard of it? They (have) heard that Mr. G. was in Paris, have you heard it? No, but my mother (has) heard it. We

hear from her every week. We used to hear from him every day.

toutes les semaines

tous les jours

We heard from them last week. I hope we shall hear from you

la semaine dernière

espérer

very soon. We should hear from him if he were in England. We

bientôt

should have heard of him if he had been in England.

CONJUGATION OF VERBS WITH NEGATIVES.

REMARKS.

The English *no*, and *not*, are rendered in French by *ne*, *pas*; *ne* is put immediately after the nominative or subject, whether it be a noun or a pronoun, and *pas*, after the verb in simple tenses, and between the auxiliary and the past participle in compound tenses.

EXAMPLES.

je <i>ne</i> parle <i>pas</i>	<i>I do not speak</i>
je <i>n'</i> ai <i>pas</i> parlé	<i>I have not spoken</i>
nous <i>ne</i> jouons <i>pas</i>	<i>we do not play</i>
nous <i>n'</i> avons <i>pas</i> joué	<i>we have not been playing</i>
vous <i>ne</i> chantez <i>pas</i> bien	<i>you do not sing well</i>
vous <i>n'</i> avez <i>pas</i> bien chanté	<i>you have not sung well</i>
ils <i>n'</i> ont <i>pas</i> d'argent	<i>they have no money</i>
ils <i>n'</i> ont <i>pas</i> eu d'argent	<i>they have not had any money</i>

When the verb is in the present of the infinitive, the two negatives *ne pas*, are put before the verb.

EXAMPLE.

<i>ne pas</i> manger	<i>not to eat</i>
<i>ne pas</i> travailler	<i>not to work</i>
<i>ne pas</i> étudier	<i>not to study</i>

Besides the negative *pas*, there are several others, which are used instead of *pas*; these negatives are:—

ne—pas	<i>not, no</i>
ne—point	<i>not, no</i>
ne—jamais	<i>never</i>
ne—rien	<i>nothing</i>
ne—que	<i>but, only</i>
ne—plus	<i>no more, no longer</i>
ne—aucun	<i>none, not any, no.</i>
ne—nul	<i>none, not any, no</i>
ne—personne	<i>nobody, no one</i>
ne—ni	<i>neither, nor</i>
ni—non plus	<i>nor,—either, nor—neither</i>

These negatives are used exactly like *pas*, that is to say, *ne* is placed before the verb, and any of the above negatives after it, instead of *pas*. When the verb is in the present of the infinitive, the two negatives are put before the verb, except *que* and *personne*, which must always be put after the infinitive.

EXAMPLES.

je <i>ne</i> chante <i>pas</i>	<i>I do not sing (I sing not)</i>
je <i>ne</i> chante <i>jamais</i>	<i>I never sing (I sing never)</i>
je <i>n'ai jamais</i> chanté	<i>I never have sung</i>
nous <i>ne</i> mangeons <i>rien</i>	<i>we eat nothing</i>
nous <i>n'avons rien</i> mangé	<i>we have eaten nothing</i>
je <i>n'ai que</i> trois francs	<i>I have but three francs</i>
mon frère <i>n'a plus</i> d'argent	<i>my brother has no more money</i>
il <i>n'est plus</i> à Paris	<i>he is no longer in Paris</i>
je <i>n'ai aucun</i> motif de	<i>I have no motive to</i>
nous <i>n'avons vu personne</i>	<i>we have seen nobody</i>
je <i>n'ai ni</i> frère <i>ni</i> sœur	<i>I have neither brother nor sister</i>
nous <i>n'avons ni</i> pain <i>ni</i> vin	<i>we have neither bread nor wine</i>
<i>ni</i> moi non plus, <i>ni</i> vous non plus	<i>nor I either, nor you neither</i>

EXERCISE ON VERBS USED NEGATIVELY.

We do not study enough. We have not studied enough. I never
étudier assez
 speak to him. I have never spoken to him. Tell your brother not
dites à
 to eat that apple. Tell him not to waste his time. You eat nothing.
de de perdre temps
 You have not eaten anything. We have only one lesson to learn.
à apprendre
 We have but three shillings to lose. She has no more money. She
à perdre
 is no longer in Paris. We have no reason to complain. I have seen
à raison, i. de nous plaindre
 nobody to-day. We have spoken to nobody. I have neither gold
 nor silver. He has neither patience nor perseverance. She can nei-
peut
 ther read nor write. I have no time to study. I (have) had no time
lire écrire le temps de
 to come. We have nothing to do. He has nothing to eat. You
de venir à faire
 ought not to be so idle. You ought not to have been so idle. Your
paresseux
 brother should not do so. Nor you either. I do not know him. No
 more do I. No more do you.

CONJUGATION OF VERBS INTERROGATIVELY.

REMARKS.

1st. To conjugate a verb interrogatively is to place the pronoun, (nominative, or subject,) after the verb, and connecting them by a hyphen (-).

EXAMPLES.

avez-vous fini ?	<i>have you done, or finished ?</i>
parlez-vous Français ?	<i>do you speak French ? (speak you)</i>
pouvez-vous chanter ?	<i>can you sing ?</i>
ont-ils appris leurs leçons ?	<i>have they learnt their lessons ?</i>

2nd. When the third person singular of a verb ends with a vowel, we place between the verb and the pronoun *il*, *elle*, or *on*, the *euphonic* letter *t*, preceded and followed by a hyphen (-t-).

EXAMPLES.

a-t-il fini ?	<i>has he done or finished ?</i>
chante-t-elle bien ?	<i>does she sing well ?</i>
a-t-elle chanté ?	<i>did she sing ?</i>
mange-t-il beaucoup ?	<i>does he eat much ?</i>
a-t-il mangé beaucoup ?	<i>did he eat much ?</i>
danse-t-elle aussi bien que vous ?	<i>does she dance as well as you ?</i>
dansera-t-il ce soir ?	<i>will he dance to-night ?</i>
chantera-t-elle demain ?	<i>will she sing to-morrow ?</i>
pleure-t-il ?	<i>is he crying ?</i>
joue-t-elle ?	<i>is she playing ?</i>
que joue-t-on ce soir ?	<i>what do they play this evening ?</i>

3rd. When the subject of a verb is a substantive, that substantive comes first in interrogation, and the pronoun *il*, *elle*, *ils*, or *elles*, is put after the verb, and must be connected with it by a hyphen (-).

EXAMPLES.

votre frère est-il chez lui ?	<i>is your brother at home ?</i>
votre cousin est-il venu ce matin ?	<i>did your cousin come this morning ?</i>

votre sœur parle-t-elle Français?	<i>does your sister speak French?</i>
votre cousine a-t-elle parlé à mon frère?	<i>did your cousin speak to my brother?</i>
mon père ira-t-il à Paris?	<i>will my father go to Paris?</i>
ce garçon est-il industriel?	<i>is that boy industrious?</i>
ce garçon était-il ici ce matin?	<i>was that boy here this morning?</i>
cette fille chantera-t-elle ce soir?	<i>will that girl sing this evening?</i>
pourquoi cette fille vous a-t-elle parlé?	<i>why did that girl speak to me?</i>
ces hommes vont-ils en France?	<i>are these men going to France?</i>
ces femmes pleurent-elles?	<i>are these women crying?</i>
ces femmes ont-elles pleuré?	<i>did these women cry?</i>

4th. When the first person singular of a verb used interrogatively ends with an *e* mute, we put over that *e* an accent *aigu* (*é*).

EXAMPLES.

parlé-je bien?	<i>do I speak well?</i>
chanté-je aussi bien que vous?	<i>do I sing as well as you?</i>

But we have another form of interrogation which is more frequently used, particularly when the verb has only one syllable, and that is by placing the words "*est-ce que*" before the nominative which then must precede the verb.

EXAMPLES.

est-ce que vous croyez cela?	} <i>do you believe that?</i>
ou croyez-vous cela?	
dépensé-je trop?	} <i>do I spend too much?</i>
est-ce que je dépense trop?	
allez-vous à Paris cette année?	} <i>Are you going to Paris</i>
est-ce que vous allez à Paris?	
ira-t-elle en France?	} <i>will she go to France?</i>
est-ce qu'elle ira en France?	
aura-t-il assez d'argent?	} <i>will he have money</i>
est-ce qu'il aura assez d'argent?	
qu'avez-vous mangé?	} <i>what have you been</i>
ou qu'est-ce que vous avez mangé?	

MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF A VERB USED

INTERROGATIVELY.

INDICATIF.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

parlé-je? or est-ce que je parle?	do I	} speak?
parles-tu?	doest thou	
parle-t-il?	does he	
parlons-nous?	do we	
parlez-vous?	do you	
parlent-ils?	do they	
est-ce qu'il parle?	does he	
est-ce que vous parlez?	do you	

Compound Tenses.

PASSE INDEFINI.

ai-je parlé? or est-ce que j'ai parlé?	have I	} spoken?
as-tu parlé?	hast thou	
a-t-il parlé?	has he	
avons-nous parlé?	have we	
avez-vous parlé?	have you	
ont-ils parlé?	have they	
a-t-il parlé?	did he speak?	
avez-vous chanté?	did you sing?	

IMPARFAIT.

parlais-je?	was I	} speaking?
parlais-tu?	wast thou	
parlait-il?	was he	
parlions-nous?	were we	
parliez-vous?	were you	
parlaient-ils?	were they	

PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.

avais-je parlé?	had I	} spoken?
avais-tu parlé?	hadst thou	
avait-il parlé?	had he	
avions-nous parlé?	had we	
aviez-vous parlé?	had you	
avaient-ils parlé?	had they	

PASSE DEFINI.

parlai-je	did I	} speak?
parlas-tu?	didst thou	
parla-t-il?	did he	
parlâmes-nous?	did we	
parlâtes-vous?	did you	
parlèrent-ils?	did they	

PASSE ANTERIEUR. *

eus-je parlé?	had I	} spoken?
eus-tu parlé?	hadst thou	
eut-il parlé?	had he	
eûmes-nous parlé?	had we	
eûtes-vous parlé?	had you	
eurent-ils parlé?	had they	

FUTUR SIMPLE.

parlerai-je?	shall I	} speak?
parleras-tu?	shalt thou	
parlera-t-il	shall he	
parlerons-nous?	shall we	
parlerez-vous?	shall you	
parleront-ils?	shall they	

FUTUR ANTERIEUR.

aurai-je parlé?	shall I	} have spoken?
auras-tu parlé?	shalt thou	
aura-t-il parlé?	shall he	
aurons-nous parlé?	shall we	
aurez-vous parlé?	shall you	
auront-ils parlé?	shall they	

* Only a few verbs are used interrogatively in the *passé antérieur*.

CONDITIONNEL.

PRESENT.

parlerais-je ?	would I	} speak ?
parlerais-tu ?	wouldst thou	
parlerait-il ?	would he	
parlerions-nous ?	would we	
parleriez-vous ?	would you	
parleraient-ils ?	would they	

PASSE.

aurais-parlé ?	would I	} have spoken ?
aurais-tu parlé ?	wouldst thou	
aurait-il parlé ?	would he	
aurions-nous parlé ?	would we	
auriez-vous parlé ?	would you	
auraient-ils parlé ?	would they	

EXERCISE ON VERBS USED INTERROGATIVELY.

Does your sister speak French? Can your brother come to-night?
peut venir ce soir
 Is that boy industrious. Are those girls as industrious as your sister.
 [Are you going] to the concert? Did you speak to my father? What
allez-vous
 have you been eating? What has he been doing? What has she
fait
 been learning? Has your brother been smoking? Has your sister
appris fumer
 been singing? What have they been drinking? Why did you cry?
chanter bu pleurer
 Why did you speak to him? Why did your brother give her that
 book? Does he understand French? Does she know music? Do
comprendre suit musique, f.
 they like my horse? Shall I speak to him? Shall I give her that
 rose? Will she sing a song? Would I speak to him if he were not
f. chanson, f.
 a good boy? Would I have spoken to you if you had not been a
 good girl? [Must I] give her that beautiful horse? Must I speak
faut-il que je
 to her?

MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF A VERB USED INTERROGATIVELY AND NEGATIVELY.

REMARK.

To conjugate a verb interrogatively and negatively we place *ne*, before the verb, and *pas*, (or another negative) after the personal pronoun, (subject to the verb), both in simple and compound tenses.

INDICATIF.

PRESENT.

Simple Tense.

ne parlé-je pas ? or est-ce que	do I not	} speak ?
je ne parle pas ?		
ne parles-tu pas ?	dost thou not	
ne parle-t-il pas ?	does he not	
ne parlons-nous pas ?	do we not	
ne parlez-vous pas ?	do you not	
ne parlent-ils pas ?	do they not	

PASSE INDEFINI.

Compound Tense.

n'ais-je pas parlé ? or est-ce que	have I not	} spoken ?
que je n'ai pas parlé ?		
n'as-tu pas parlé ?	hast thou not	
n'a-t-il pas parlé ?	has he not	
n'avons-nous pas parlé ?	have we not	
n'avez-vous pas parlé ?	have you not	
n'ont-ils pas parlé ?	have they not	

IMPARFAIT.

Simple Tense.

ne parlais-je pas ?	was I not	} speaking ?
ne parlais-tu pas ;	wast thou not	
ne parlait-il pas ?	was he not	
ne parlions-nous pas ?	were we not	
ne parliez-vous pas ?	were you not	
ne parlaient-ils pas ?	were they not	

PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.

Compound Tense.

n'avais-je pas parlé ?	had I not	} spoken ?
n'avais-tu pas parlé ?	hadst thou not	
n'avait-il pas parlé ?	had he not	
n'avions-nous pas parlé ?	had we not	
n'aviez-vous pas parlé ?	had you not	
n'avaient-ils pas parlé ?	had they not	

PASSE DEFINI.

Simple Tense.

ne parlai-je pas ?	did I not	} speak ?
ne parlais-tu pas ?	didst thou not	
ne parla-t-il pas ?	did he not	
ne parlâmes-nous pas ?	did we not	
ne parlâtes-vous pas ?	did you not	
ne parlèrent-ils pas ?	did they not	

PASSE ANTERIEUR.

No Compound Tense.

FUTUR SIMPLE.

Simple Tense.

ne parlerai-je pas ? ,	shall I not	} speak ?
ne parleras-tu pas ?	shalt thou not	
ne parlera-t-il pas ?	shall he not	
ne parlerons-nous pas ?	shall we not	
ne parlerez-vous pas ?	shall you not	
ne parleront-ils pas ?	shall they not	

FUTUR ANTERIEUR.

Compound Tense.

n'aurai-je pas parlé ?	shall I not have	} spoken ?
n'auras-tu pas parlé ?	shalt thou not have	
n'aura-t-il pas parlé ?	shall he not have	
n'aurons-nous pas parlé ?	shall we not have	
n'aurez-vous pas parlé ?	shall you not have	
n'auront-ils pas parlé ?	shall they not have	

CONDITIONNEL.

PRESENT.

Simple Tense.

ne parlerais-je pas ?	would I not	} speak ?
ne parlerais-tu pas ?	wouldst thou not	
ne parlerait-il pas ?	would he not	
ne parlerions-nous pas ?	would we not	
ne parleriez-vous pas ?	would you not	
ne parleraient-ils pas ?	would they not	

PASSE.

Compound Tense.

n'aurais-je pas parlé ?	would I not	} have spoken ?
n'aurais-tu pas parlé ?	wouldst thou not	
n'aurait-il pas parlé ?	would he not	
n'aurions-nous pas parlé ?	would we not	
n'auriez-vous pas parlé ?	would you not	
n'auraient-ils pas parlé ?	would they not	

N'est-ce pas ?

{	<i>am I not ?</i>	{	These interrogations refer to whatever has been said before.
	<i>is he not ?</i>		
	<i>are you not ?</i>		
	<i>are they not ?</i>		

EXAMPLES.

<i>he is very rich, is he not?</i>	<i>il est très riche n'est-ce pas?</i>
<i>you are very tired, are you not?</i>	<i>vous êtes très fatigué n'est-ce pas?</i>
<i>they are in London, are they not?</i>	<i>ils sont à Londres n'est-ce pas?</i>

EXERCISE ON VERBS USED BOTH INTERROGATIVELY AND
NEGATIVELY.

Do you not like music? Does she not like French? Does not
aimer musique, f. m.
 your father know that man? Do you not know him? Do you not
connait connaites
 know them? Are we not very good girls? Do we not learn our
apprenons
 lessons very well? Have we not learnt our lessons by heart very
appris cœur
 well? Did we not give you enough money? Did I not give him his
 money? Did he give you your book? Did he not give her some-
quelque
 thing? Why did you sing? Why did he not give you his money?
chose pourquoi
 When did you sing with Miss D.? When did your brother lose his
quand perdu
 lesson? Why did he not study his lesson? Why did not your sister
leçon, f. étudier
 tell him to learn his lessons? When will you be at home? When
dit de apprendre chez vous
 shall we have the pleasure to see you? Shall we not have the plea-
plaisir, m. de voir
 sure to see you to-morrow? You are tired, [are you not?] He is
fatigué n'est-ce pas
 very rich, [is he not?]
n'est-ce pas

OF PASSIVE VERBS.

The passive verb expresses an action received or suffered by the subject.

The passive verbs are nothing but the verb *être*, to be, conjugated in all its tenses, to which is added the past participle of any active verb; as:—

<i>je suis récompensé</i>	<i>I am rewarded</i>
<i>vous avez été puni</i>	<i>you have been punished</i>

Obs.—The past participle of a passive verb is always

used as a regular adjective, and consequently must agree with the subject of the verb to be; as:—

mon frère est <i>aimé</i>	<i>my brother is loved</i>
mes frères sont <i>aimés</i>	<i>my brothers are loved</i>
ma sœur est <i>aimée</i>	<i>my sister is loved</i>
mes sœurs sont <i>aimées</i>	<i>my sisters are loved</i>
je suis respecté or respectée	<i>I am respected</i>
tu es respecté or respectée	<i>thou art respected</i>
il est respecté	<i>he is respected</i>
elle est respectée	<i>she is respected</i>
nous sommes respectés	<i>we are respected</i>
vous êtes respectés	<i>you are respected</i>
ils sont respectés	<i>they are respected</i>
elles sont respectées	<i>they are respected</i>

OBSERVATION ON PASSIVE VERBS.

Passive verbs are not always used in French as they are in English; verbs used passively in French, must express an action received or suffered by the subject, whereas in English a verb is frequently used passively without expressing an action *passively* received or suffered by the nominative.

The English say, for instance:—

she is said to be very handsome
he is supposed to have lost his money
they were allowed to speak before the queen, etc.

In French the verbs to *say*, to *suppose*, to *allow*, etc., cannot be used passively, for we cannot *say* a person, we cannot *suppose* a person, we cannot *allow* a person.

Therefore a person (or a thing) { *cannot be said to be*
cannot be supposed to have
cannot be allowed to

To render in French such sentences as the above, we use verbs *actively*; that is, instead of saying:—

she is said to be	<i>we say</i>	they or one says that she is
he is supposed to have	<i>we say</i>	they or people suppose that he has
they are allowed to	<i>we say</i>	somebody allows them to, etc.

EXAMPLES.

on dit qu'elle est très belle	<i>she is said to be very handsome</i>
on suppose qu'il a perdu son argent	<i>he is supposed to have lost his money</i>
on leur permit de parler devant la reine	<i>they were allowed to speak before the queen</i>
on dit qu'il est très bon chanteur	<i>he is said to be a very good singer</i>
on leur a donné de l'argent.	<i>some money was given them</i>
on dit qu'elle est la plus belle de l'école.	<i>she is said to be the handsomest in the school</i>
on lui a donné un beau livre	<i>she had a beautiful book given to her</i>
qui vous a dit cela monsieur?	<i>who told you that sir?</i>
on pense que la reine ira à Paris	<i>it is thought that the queen will go to Paris</i>
on dit que le prince viendra à Londres	<i>it is said the prince will come to London</i>
on dit que votre sœur est très jolie	<i>your sister is said to be very pretty</i>
on nous a dit que vous alliez en Italie	<i>we have been told you were going to Italy</i>
on dit que votre frère est dangereusement blessé	<i>your brother is said to be dangerously wounded</i>
on dit des choses qui ne sont pas vraies	<i>things are said which are not true</i>
on suppose que nous sommes très riches	<i>we are supposed to be very rich</i>
on pense qu'ils sont très pauvres	<i>they are thought to be very poor</i>
on croit que vous êtes très malade	<i>you are thought to be very ill</i>
nous croyons que vous êtes heureux	<i>we believe you to be happy</i>
nous croyons qu'ils sont très honnêtes	<i>we believe them to be very honest</i>
je pense qu'il est très généreux	<i>I believe him to be very generous</i>
on m'a dit que vous étiez malade.	<i>I was told (that) you were ill</i>
on leur a dit que vous étiez à Paris	<i>they were told (that) you were in Paris</i>

EXERCISE ON PASSIVE VERBS.

My brother is esteemed by all his friends. My sister is respected
estimer de *respecter*

by every body. My brothers will be rewarded if they are industrious. My sisters will be rewarded if they are industrious. That man ought to be punished. This woman ought to be punished.

Those men ought to have been punished. These women ought to have been punished. My coat is worn out. Your dress is worn out.

My book has been burnt. Your letter has been burnt. Your letters have been burnt.

EXERCISE ON SOME VERBS USED PASSIVELY IN ENGLISH,
WHICH IN FRENCH MUST BE USED ACTIVELY.

I was told (that) your father (was going) to Germany. Who told you that? I was told so the other day. Germany is said to be a beautiful country. Your cousin is supposed to know the German language. We suppose him to be very rich. He was not allowed to speak. They are said to be very generous. I believe him to be very honest. You are said to have been very fortunate. They are supposed to have made a fortune.

OF NEUTER VERBS.

The neuter verb expresses an action done by the subject, but cannot have a *régime direct* (object without a preposition.)

REMARK

We have already said (page 87,) that a verb is active whenever you can put after it *quelqu'un*, or *quelque chose*; but if a verb cannot admit after it the words *quelqu'un*, or *quelque chose*, that verb is neuter.

We cannot say: je marche *quelqu'un*, nous demeurons *quelque chose*,
vous venez *quelqu'un*, etc.

Marcher, *demeurer* and *venir*, therefore are neuter verbs.

Neuter verbs are conjugated, some with the auxiliary *to have*, and some with the auxiliary *to be*.

REMARK.

The past participle of neuter verbs that are conjugated with the verb *to be*, are used as regular adjectives, and consequently must agree in gender and number with the subject of the verb *to be*, as:—

mon père est <i>venu</i>	<i>my father is come</i>
ma mère est <i>venue</i>	<i>my mother is come</i>
mes frères sont <i>venus</i>	<i>my brothers are come</i>
mes sœurs sont <i>venues</i>	<i>my sisters are come</i>

Some neuter verbs are in French conjugated with the verb *être*, when in English they are conjugated with the verb *avoir*. We will give here the most useful of those verbs.

Neuter Verbs, which in French take the verb *to be*, instead of the verb *to have*, in their compound tenses.

aller	<i>to go</i>	passer	<i>to pass by, to call upon</i>
venir	<i>to come</i>		
revenir	<i>to come back, to return</i>	remonter	<i>to go up again</i>
		rester	<i>to stay, to remain</i>
retourner	<i>to go back</i>		
arriver	<i>to arrive</i>	tomber	<i>to fall</i>
sortir	<i>to go out</i>	retomber	<i>to fall again</i>
partir	<i>to set out, to go, to start</i>	entrer	<i>to enter, to go in, to come in</i>
accourir	<i>to run to</i>		
convenir de	<i>to own, to agree</i>	rentrer	<i>to go in again</i>
		devenir	<i>to grow, to become (something) to become of</i>
intervenir	<i>to interpose</i>		
mourir	<i>to die</i>		
monter	<i>to go up, to ascend</i>	survenir	<i>to happen</i>
parvenir à	<i>to attain, to succeed</i>		

EXAMPLES.

Je serais venu plus tôt si je l'avais su. *I would have come sooner if I had known it.*

Neus serions revenus hier s'il avait fait beau temps.	<i>we would have come back yesterday if it had been fine weather.</i>
pourquoi n'êtes-vous pas venue plus tôt?	<i>why did you not come sooner?</i>
pourquoi votre frère n'est-il pas venu ce matin?	<i>why did not your brother come this morning?</i>
pourquoi votre sœur n'est-elle pas allée à Londres?	<i>why did not your sister go to London?</i>
mon frère serait arrivé à six heures s'il n'était pas resté chez vous	<i>my brother would have arrived at six o'clock if he had not stayed at yours</i>
vous seriez parti aujourd'hui si vous aviez voulu	<i>you would have started to day if you had wished</i>
sériez-vous sortie si vous aviez pu?	<i>would you have gone out if you had been able?</i>
nous sommes convenus d'aller à Paris?	<i>we have agreed to go to Paris</i>
ils sont devenus très rares	<i>they have become very scarce</i>
mon oiseau ne serait pas mort si vous lui aviez donné à manger	<i>my bird would not have died if you had given him something to eat</i>

EXERCISE ON SOME NEUTER VERBS, WHICH IN FRENCH TAKE
THE VERB—TO BE—INSTEAD OF THE VERB—TO HAVE—
IN THEIR COMPOUND TENSES.

My brother would have gone to France if he had been old enough.
 I would not have gone out if I had known (that) it was such bad
 weather. At what time did you come this morning? I came at
 eight o'clock. At what time did your sister go out? She did not go
 out at all. Would she have gone out if it had been fine? Yes, I
 think (that) she would have gone out with her cousin. They had
 agreed to go for a walk together I believe. Have they agreed to go
 to France or to Germany? Those little girls have grown very hand-
 some young women. What has become of your brother? What

elle s'est promenée	<i>she has walked</i>
elle s'est fait mal	<i>she hurt herself</i>
nous nous sommes promenés, ées	<i>we have walked</i>
vous vous êtes promenés	<i>you have walked</i>
ils se sont promenés	<i>they have walked</i>
elles se sont promenées	<i>they have walked</i>
elles se sont parlé	<i>they spoke to each other</i>

CONJUGATION OF PRONOMINAL VERBS.

INFINITIF.

Se promener, *to walk* * (*to take a walk.*)

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

se promenant, *walking.* | s'être promené, *to have walked.*

INDICATIF.

PRESENT.

Je me promène	<i>I walk or am walking</i>
je ne me promène pas	<i>I do not walk</i>
tu te promènes	<i>thou walkest or art walking</i>
il se promène	<i>he walks or is walking</i>
se promène-t-il ?	<i>does he walk ?</i>
1 nous nous promenons	<i>we walk or are walking</i>
vous vous promenez	<i>you walk or are walking</i>
ils se promènent	<i>they walk or are walking</i>
ils ne se promènent pas	<i>they do not walk</i>
se promènent-ils ?	<i>do they walk ?</i>
ne se promènent-ils pas ?	<i>do they not walk</i>

IMPARFAIT.

je me promenais	<i>I was walking or used to walk</i>
tu te promenais	<i>thou wast walking or used to walk</i>
il se promenait	<i>he was walking or used to walk</i>
2 nous nous promenions	<i>we were walking or used to walk</i>
vous vous promeniez	<i>you were walking or used to walk</i>
ils se promenaient	<i>they were walking or used to walk</i>

* See 20th Lesson on Idiomatical and useful phrases, part III.

PASSE DEFINI.

	je me promenai	<i>I walked</i>
	tu te promenais	<i>thou walkedst</i>
3	il se promena	<i>he walked</i>
	nous nous promenâmes	<i>we walked</i>
	vous vous promenâtes	<i>you walked</i>
	ils se promenèrent	<i>they walked</i>

FUTUR.

	je me promènerai	<i>I shall or will walk</i>
	tu te promèneras	<i>thou shalt walk</i>
4	il se promènera	<i>he shall walk</i>
	nous nous promènerons	<i>we shall walk</i>
	vous vous promènerez	<i>you shall walk</i>
	ils se promèneront	<i>they shall walk</i>

CONDITIONNEL.

	je me promènerais	<i>I should or would walk</i>
	tu te promènerais	<i>thou wouldst walk</i>
5	il se promènerait	<i>he would walk</i>
	nous nous promènerions	<i>we would walk</i>
	vous vous promèneriez	<i>you would walk</i>
	ils se promèneraient	<i>they would walk</i>

IMPERATIF.

	promène-toi	<i>walk (thou)</i>
6	promenons-nous	<i>let us walk</i>
	promenez-vous	<i>walk (you)</i>

IMPERATIVE NEGATIVELY.

	ne te promène pas	<i>walk not (thou)</i>
	ne nous promenons pas	<i>let us not walk</i>
	ne vous promenez pas	<i>walk not (you) (do not walk)</i>

SUBJONCTIF.

PRESENT.

	que je me promène	<i>that I may walk</i>
	que tu te promènes	<i>that thou mayst walk</i>
7	qu'il se promène	<i>that he may walk</i>
	que nous nous promenions	<i>that we may walk</i>
	que vous vous promeniez	<i>that you may walk</i>
	qu'ils se promènent	<i>that they may walk</i>

IMPARFAIT.

	que je me promenasse	<i>that I might walk</i>
	que tu te promenasses	<i>that thou mightst walk</i>

8	qu'il se promenât	<i>that he might walk</i>
	que nous nous promenassions	<i>that we might walk</i>
	que vous vous promenassiez	<i>that you might walk</i>
	qu'ils se promenassent	<i>that they might walk</i>

PRONOMINAL VERBS CONJUGATED IN THEIR COMPOUND TENSES.

PRESENT COMPOUND, (PASSE INDEFINI.)

je me suis promené	<i>I have walked</i>
je ne me suis pas promené	<i>I did not walk</i>
tu t'es promené	<i>thou hast walked</i>
il s'est promené	<i>he has walked</i>
il ne s'est pas promené	<i>he did not walk</i>
elle s'est promenée	<i>she has walked</i>
ne s'est-elle pas promenée?	<i>did she not walk?</i>
nous nous sommes promenés	<i>we have walked</i>
nous ne nous sommes pas promenés	<i>we did not walk</i>
vous vous êtes promenés	<i>you have walked</i>
vous êtes-vous promené?	<i>did you walk?</i>
ils se sont promenés	<i>they have walked</i>
ils ne se sont pas promenés	<i>they did not walk</i>
elles se sont promenées	<i>they have walked</i>
ne se sont-elles pas promenées?	<i>did they not walk?</i>

IMPERFECT COMPOUND.

je m'étais promené	<i>I had walked</i>
tu t'étais promené	<i>thou hadst walked</i>
il s'était promené	<i>he had walked</i>
elle s'était promenée	<i>she had walked</i>
nous nous étions promenés	<i>we had walked</i>
vous vous étiez promenés	<i>you had walked</i>
ils s'étaient promenés	<i>they had walked</i>
elles s'étaient promenées	<i>they had walked</i>

PASSE DEFINI COMPOUND.

je me fus promené	<i>I had walked</i>
tu te fus promené	<i>thou hadst walked</i>
il se fut promené	<i>he had walked</i>
elle se fut promenée	<i>she had walked</i>

nous nous fûmes promenés	<i>we had walked</i>
vous vous fûtes promenés	<i>you had walked</i>
ils se furent promenés	<i>they had walked</i>
elles se furent promenées	<i>they had walked</i>

FUTURE COMPOUND.

je me serai promené	<i>I shall or will have walked</i>
tu te seras promené	<i>thou shalt have walked</i>
il se sera promené	<i>he shall have walked</i>
elle se sera promenée	<i>she shall have walked</i>
nous nous serons promenés	<i>we shall have walked</i>
vous vous serez promenés	<i>you shall have walked</i>
ils se seront promenés	<i>they shall have walked</i>
elles se seront promenées	<i>they shall have walked</i>

CONDITIONAL COMPOUND.

je me serais promené	<i>I should or would have walked</i>
je ne me serais pas promené	<i>I would not have walked</i>
tu te serais promené	<i>thou wouldst have walked</i>
il se serait promené	<i>he would have walked</i>
il ne se serait pas promené	<i>he would not have walked</i>
elle se serait promenée	<i>she would have walked</i>
ne se serait-elle pas promenée ?	<i>would she not have walked</i>
nous nous serions promenés	<i>we would have walked</i>
nous ne nous serions pas promenés	<i>we should not have walked</i>
vous vous seriez promenés	<i>you would have walked</i>
vous seriez-vous promenés ?	<i>would you have walked ?</i>
ils se seraient promenés	<i>they would have walked</i>
elles ne se seraient pas promenées	<i>they would not have walked</i>
se seraient-elles promenées ?	<i>would they have walked ?</i>
ne se seraient-elles pas promenées ?	<i>would they not have walked ?</i>

SUBJUNCTIF.

PRESENT COMPOUND.

que je me sois promené	<i>that I may have walked</i>
que tu te sois promené	<i>that thou mayst have walked</i>
qu'il se soit promené	<i>that he may have walked</i>
qu'elle se soit promenée	<i>that she may have walked</i>
que nous nous soyons promenés	<i>that we may have walked</i>
que vous vous soyez promenés	<i>that you may have walked</i>

qu'ils se soient promenés	<i>that they may have walked</i>
qu'elles se soient promenées	<i>that they may have walked</i>

IMPERFECT COMPOUND.

que je me fusse promené	<i>that I might have walked</i>
que tu te fusses promené	<i>that thou mightst have walked</i>
qu'il se fût promené	<i>that he might have walked</i>
qu'elle se fût promenée	<i>that she might have walked</i>

que nous nous fussions promenés	<i>that we might have walked</i>
que vous vous fussiez promenés	<i>that you might have walked</i>
qu'ils se fussent promenés	<i>that they might have walked</i>
qu'elles se fussent promenées	<i>that they might have walked</i>

The pupil will now learn by heart the following pronominal verbs, which are conjugated like *se promener*, but he must observe the terminations for each conjugation (see page 125.)

Obs.—Most of the pronominal verbs require after them *a preposition*, which must be put before the noun or the verb that generally follows the pronominal verb. The *preposition* required is always *a* or *de*, and the pupil is requested to learn that preposition at the same time that he learns the verb.

PRONOMINAL VERBS MOST IN USE.

se débarrasser de	<i>to get rid of</i>	s'amuser à	<i>to amuse one's-self</i>
se dépêcher de	<i>to make haste</i>	s'appliquer à	<i>to apply one's-self to</i>
s'emparer de	<i>to seize upon</i>	s'adresser à	<i>to apply to</i>
s'étonner de	<i>to wonder, marvel</i>	s'exposer à	<i>to expose one's-self</i>
s'empêcher de*	<i>to help, to forbear</i>	se décider à	<i>to decide one's-self</i>
se passer de	<i>to do, or to go without</i>	s'opposer à	<i>to oppose</i>
se méfier de	<i>to mistrust</i>	se préparer à	<i>to prepare one's-self</i>
s'échapper de	<i>to escape from</i>		
se moquer de	<i>to laugh at</i>		

* Je ne puis m'empêcher de rire
il ne peut s'empêcher de pleurer

*I cannot help laughing
he cannot help crying*

se disposer à	to get ready to	s'habituer à	to use one's-self
s'habiller	to dress one's-self		to
s'enrhumer	to take cold	se chauffer	to warm one's-self
se coucher	to lie down, to go to bed		self
se lever	to rise, to get up	se ruiner	to ruin one's-self
se marier	to marry	s'embarquer	to embark
se baisser	to stoop	se comporter	to behave
s'efforcer de	to endeavour, to strive	s'accorder	to agree
se mêler de	to interfere in	se cacher	to hide one's-self
s'informer de	to inquire after	se reposer	to rest
se fier à	to rely, to trust	s'évanouir	to faint away
s'abandonner à	to give up one's-self to, to despond	s'enorgueillir	to be proud
s'accoutumer à	to use one's-self to	se saisir de	to seize upon
		s'apercevoir de	to perceive
		se rendre	to yield, to surrender
		se rendre	to go, to repair
		s'attendre à	to expect to

N.B.—We have said page 125, that pronominal verbs take two pronouns of the same person, and that those pronouns are :

je me	nous nous
tu te	vous vous
il or elle se	ils or elles se

but we must observe here that, if the pronominal verb be in the *infinitive mood*, as I like to walk, *j'aime me promener*, etc. ; only the second pronoun *me, te, or se*, etc., is put before the pronominal verb ; the first pronoun *je, tu or il*, etc., being nominative or subject to the first verb, must accompany that *first* verb.

EXAMPLES

j'aime me promener
tu aimes te promener
il aime se promener
elle aime se promener
nous aimons nous promener
vous aimez vous promener
ils aiment se promener

*I like walking or to walk
thou likest walking or to walk
he likes walking or to walk
she likes walking or to walk
we like walking or to walk
you like walking or to walk
they like walking or to walk*

When the infinitive is in a compound tense, that is, with the auxiliary, the verb *être* must be used in French instead of the verb *avoir*, and the second pronoun *me*, *te*, or *se*, etc., must be put before the auxiliary verb, and not before the past participle of the pronominal verb.

EXAMPLES

je suis bien aise de m'être promené	<i>I am very glad to have walked</i>
tu es bien aise de t'être promené	<i>thou art very glad to have walked</i>
il est bien aise de s'être promené	<i>he is very glad to have walked</i>
elle est bien aise de s'être promenée	<i>she is very glad to have walked</i>
nous sommes bien aises de nous être proménés	<i>we are very glad to have walked</i>
vous êtes bien aises de vous être proménés	<i>you are very glad to have walked</i>
ils sont bien aises de s'être proménés	<i>they are very glad to have walked</i>
elles sont bien aises de s'être promenées	<i>they are very glad to have walked</i>

OBSERVATION ON PRONOMINAL VERBS.

When a pronominal verb expresses an action which is reflected (that is to say done or performed by ourselves,) on any part of our own person, it takes the name of *verbe réfléchi*, reflected verb; and then instead of using the possessive adjectives *mon*, *ma*, *mes*, etc., my, his, her, etc., we use the *pronouns* of the reflected verb, *je me*, *tu te*, *il se*, *nous nous*, *vous vous*, *ils se*, before the verb; and the article *le*, *la*, or *les*, before the part of the body on which the action is done or performed.

EXAMPLE.

je me suis cassé le bras	<i>I broke or have broken my arm</i>
il s'est cassé la jambe	<i>he broke his leg</i>
je me suis foulé la cheville	<i>I sprained my ankle</i>
elle s'est foulé le poignet	<i>she sprained her wrist</i>
vous vous êtes lavé les mains	<i>you have washed your hands</i>
vous êtes-vous lavé les pieds?	<i>did you wash your feet?</i>
vous êtes-vous foulé la cheville?	<i>did you sprain your ankle?</i>
votre frère se cassera le cou	<i>your brother will break his neck</i>

- pourquoi ne vous êtes-vous pas brossé les cheveux?
why did you not brush your hair?
 pourquoi votre frère ne s'est-il pas coupé les ongles?
why did not your brother cut his nails?
 pourquoi votre sœur ne s'est-elle pas lavé la figure?
why did not your sister wash her face?
 pourquoi ces messieurs ne se sont-ils pas lavé les pieds?
why did not these gentlemen wash their feet?
 pourquoi ces dames ne se sont-elles pas lavé les mains?
why did not these ladies wash their hands?

When we do, or perform an action which falls on any part of another person's body, we likewise use the article *le, la, les*, instead of *mon, ma, mes*, my, his, her, etc., but then the personal pronoun *me, te, lui, nous, vous* or *leur*, must be used to show whose body or part of the body the action falls upon.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| je vous brosserai les cheveux | <i>I will brush your hair</i> |
| je lui couperai les ongles | <i>I will pare his nails</i> |
| je vous tirerai l'oreille | <i>I will pull your ear</i> |
| je leur briserai les os | <i>I will break their bones</i> |
| voulez-vous me laver les pieds? | <i>will you wash my feet?</i> |
| vous me cassez la tête | <i>you break my head</i> |
| vous me casserez le bras | <i>you will break my arm</i> |
| vous lui casserez la jambe | <i>you will break his leg</i> |
| voulez-vous me friser les cheveux | <i>will you curl my hair?</i> |
| pourquoi lui faites-vous mal à la main? | <i>why do you hurt his hand?</i> |
| pourquoi lui avez-vous fait mal à la main? | <i>why did you hurt his hand?</i> |
| pourquoi lui avez-vous lavé les pieds? | <i>why did you wash his feet?</i> |
| pourquoi leur avez-vous coupé les ongles? | <i>why did you pare their nails?</i> |

In general, when the *possessor* and the object *possessed*, are distinctly seen in the sentence, we use *le, la, les*, instead of *mon, ma, mes, son, sa, ses*, etc.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| j'ai mal à la tête | <i>my head aches</i> |
| il a les mains sales | <i>his hands are dirty</i> |
| il haussa les épaules | <i>he shrugged his shoulders</i> |

vous avez *les* cheveux noirs
 elle a *les* dents très blanches
 il a *les* yeux bleus

your hair is black
her teeth are very white
his eyes are blue

EXERCISES ON PRONOMINAL OR REFLECTED VERBS.

We rise every morning at eight o'clock. We used to rise
se lever
 [very early.] We rose yesterday at seven o'clock. We shall rise
de très bonne heure
 to-morrow morning at six [if we can.] We would rise at five
si nous pouvons
 [if we could.] We would have risen before [if we had been able.]
si nous pouvions *si nous avions pu*
 Let us dress ourselves quickly. We must dress ourselves as quickly
promptement vite
 as we can. [I wish you to] dress yourself quicker. [I should like you
pourrons je désire que vous je voudrais que vous
 to] dress yourself as quickly as yours ister. [I cannot] dress myself
je ne puis pas
 [as I should like.] My brother cannot dress himself. We cannot
comme je le voudrais ne peut pas nous ne pouvons pas
 walk to-day. I am very glad to have walked this morning. Why
bien aise de
 [does he not wish] to walk with you? Because he (has) walked with
ne veut-il pas parce que
 his sister. When [will he be able] to walk with us? [He will
pourra-t-il il ne
 not be able] to walk to-day. We do not like to walk without you.
pourra pas aimer sans
 We shall not walk if you do not walk with us. We would not have
 walked if you had not walked with us.

EXERCISE ON REFLECTED VERBS EXPRESSING AN ACTION DONE, OR PERFORMED BY OURSELVES, ON OUR OWN PERSON.

I wash my hands several times a day. I was washing my feet
se laver fois par
 when somebody knocked at the door. Why did you not brush your
frapper porte f. brosse
 hair? Why did she not brush her hair? Why did not your sister
cheveux pl.
 wash her hands this morning? She has not [been able] to brush her
pu
 hair because she (has) sprained her wrist. When did she sprain her
fouler poignet, m
 wrist? Yesterday evening. My little brother cannot walk. Why
ne peut pas
 can he not walk? Because he (has) sprained his ankle. If he had
cheville, f.

not sprained his ankle, he would have been very glad to walk with you. If you do not wash your face you shall not go to school. You will break your neck my little boy. [I do not wish you to] wash your feet to-day, because you (have) washed them last night. If you do not cut your nails to-night, you must cut them to-morrow morning; for they are [very much] too long.

de
figure, f.
casser *cou* *je ne veux pas que vous*
hier soir
couper *ongles*
car *beaucoup* *trop*

OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

We call *impersonal*, certain verbs, which are used only in the third person singular, as *il faut*, *it is necessary*; *il pleut*, *it rains*.

Impersonal verbs have their inflections according to the conjugation to which they belong.

The past participle of an impersonal verb, remains always invariable, that is to say, does not admit any variation in gender or number.

CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERSONAL VERB.

Y avoir,* *there to be.*

INFINITIF.

Y avoir *there to be.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

y ayant *there being*

PAST PARTICIPLE.

y ayant eu *there having been*

INDICATIF.

il y a

there is, or there are

il y a eu

there has been, or there have been

IMPARFAIT.

il y avait

there was, or there were

il y avait eu

there had been

PASSE DEFINI.

il y eut

there was, or there were

il y eut eu

there had been

* See 17th Lesson, on Idiomatical and Useful Phrases, Part III.

FUTUR.

il y aura	<i>there will be</i>
il y aura eu	<i>there will have been</i>

CONDITIONNEL.

il y aurait	<i>there would be</i>
il y aurait eu	<i>there would have been</i>

No Imperative.

SUBJONCTIF.

qu'il y ait	<i>that there may be</i>
qu'il y ait eu	<i>that there may have been</i>

IMPARFAIT.

qu'il y eût	<i>that there might be</i>
qu'il y eût eu	<i>that there might have been</i>

THE SAME VERB CONJUGATED INTERROGATIVELY.

y a-t-il ?	<i>is there? or are there?</i>
y a-t-il eu ?	<i>has there been?</i>
y avait-il ?	<i>was there? or were there?</i>
y eut-il ?	<i>was there? or were there?</i>
y aura-t-il ?	<i>will there be?</i>
y aura-t-il eu ?	<i>will there have been?</i>
y aurait-il ?	<i>would there be?</i>
y aurait-il eu ?	<i>would there have been?</i>

NEGATIVELY.

il n'y a pas	<i>there is not</i>
il n'y a pas eu	<i>there has not been</i>
il n'y avait pas	<i>there was not, or there were not</i>
il n'y aura pas	<i>there will not be</i>
il n'y aurait pas	<i>there would not be</i>

Falloir, to be necessary, or must.

Indicatif	il faut	<i>it is necessary</i>
Imparfait	il fallait	<i>it was necessary</i>
passé défini	il fallut	<i>it was necessary</i>
Futur	il faudra	<i>it will be necessary</i>
Cond.	il faudrait	<i>it would be necessary</i>
Passé indéf.	il a fallu	<i>it has been necessary</i>
Cond. passé	il aurait fallu	<i>it would have been necessary</i>

REMARKS.

The verb *Falloir* is generally used in the sense of *must**; it expresses necessity, obligation, compulsion, or want. The usual construction with the verb *falloir*, is to place the conjunction *que* after *il faut*, *il fallait*, etc.; then to use the personal pronoun subject to the English verb *must*, as a subject to the verb that follows the word *must*, and put the French verb in the subjunctive mood.

EXAMPLES.

il faut que je parle	<i>I must speak</i>
il faut que tu parles	<i>thou must speak</i>
il faut qu'il parle	<i>he must speak</i>
il faut que mon frère parle	<i>my brother must speak</i>
il faut que nous parlions	<i>we must speak</i>
il faut que vous parliez	<i>you must speak</i>
il faut qu'ils parlent	<i>they must speak</i>
il faut que ces messieurs parlent	<i>these gentlemen must speak</i>

Sometimes the verb that follows *il faut*, *must*; may be in the infinitive mood, but then the conjunction *que* is not used, and the personal pronoun *me*, *te*, *lui*, *nous*, *vous* or *leur*, must be put between the impersonal pronoun *il*, and the verb *falloir*.

EXAMPLES.

il me faut étudier	<i>I must study</i>
il te faut étudier	<i>thou must study</i>
il lui faut étudier	<i>he must study</i>
il nous faut étudier	<i>we must study</i>
il vous faut étudier	<i>you must study</i>
il leur faut étudier	<i>they must study</i>
il faut étudier, monsieur	<i>you must study, sir</i>

Any expression implying necessity, obligation, compulsion or want, may be rendered by the verb *falloir*.

EXAMPLES.

il me faut un habit	<i>I want a coat</i>
il lui faut un chapeau	<i>he wants a hat</i>

* *Must*, expressing necessity, obligation, compulsion, or want, is rendered by the verb *falloir*; but if *must* does not express necessity, obligation compulsion, or want, it is rendered in French by the verb *devoir*, see page 104.

il nous faut de l'argent	<i>we want money</i>
il vous faut aller à Paris	<i>you must go to Paris</i>
il nous faut quelque chose	<i>we want something</i>
il leur faut des chevaux	<i>they want horses</i>
il faut du vin à ces messieurs	<i>those gentlemen want some wine</i>

Pleuvoir, *to rain.*

	Pleuvant, <i>raining.</i>	Plu, <i>rained.</i>
Ind. pres.	{ il pleut pleut-il?	<i>it rains does it rain</i>
Imperf.	{ il pleuvait pleuvait-il?	<i>it was raining, or it did rain was it raining? or did it rain?</i>
Passé déf.	il plut	<i>it rained</i>
Passé indéf.	il a plu	<i>it has rained, it has been raining</i>
Futur.	il pleuvra	<i>it will rain</i>
Cond.	il pleuvrait	<i>it would rain</i>
Subj. pres.	qu'il pleuve	<i>that it may rain</i>
Imperf.	qu'il plût	<i>that it might rain</i>

LIST OF THE IMPERSONAL VERBS MOST GENERALLY IN USE.

il pleut	<i>it rains</i>	il arrive	<i>it happens</i>
il neige	<i>it snows</i>	il y a	<i>there is, or there are</i>
il grêle	<i>it hails</i>	il importe	<i>it matters</i>
il tonne	<i>it thunders</i>	il semble	<i>it seems</i>
il éclaire	<i>it lightens</i>	il paraît	<i>it appears</i>
il gèle	<i>it freezes</i>	il convient	<i>it becomes</i>
il dégèle	<i>it thaws</i>	il s'ensuit que	<i>it follows that</i>
il faut	<i>it is necessary, must</i>	avoir lieu *	<i>to take place</i>

EXERCISE ON IMPERSONAL VERBS.

There is somebody in the garden. There are several men in my
quelqu'un *m.* *plusieurs*
 father's room. There has been another battle. Is there anybody
f. *bataille, f.*
 here? No sir, there is nobody. Are there any horses in the stable?
personne *écurie f.*
 No sir, there are no horses. There was somebody here this morning.
 No miss, there was nobody. Has there been much damage? No
beaucoup de dommage
 madam, there has been no damage at all. There is no harm in that.
du tout *mal à*
 There will be no harm in that my friend. There would be no harm
 at all. There would have been no harm. If there had been any

* See 16th Lesson on Idiomatical and useful phrases, part III.

harm in it I would not have done it. There will be another concert
à cela *fait* —m.
 next week. When will there be another concert? Next week, sir.
 Were there [many people] at the concert last week? Yes sir, there
beaucoup de monde
 were a great many people. It rains. It does not rain. Does it rain
 now? No sir, but it will rain soon. Was it raining when you
bientôt
 came? Yes sir, it was raining very fast. It has been raining all the
vinces *fort*
 morning. It appears to me that you like the rain. No sir, I prefer
paraître *aimer* *pluie, f.*
 fine weather. So do I. I like neither the rain nor the snow.
neige, f.

OF THE MOOD.

Mood means *manner*; so we call mood, the different manners of expressing the action marked by the verb.

There are five moods:

- 1 l'infinitif
- 2 l'indicatif
- 3 le conditionnel
- 4 l'impératif
- 5 le subjonctif

1. The *infinitif*, expresses the action in an indefinite manner, and without any reference to numbers or persons: it is the verb itself without nominative; as—

Travailler est le devoir de l'homme

to work is the duty of man

Il est doux de *remplir* ses devoirs

it is sweet to fulfil one's duty

Generally, when two verbs come together, the second is in the *infinitive* mood, except when the first verb is an *auxiliary*, then the second must be in the past participle.

EXAMPLES.

je viens vous *voir*

I come to see you

avez-vous *vu* mon frère?

have you seen my brother?

nous désirons *apprendre* le

we wish to learn French

Français?

pourquoi n'avez-vous pas *appris*

why did you not learn your

vos leçons?

lesson?

il vous a <i>entendu chanter</i>	<i>he heard you sing</i>
elle a <i>fini de lire</i>	<i>she has finished reading</i>
je viens de <i>recevoir</i> une lettre	<i>I have just received a letter</i>
voulez-vous <i>chanter</i> une chanson	<i>will you sing a song ?</i>
je ne puis pas <i>chanter</i>	<i>I cannot sing</i>

2. The *indicatif*, expresses an action which is sure, certain, positive, whether this action is doing, done, or to be done.

EXAMPLES.

je chante	<i>I sing, do sing, or am singing</i>
j'ai chanté	<i>I have been singing, or I have sung</i>
je chanterai	<i>I shall or will sing</i>

3. The *conditionnel*, expresses an action conditionally, or under a condition.

EXAMPLES.

je <i>chanterais</i> si je pouvais	<i>I would sing if I could</i>
j' <i>aurais</i> chanté si j' <i>avais</i> pu	<i>I would have sung if I had been able</i>
nous <i>irions</i> en France si nous avions de l'argent	<i>we would go to France if we had money</i>
si nous avions de l'argent nous <i>irions</i> en France	<i>if we had money we would go to France</i>
nous <i>aurions</i> de l'argent si nous avions été industriels	<i>we would have money if we had been industrious</i>

4. The *impératif*, expresses the action with a command, request, or exhortation to do it.

EXAMPLES.

<i>apportez-moi</i> mon livre	<i>bring me my book</i>
<i>faites</i> votre devoir, monsieur	<i>do your duty, sir</i>
<i>étudiez</i> si vous voulez apprendre	<i>study if you wish to learn</i>

5. The *subjonctif*, expresses the action in a subordinate or dependent manner; that is to say, this mood is *subjected* to, or *under* the dependence of some verbs or some conjunctions that govern that mood, or require that the verb should be in the subjunctive mood.

The *subjonctif*, is the mood of doubt, uncertainty, or in-

decision ; it is used after verbs expressing will, command, wish, doubt, fear, etc. ; after verbs used negatively or interrogatively expressing doubt or uncertainty ; after impersonal verbs, and also after certain conjunctions.

EXAMPLES.

il faut	} que vous parliez Français	you must	} speak French
je veux		I will have you	
je désire		I wish you to	
j'exige		I require you to	

The following verbs govern the *subjunctif mood* :—

désirer, souhaiter	to wish
vouloir	to wish, to be willing
ordonner	to order, to command
exiger	to require
craindre *	to fear
il faut que	must, it is necessary
il semble que	it seems that
il est juste que	it is just that, it is right that
il vaut mieux que	it is better that
il suffit que	it is sufficient that

EXAMPLES.

mon frère désire que vous chantiez	my brother wishes you to sing
nous souhaitons que vous réussissiez	we wish that you may succeed
nous voulons que vous parliez Français	we will have you speak French
nous ordonnons que vous soyez examiné	we order that you should be examined
nous exigeons que vous finissiez votre ouvrage	we require you to finish your work
je crains que vous ne soyez fatigué	I fear you should be tired
il faut que vous finissiez votre ouvrage	you must finish your work
il semble que vous ayez peur de venir	it seems that you are afraid to come
il est juste que vous soyez récompensé	it is right that you should be rewarded

* The verb *craindre*, requires the negation *ne*, before the next verb.

il vaut mieux que vous <i>alliez</i> en France	<i>it is better for you to go to France</i>
il vaut mieux que je parle	<i>it is better for me to speak</i>
il vaut mieux que tu parles	<i>it is better for thee to speak</i>
il vaut mieux qu'il or elle parle	<i>it is better for him or her to speak</i>
il vaut mieux que mon frère parle	<i>it is better for my brother to speak</i>
il vaut mieux que nous parlions	<i>it is better for us to speak</i>
il vaut mieux que vous parliez	<i>it is better for you to speak</i>
il vaut mieux qu'ils or elles parlent	<i>it is better for them to speak</i>
il vaut mieux que ces messieurs parlent	<i>it is better for those gentlemen to speak</i>

The following conjunctions also govern the subjunctive mood:—

afin que	<i>in order that</i>
pour que	<i>in order that</i>
avant que	<i>before</i>
en cas que	<i>in case</i>
quoique	<i>although, though</i>
quoi que	<i>whatever</i>
quelque, que	<i>whatever</i>
jusqu'à ce que	<i>until, till</i>
pourvu que	<i>provided</i>
soit que	<i>whether</i>
sans que	<i>without that</i>
bien que	<i>though, although</i>
de crainte que*	<i>for fear</i>
de peur que*	<i>for fear</i>
à moins que*	<i>unless</i>

The subjunctive mood must also be used after the following words, when they are followed by a relative pronoun.

le seul	<i>the only</i>
le plus	<i>the most</i>
le moins	<i>the least</i>
le meilleur	<i>the best</i>
le mieux	<i>the best</i>
il y a peu de	<i>there are few</i>

* De crainte que, de peur que, and à moins que, require the negation *ne* before the verb.

EXAMPLES.

il y a peu d'hommes *qui sachent* supporter l'adversité
there are few men who know how to bear adversity
 vous êtes la seule personne qui *puissiez* faire cela pour moi
you are the only person who can do that for me
 c'est le moins que vous *puissiez* faire pour nous
it is the least you can do for us
 c'est le mieux que vous *puissiez* faire
it is the best thing you can do
 c'est le meilleur vin que j'*aie* jamais goûté
this is the best wine I have ever tasted.

Four of the moods, L'indicatif, le Conditionnel, l'Imperatif, and the Subjonctif, *admitting the different persons*, are for this reason called *modes personnels*, personal moods.

L'infinif *not admitting of persons*, is for this reason called *mode impersonnel*, impersonal mood.

OF THE TENSES.

The tenses mark the epoch, or the moment of the action expressed by the verb.

We divide *time* in three periods, the present, the past, and the future. But as these are not sufficient to mark with accuracy incidental circumstances, we have divided them as follows.

Le présent	{	expresses the action as taking place at the time of speaking, or as taking place daily or usually; as—	
		je chante	<i>I am singing, I sing, or I do sing</i>
		nous chantons, tous les jours	<i>we sing every day</i>
		nous déjeûnons généralement à huit heures	<i>we generally breakfast at eight o'clock</i>

- expresses an action past, but which was taking place at the very moment that another action did happen to take place; as—
- je *lisais* quand vous *I was reading when you*
vîntes *came*
nous *parlions* de vous *we were speaking of you*
quand vous vîntes *when you came*
- or expresses an action which *was usually* done; an action which we were in the habit of doing; as—
- L'imparfait { nous chantions tous les *we used to sing every*
jours alors *day then*
vous aliez à l'école alors *you did go to school at*
that time
- or merely expresses the state without any action at all; as—
- il demeurerait à Paris en *he lived in Paris in*
1848 *1848*
je croyais que vous de- *I thought you lived in*
meuriez à Londres *London*
- expresses an action *done, performed momentarily*, in a time entirely past; in a time *defined, specified*, as yesterday, last week, or last year; an action done *once only, momentarily done*, without having any reference
- Passé défini { with another action; as—
- nous chantâmes hier soir *we sang last night at*
chez Mr. B.'s *Mr. B.'s*
nous le vîmes la semaine *we saw him last week*
dernière
il alla à Paris l'année *he went to Paris last*
dernière *year*
- is the *present* of the auxiliary, with the past participle of any verb. It expresses an action which has taken place in a time not entirely past; as to-day, this week, this
- Passé indéfini {

Passé indéfini	year, etc., or in a time undefined, that is to say not specified; as—	
	nous avons déjeûné à six heures ce matin	<i>we breakfasted at six this morning</i>
	avez-vous vu mon frère?	<i>did you see my brother?</i>
	nous avons écrit à votre mère aujourd'hui	<i>we have written to your mother to-day</i>
	avez-vous été au concert?	<i>did you go to the concert?</i>

Plus-que-parfait	is the <i>imparfait</i> of the auxiliary, with a past participle. This tense represents the action as <i>having already taken place</i> , when another action happened to take place; as—	
	vous aviez fini quand je vins	<i>you had finished when I came</i>
	j'avais déjà reçu mon argent	<i>I had already received my money</i>
	nous avions dîné quand vous vîntes	<i>we had dined when you came</i>
	il avait déjeûné quand il vint	<i>he had breakfasted when he came</i>

Passé antérieur	is the <i>passé défini</i> of the auxiliary, with a past participle. This tense expresses an action past, but which is immediately followed by another action equally past; as—	
	dès que nous eûmes déjeûné	<i>as soon as we had breakfasted</i>
	nous allâmes nous promener	<i>we went for a walk</i>
	aussitôt que j'eus déjeûné je montai à cheval	<i>as soon as I had breakfasted I rode on horseback</i>
	quand nous eûmes fini notre ouvrage nous partîmes	<i>when we had finished our work we went away</i>

Futur simple	expresses an action which is to take place in a time to come; as—	
	je sortirai demain matin	<i>I shall go out to-morrow morning</i>
	nous irons à Paris quand nous aurons de l'argent	<i>we shall go to Paris when we have money</i>

Futur simple	nous jouerons et chanterons ce soir	<i>we will play and sing this evening</i>
	nous viendrons quand nous pourrons	<i>we will come when we can</i>
	vous viendrez aussitôt que vous pourrez	<i>you will come as soon as you can</i>

is the *future* of the auxiliary with the past participle. This tense expresses an action which is to take place before another action in a time to come ; as—

Futur composé	nous irons nous promener quand nous aurons déjeuné	<i>we will go for a walk when we have breakfasted</i>
	aussitôt que j'aurai fini je partirai	<i>as soon as I have done I will go</i>
	nous partirons quand nous aurons fini	<i>we will start when we have done or finished</i>
	vous viendrez aussitôt que vous aurez fini	<i>you will come as soon as you have finished</i>
	vous viendrez dès que votre frère aura reçu son argent	<i>you will come as soon as your brother has received his money</i>

LESSON ON THE DIFFERENT TENSES OF VERBS.

nous <i>parlons</i> Français tous les jours	<i>we speak French every day</i>
nous <i>parlions</i> Français tous les jours	<i>we used to speak French every day</i>
nous <i>parlâmes</i> Français hier	<i>we spoke French yesterday</i>
nous <i>parlerons</i> Français demain	<i>we shall speak French to-morrow</i>
nous <i>parlerions</i> Français si nous pouvions	<i>we would speak French if we could</i>
<i>parlons</i> Français ensemble	<i>let us speak French together</i>
il faut que vous <i>parliez</i> à mon père	<i>you must speak to my father</i>
il faudrait que vous <i>parlassiez</i> Français	<i>it would be necessary for you to speak French</i>
nous <i>avons chanté</i> un duo	<i>we did sing a duet</i>
<i>avez-vous parlé</i> à mon frère ?	<i>did you speak to my brother ?</i>
lui <i>avez-vous parlé</i> ?	<i>did you speak to him ?</i>
nous <i>avons fini</i> quand mon père arriva	<i>we had finished when my father arrived</i>
mon frère <i>partit</i> aussitôt qu'il <i>eut déjeuné</i>	<i>my brother set out as soon as he had breakfasted</i>

aussitôt que mon père <i>eut fini</i>	<i>as soon as my father had finished</i>
il <i>partit</i>	<i>he went away</i>
nous <i>aurons fini</i> quand vous	<i>we shall have finished when you</i>
viendrez	<i>come</i>
dès que nous <i>aurons fini</i> notre	<i>as soon as we have finished our</i>
ouvrage	<i>work</i>
vous chanterez aussitôt, que j' <i>au-</i>	<i>you will sing as soon as I have</i>
<i>rai fini</i>	<i>done</i>
vous chanteriez si <i>pouviez</i>	<i>you would sing if you could</i>
vous <i>auriez chanté</i> si vous aviez	<i>you would have sung if you had</i>
<i>pu</i>	<i>been able</i>
nous <i>aurions été</i> avec vous si	<i>we would have gone with you if</i>
vous l'aviez voulu	<i>you had wished it</i>
j' <i>achèterais</i> un cheval si j'avais	<i>I would buy a horse if I had</i>
de l'argent	<i>money</i>
j' <i>aurais acheté</i> un cheval si j'avais	<i>I would have bought a horse if</i>
eu de l'argent	<i>I had had money</i>
je <i>voyagerais</i> si j'étais riche	<i>I would travel if I were rich</i>
j' <i>aurais voyagé</i> si j'avais été	<i>I would have travelled if I had</i>
riche	<i>been rich</i>
mon frère <i>était</i> malade hier	<i>my brother was ill yesterday</i>
mon chien <i>fut tué</i> hier	<i>my dog was killed yesterday</i>

LESSON ON THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

It has already been observed that there are two tenses in the subjunctive, namely: the *présent* and the *imparfait*. It is very important that these two tenses should not be used indiscriminately, for they have each their *distinct* use.

The *subjonctif* being under the *dependence* of another verb, it is the *tense* of that verb (*verb governing the subjunctive*) which determines or decides which *tense* of the subjunctive must be used.

The *présent* of the subjunctive is used after the *présent* or the *futur* of the indicative.

The *imparfait* after the *past* or the *conditionnel*.

il faut que j' <i>aille</i> à Paris	<i>it is necessary for me to go to</i> <i>Paris</i>
il faudrait que j' <i>allasse</i> à Paris	<i>it would be necessary for me to</i> <i>go to Paris</i>

je désire que vous vendiez votre cheval	<i>I wish you to sell your horse</i>
je voudrais que vous vendissiez votre cheval	<i>I should like you to sell your horse</i>
il faudra que nous achetions une maison	<i>it will be necessary for us to buy a house</i>
il faudrait que nous achetassions une maison	<i>it would be necessary for us to buy a house</i>
mon père veut que je vous parle	<i>my father wishes me to speak to you</i>
mon père voudrait que je vous parlasse	<i>my father would like me to speak to you</i>
pourquoi voulez-vous que je chante ?	<i>why do you wish me to sing ?</i>
pourquoi voudriez-vous que je chantasse ?	<i>why would you like me to sing ?</i>
il vaut mieux que vous alliez à Londres	<i>it is better for you to go to London</i>
il vaudrait mieux que vous allassiez à Londres	<i>it would be better for you to go to London</i>
je viens aujourd'hui quoique vous ayez de la compagnie	<i>I come to-day though you have company</i>
je vins hier quoique vous eussiez de la compagnie	<i>I came yesterday though you had company</i>
à moins que vous ne soyez malade maintenant	<i>unless you are ill now</i>
à moins que vous ne fussiez malade hier	<i>unless you were ill yesterday</i>

LESSON ON THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

When two verbs expressing two actions done, or to be done, (one connected to the other by the word *before*,) have the same person for *agent* or *nominative*, the first verb only is in a *personal* mood, and the second must be in the *infinitif*.

EXAMPLES.

j'ai déjeuné avant de venir	<i>I breakfasted before I came</i>
avez-vous déjeuné avant de venir ?	<i>did you breakfast before you came ?</i>
nous nous habillâmes avant de sortir	<i>we dressed ourselves before we went out</i>

nous nous habillerons *avant de partir*

voulez-vous écrire *avant d'aller à Paris?*

je vous écrirai *après avoir fini mon ouvrage*

nous dînerons *avant d'aller chez Mons. B.*

nous dînerons *après avoir parlé à Mons. L.*

il faut que vous appreniez le Français *avant d'aller en France*
je voudrais *pouvoir* parler Français

je voudrais *avoir* une grande maison

je voudrais *être* riche

we shall dress ourselves before we start

will you write before you go to Paris?

I will write to you after I have finished my work

we will dine before we go to Mr. B.'s

we shall dine after we have spoken to Mr. L.

you must learn French before you go to France

I wish I could speak French

I wish I had a large house

I wish I were rich

But if the two verbs have not for *agent* or *nominative*, the same person, then they both must be in a *personal mood*, the first in the *indicative* or the *conditional*, and the second in the *subjunctive*.

EXAMPLES

nous vous verrons *avant que vous partiez*

je viendrai *avant que vous sortiez*

je viendrai *avant que vous soyez sorti*

nous aurons diné *avant que vous ayez fini*

nous aurions diné *avant que vous eussiez fini*

il aura fini *avant que vous ayez commencé*

il aurait fini *avant que vous eussiez commencé*

je voudrais que vous *pussiez* parler Français

je voudrais que vous *eussiez* une grande maison

je voudrais que vous *fussiez* riche
nous voudrions qu'il *allât* à Paris

we shall see you before you go

I will come before you go out

I will come before you are out

we shall have dined before you have finished

we should have dined before you had finished

he will have finished before you have begun

he would have finished before you had begun

I wish you could speak French

I wish you had a large house

I wish you were rich

we should like him to go to Paris

je voudrais que vous *chantassiez* *I should like you to sing a song*
une chanson

EXERCISES ON THE DIFFERENT MOODS AND TENSES OF VERBS.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

To work is the duty of man. To study is a pleasure for me. It
travailler *devoir, m.* *étudier* *m.*
is necessary to study to become learned. To travel [one must] have
pour devenir *savant* *pour voyager* *il faut*
money. To learn your lessons ought to be a pleasure for you. To
apprendre
write [all day long] is not a pleasure for everybody. To spend more
écrire *toute la journée* *tout le monde* *dépenser*
than one possesses is not only a great folly, but also a dishonesty.
on posséder *non seulement* *folie, f.* *aussi malhonnêteté, f.*
Not to study when one is young is a great folly. It is more noble to
_____ *de*
forgive than to avenge one's-self.
pardonner *de se venger*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

I speak French every day. I act with prudence. I receive letters
agir _____ *recevoir*
from France every week. I expect a few friends this evening. My
toutes les semaines *attendre*
sister sings very well. She blushes when you speak to her. She
rougir
receives some invitations every day. She is [waiting for] you in the
_____ *tous les jours* *attendre*
other room. We breakfast every morning at eight o'clock. We are
building a large house for my godfather. We are expecting my god-
bâtir *f.* *parrain* *mar-*
mother. We frequently receive money from London. You do not
raire *fréquemment* *recevoir*
study enough. You do not reflect enough. You do not perceive
étudier *assez* *réfléchir* *apercevoir*
your mistake. You do not sell good cloth. They are looking at that
erreur *vendre* *drap, m.* *regarder*
beautiful house. They are finishing their breakfast. They owe us
f. *finir*
ten pounds. They pretend to be ill.
lire *prétendre* *malade*

IMPARFAIT.

I was washing my hands when you came. I used to wash my feet
se laver _____ *vintes*
three times a week. She was feeding her chickens when I saw her.
par *nourrir* *poulet* *vis*
She used to blush when somebody spoke to her. We were travelling
rougir *quelqu'un* *voyager*

through Germany when we met your brother. We used to think
en Allemagne rencontrer penser
 that French was difficult to learn, but we do not think so now. We
que difficile à apprendre le
 were finishing our work when your brother came. We used to
ouvrage vint
 dazzle the company. You were polishing your sword when I saw
éblouir polir épée vis
 you. You used to applaud me when I did sing. You did owe me
applaudir devoir
 some money then. You used to receive your friends with kindness
alors recevoir bonté
 at that time. Where did you live at that time? We lived in London.
époque, f. demeurer à
 How much did you owe him? I did owe him five shillings. Were
combien
 you [waiting for] me? Yes Sir, I was waiting for you. They were
attendre
 breakfasting when you came. They used to speak French every day.
vintes
 They were building a large house. They used to punish me when I
bâtir f. punir
 was a little boy. They did punish me very frequently. They used
fréquemment
 to receive money from my father. They frequently received invita-
 tions from our friends. They were coming down the hill when I met
descendre colline, f. rencontrer
 them. They formerly did correspond with my brother.
autrefois correspondre

PASSE DEFINI.

First Conjugation.

I spoke to your sister yesterday morning. He gave me a lesson
parler donner
 last week. We found your brother in a great perplexity. We gave
trouver embarras, m.
 him some money and he went to London. You paid him his wages
alla payer gages
 yesterday. You sang very well last night. They breakfasted with us
chanter hier soir déjeuner
 yesterday morning. They (took off) their hats, but they forgot to
ôter oublier de
 take off their gloves.
gant

Second Conjugation.

I finished my work yesterday before breakfast. He obeyed me im-
ouvrage avant obéir
 mediately. She selected a pretty book and [went away.] We built
choisir m. s'en alla bâtir
 two large houses last year, and we demolished our stable. We
f. démolir écurie, f.

converted him to our belief, and he obeyed us in [everything.] You
convertir croyance en tout
 succeeded very well last night. You [leaped over] the ditch ad-
franchir fossé
 mirably. They blushed when they saw us. They fulfilled their
rougir virent remplir
 promise and [went away.]
promesse s'en allèrent

Third Conjugation.

I received a letter yesterday. He discovered the ship and he con-
recevoir f. apercevoir vaisseau, m. con-
 ceived a high opinion of the captain. We received some money yes-
cevoir haut — f. capitaine
 terday. You received his letter yesterday, did you not? They
 perceived their error a little too late.
apercevoir un peu trop tard

Fourth Conjugation.

I sold my horse last week. He lost his money yesterday morning.
vendre perdre
 We condescended to hear him. You heard some noise, did you not?
condescendre entendre bruit, m.
 They melted some lead in the yard last night.
fondre plomb, m. cour, f.

PASSE INDEFINI.

First Conjugation.

I spoke to him this morning, but he did not answer me. I gave you
répondre
 something to eat, but you did not eat it. He did not begin where I
quelque chose à commencer où
 told him to begin. She did not sing so well to-night as she did (sing)
dit de chanter ce soir
 this morning. With whom did you breakfast this morning? We
qui déjeuner
 breakfasted with your sister. Did you breakfast down stairs? No,
avec en bas
 we breakfasted up stairs. At what time did they begin to dress?
en haut à s'habiller
 They began to dress at half-past eight. Why did they not begin
à huit heures et demie
 sooner? They did not begin sooner because they thought (that) it
plus tôt parce que penser il
 was soon enough for you.
tôt assez

Second Conjugation.

I have fulfilled my promise, have you fulfilled yours? He has not
remplir promesse, f.
 succeeded in his undertaking, because he did not persevere. He did
réussir dans entreprise, f. persévérer

not reflect on what you told him. Why did she blush when I spoke
réfléchir à ce que dit rougir
 to her? She did not blush when you spoke to her. Yes sir, she
parler
 blushed, I assure you. We have acted with prudence in that affair,
assurer agir affaire, f.
 and we have succeeded. Why did you not warn us in time? We
réussir avertir à temps
 did warn you of your danger, but you did not reflect on what we told
réfléchir à ce que dit
 you. They have punished that poor boy rather too severely. Why
punir un peu trop
 did they punish him? Merely because he did not obey them quickly
simplement obéir à promptement
 enough.

Third Conjugation.

I received a letter this morning, but I did not receive any money.
recevoir f.
 Did he perceive his mistake? No, he did not perceive it. Has your
s'apercevoir de erreur, f.
 sister received an invitation? No sir, she has not received any yet.
f. encore
 You have been owing money to your cousin, [I was told]. Yes sir,
devoir on m'a dit
 but I have always paid him. Have you received an order from your
toujours payer ordre, m.
 master? No sir, we have not received any yet. Did your friends
encore
 receive any money this afternoon? Yes sir, they have received a
après-midi, f.
 hundred pounds. At what time did they receive that sum? I do not
liens somme, f.
 know sir.

Fourth Conjugation.

I have been waiting for you miss. Why did you wait for me?
attendre
 Because you told me to (wait.) Has your sister been corresponding
dit de correspondre
 with you? Yes sir, she has been corresponding with me. We have
 lost a lesson this week. Why did you lose a lesson? Because we
perdu semaine, f.
 have been very ill. Why did these men spill all that wine? They
malade répandre vin, m.
 spilt it because they were told to spill it. Who told them to spill it?
de de
 I told them myself.

PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.

I had already eaten my apple when your brother came. I had
manger pomme, f. vint

finished my work when you came. He had not breakfasted when he
 received your letter. He had scarcely finished his dinner when his
 father called him. He had not received his money when I saw him.
 We had lighted the fire purposely for you. We had not finished
 reading when your mother [came in.] We had already received three
 invitations when we received yours. We had never heard him before.
 Had you already suspected that man? Yes sir, we had already sus-
 pected him. If you had not been paid what would you have done?
 I do not know sir.

PASSE ANTERIEUR.

As soon as I had breakfasted I went for a walk. Your brother
 came in as soon as I had finished my dinner. He bought a house as
 soon as he had received his money. As soon as he had finished his
 work he went away. We went for a walk as soon as we had re-
 peated our lessons. We took our money to the bank as soon as we
 had settled our affairs. They went away when they had finished
 their work. As soon as my sister had received your letter she started
 for London. We sold our house as soon as we had bought that in
 which we now live. They came here as soon as they were landed.
 They went to France as soon as their health was re-established.

FUTUR SIMPLE.

First Conjugation.

I shall speak to your mother to-morrow. Your sister will sing a
 duet to-night with my cousin. We shall begin to work to-morrow
 morning. Your sister will play to-night, will she not? No sir, she
 will not play but she will sing. You will bring your work, will you

not? Yes sir, I shall bring it, They will forgive us, will they not?
pardonner
 Yes, they will forgive you if you are repentant.

Second Conjugation.

I shall finish my work to-night. He will build a pretty little
besogne, f. *bâtir*
 house for his brother. She will blush if you speak to her. We shall
f. *rougir*
 feed our little chickens now, shall we? You will dazzle the company
sourrir *poulet, m.* *éblouir* *f.*
 if you go in the drawing-room. They will applaud you if you sing
salon, m. *applaudir*
 well. They will punish you if you are lazy. These women will
punir
 betray you my friend.
trahir

Third Conjugation.

I shall receive some money I hope. He will owe me ten pounds
recevoir *espérer* *devoir* *livre*
 at Christmas. She will conceive a bad opinion of you if you are not
à Noël *concevoir* *f.*
 more attentive to your lessons. We shall soon perceive if you have
bientôt apercevoir
 said the truth. How much will you owe me if I lend you five shil-
dit *vérité, f.* *combien* *prêter*
 lings. I shall owe you nothing, for you will still owe me something.
car *quelque chose*
 Will they receive an invitation from your cousin? Yes, I think
f. *crois*
 (that) they will receive one.

Fourth Conjugation.

I will sell you my horse if you wish to buy it. He will wait for
vendre *voulez* *attendre*
 you if you tell him (to wait.) She will lose her money if she plays.
dites *de* *perdre*
 We shall come down directly. We shall not answer your letters.
descendre *tout de suite* *répondre à*
 You will spill the wine if you are not more careful. You will wait
répandre *m.* *soigneux*
 for me to-night, will you? They will answer your letter as soon as
 they can. You will come down as soon as you can, will you not?
pourront *pourrez*
 They will hear us, will they not? I will wait for you as long as I
entendre
 can. I shall answer you as often as I can. I shall extend my
pourrai *souvent* *étendre*
 knowledge as far as I can.
connaissance, f. p.

FUTUR COMPOSE.

[I shall go] for a walk as soon as I (shall) have breakfasted. I
j'irai faire f.
 shall begin my dinner when you have finished yours. He will pay
commencer m. payer
 you as soon as he has received his money. She will sing when you
 have finished talking. We shall call you as soon as we have repeated
de causer appeler
 our lesson. We shall call upon you when we have finished our
passer chez
 work. You will travel when you have finished your education, will
besogne, f. voyager m.
 you not? Yes sir, I shall travel as soon as I have completed my
compléter
 education. Will you call me when you have done? Will you call
f. finir
 upon me when you have finished writing your letter? We will pay
de écrire
 you when we have succeeded in our undertaking. I will sell you
réussir entreprise, f.
 my house as soon as it is built. They [will go] to France as soon as
f. iront en
 their property is sold.
propriété, f.

CONDITIONNEL.

PRESENT ET PASSE.

First Conjugation.

I would study a little more if I could. I would have studied a
étudier peu pouvais
 little more if I had been able. She would oblige you if you were
pu
 more studious. She would have obliged you if you had been more
studieux
 studious. We would give you something if you were a good boy
quelque chose
 We would have given you something if you had been a good boy.
donner
 You would listen to me if you were a good girl. You would have
écouter
 listened to me if you had been good girls. They would speak to us
 if they were not so proud. They would have spoken to us if they
fier
 had not been so proud.

Second Conjugation.

I would build a pretty house if I had money. I would have built
f.

two pretty houses if I had been rich enough. He would punish you if you were lazy. He would have punished them if they had been as lazy as you. She would betray you. She would not have betrayed you if you had confided in her. Would you obey us? Would you have obeyed us if we had given you an order. We would fulfil our promise conscientiously. We would have fulfilled our promise conscientiously. They would refresh themselves if you did give them some water. They would have refreshed themselves if you had given them some water.

Third Conjugation.

I should conceive a bad opinion of you sir. I should have conceived a good opinion of him if..... He would owe me more than twenty pounds. She would have owed us more than forty pounds. We should not conceive such a bad opinion of you if you were not so idle. We should not have conceived so bad an opinion of you if you had not been so idle. You would receive an answer if you did write to her. You would have received an answer if you had written to her. They would not owe you [so much] if they were not so extravagant. They would not have owed you so much if they had not been so extravagant.

Fourth Conjugation.

I should not sell my horses if I were not obliged [to do so.] I should not have sold my horses if I had not been obliged to sell them. He would not defend his country better than you do. He would not have defended his country better than you have done. We should lose our money. We should have lost our money if we had played with them. Would you answer me if I did write to you? Would you have answered me if I had written to you? Yes sir, if you had written to me I would have answered you. They would not come down if you did not call them. They would not have come down if you had not called them.

IMPERATIF.

Speak to me. Do not speak to me. Give us something to eat if
quelque chose
 you please. Do not give him so much trouble. Let us speak French
tant de peine
 every day. Let us not begin too late. Finish your dinner my friend.
commencer trop tard
 Do not punish that poor little boy. Let us reflect on that affair.
à —e, f.
 Let us not demolish that pretty little house. Receive your friends
démolir f.
 with kindness. Do not receive him to-night. Wait for me here.
bonité attendre
 Do not wait for them. Let us hear the justification of that man.
entendre —, f.
 Let us not confound that which is wrong with that which is right.
ce qui mal bien

SUBJONCTIF.

PRESENT.

First Conjugation.

I must speak to you sir. He must give you another book. [I
donner je
 wish her to] breakfast with us. [They wish us to] give them some
désire qu'elle ils veulent que nous
 money. I wish you to keep your money. I wish them to forget me.
garder oublier

Second Conjugation.

[He wishes me to] warn you. He must act more prudently for
il désire que je prudemment à
 the future. She must reflect a little more. [You wish us to] choose
avenir vous voulez que nous
 another book. Why do you wish me to build a house here? Why
bâtir f.
 do you wish him to punish that poor little boy? Why do you wish
punir
 us to disobey our master? Why do you wish them to demolish that
désobéir à démolir
 old house?
vieux f.

Third Conjugation.

I shall not pay you unless I receive some money. [He wishes me
à moins que il désire que je
 to] receive you into my establishment. We must conceive a better
établissement, m.
 opinion of him another time. He ought not to be so proud with you
— f. fois, f. fier
 though you owe him some money. You must not conceive such an
quoique telle

opinion of us unless you discover some bad intention on our part. I
apercevoir _____ f. de _____
 wish them to receive my brother [as a] friend.
en

Fourth Conjugation.

He wishes me to sell my house. I wish him to wait for me here.
vendre f. *attendre*
 [We do not wish her to] correspond with my sister. Why do you
nous ne voulons pas qu'elle *pourquoi*
 wish us to answer that letter? My father wishes you to come down
répondre à f.
 directly sir. Why does your father wish us to come down [so early?]
tout de suite *de si bonne heure*
 Because he wishes you to answer your brother. They must not
parce que
 waste their time.
perdre *temps, m.*

IMPARFAIT.

First Conjugation.

My father [would like me to] speak to your sister. He would
voudrait que je
 like me to go to France. [I should like] your brother to travel
en _____ *je voudrais que* *voyager*
 this year. [Why would you like us to] repeat that lesson now?
année, f. *pourquoi voudriez-vous que nous* f.
 Because I should like you to study another [lesson.] I should like
parce que *étudier*
 them to work [as much as] your brother,
travailler autant que

Second Conjugation.

I should like you to succeed. [We should like them to] build a
réussir *nous voudrions qu'ils*
 house. He would like me to select another house.
f. *choisir* f.

Third Conjugation.

I should like him to discover his error. It would be necessary for
apercevoir —eur, f.
 me to receive the order from your father.
ordre

Fourth Conjugation.

[I could not] pay you unless I sold my horse. I should not like
je ne pourrais pas *à moins que*
 you to sell your horse. Would you like me to wait a little longer?
vendre *peu*
 I should wish them to suspend the prosecution of that affair.
poursuite, f. —e, f.

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

The tenses of Verbs are *simple* or *compound*; *simple* tenses are those that do not require the help of the auxiliary *to have* or *to be*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Je chante</i>	<i>I sing</i>
<i>nous parlons</i>	<i>we speak</i>
<i>vous chantez</i>	<i>you sing</i>
<i>ils arriveront</i>	<i>they will arrive</i>

Compound tenses are those that do require the help of the auxiliary *to have* or *to be*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>J'ai chanté</i>	<i>I have sung</i>
<i>nous avons parlé</i>	<i>we have spoken</i>
<i>vous avez chanté</i>	<i>you have sung</i>
<i>ils sont arrivés, m.</i>	{ <i>they are arrived</i>
<i>elles sont arrivées, f.</i>	

The tenses of Verbs are *primitive* or *derivative*; the *primitive* tenses are those from which the derivative tenses are formed.

There are five *primitive* tenses:

1 The present of the infinitive	<i>l'infinitif</i>
2 The present participle	<i>le participe présent</i>
3 The past participle	<i>le participe passé</i>
4 The present of the indicative	<i>l'indicatif présent</i>
5 The definite past	<i>le passé défini</i>

The derivative tenses are those that are derived from the primitive, that is to say, that are formed from the primitive tenses.

From the *infinitif* two tenses are formed—

1. The Future
2. The Conditional.

1, The Future is formed by changing ¹ *r*, ² *r*, ³ *oir*, ⁴ *re*, into *rai*.

¹ parle <i>r</i>	² fini <i>r</i>	³ recev <i>oir</i>	⁴ rend <i>re</i>
je parle <i>rai</i>	je fini <i>rai</i>	je recev <i>rai</i>	je rend <i>rai</i>

2. The Conditional is formed by changing ¹ *r*, ² *r*, ³ *oir*, ⁴ *re*, into *rais*.

¹	²	³	⁴
aimer <i>r</i>	fini <i>r</i>	recev <i>oir</i>	rend <i>re</i>
j'aime <i>rais</i>	je fini <i>rais</i>	je recev <i>rais</i>	je rend <i>rais</i>

From the *participe présent*, three tenses are formed.

1. The three persons plural of the *indicatif présent*.

2. The *imparfait de l'indicatif*.

3. The *présent du subjonctif*

1. The three persons plural of the indicative, are formed

by changing ¹ *ant* into ² *ons*, ³ *ez*, ⁴ *ent*.

¹	²	³	⁴
chant <i>ant</i>	finiss <i>ant</i>	recev <i>ant</i>	rend <i>ant</i>
n chant <i>ons</i>	finiss <i>ons</i>	recev <i>ons</i>	rend <i>ons</i>
v chant <i>ez</i>	finiss <i>ez</i>	recev <i>ez</i>	rend <i>ez</i>
ils chant <i>ent</i>	finiss <i>ent</i>	reçoiv <i>ent</i> *	rend <i>ent</i>

2. The *imparfait de l'indicatif*, is formed by changing *ant* into *ais*.

¹	²	³	⁴
chant <i>ant</i>	finiss <i>ant</i>	recev <i>ant</i>	rend <i>ant</i>
je chant <i>ais</i>	finiss <i>ais</i>	recev <i>ais</i>	rend <i>ais</i>

3. The *présent du subjonctif*, is formed by changing *ant* into *e* mute.

¹	²	³	⁴
chant <i>ant</i>	finiss <i>ant</i>	rec <i>evant</i>	rend <i>ant</i>
que je chant <i>e</i>	finiss <i>e</i>	reç <i>oive</i>	rend <i>e</i>

From the *participe passé* all compound tenses are formed with the help of the auxiliary verbs *to have*, or *to be*.

j'ai chanté	j'ai fini	j'ai reçu	j'ai vendu
je suis venu	vous êtes	arrivé	ils sont partis

* *Obs.*—The verbs of the *third conjugation* of which the present participle is *evant*, change *evant* into *oive*; *recevant*, *que je recoive*. This changing of *evant* into *oive* takes place for the third person plural of the indicative, and all the persons of the present of the subjunctive, except the first and the second person plural which make *evions*, *eviez*,

que nous rec *evions*
que vous rec *eviez*

From the *présent de l'indicatif*, the *impératif* is formed by suppressing the pronouns *je, nous, vous*.

1st	{ je chante chante	nous chantons chantons	vous chantez chantez
2nd	{ je finis finis	nous finissons finissons	vous finissez finissez
3rd	{ je reçois reçois	nous recevons recevons	vous recevez recevez
4th	- { je vends vends	nous vendons vendons	vous vendez vendez

From the *passé défini*, the *imperfect of the subjunctive* is formed by changing *ai* into *asse*, for the verbs of the first conjugation, and by adding *se*, for the verbs of the three other conjugations.

	²	³	⁴
je chantai	je finis	je reçus	je vendis
que je chantasse	que je finisse	que je reçusse	que je vendisse

But there are a certain number of verbs that do not follow throughout their conjugation, the rules that are given for the formation of the tenses, and which, for this reason are called *irregular verbs*.

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

We call *irregular verbs* those of which the terminations are not, throughout their conjugations, altogether similar to the verb given as a model for each conjugation.

However irregular a verb may be, its irregularities occur only in simple tenses.

HOW TO USE THE DIFFERENT TENSES AND MOODS.

When two verbs come together, that is to say, when a verb follows another, the *first verb only* has a *nominative*, and must be in one of the *personal moods*; the *second verb* having no *nominative*, must be used in the *impersonal mood*, that is, the *infinitive*.

EXAMPLES.

pouvez-vous <i>aller</i> à Londres?	<i>can you go to London?</i>
voulez-vous <i>aller</i> avec moi?	<i>will you go with me?</i>
voulez-vous <i>chanter</i> une chan- son?	<i>will you sing a song?</i>
je ne puis pas <i>chanter</i> aujourd'- hui?	<i>I cannot sing to-day</i>

When the *first* of the two verbs is one of the auxiliaries, the *second* must be in the *past participle*.

EXAMPLES.

nous vous avons <i>envoyé</i> de l'argent	<i>we have sent you some money</i>
nous lui avons <i>écrit</i>	<i>we have written to him</i>
vous l'avez <i>entendu chanter</i>	<i>you have heard him sing</i>
l'avez-vous <i>vue venir</i> ?	<i>did you see her come?</i>

TENSES AND MOODS.

Indicatif.	1. Présent	nous allons	<i>we go, we are going, or we do go</i>
	2. Imparfait	nous allions	<i>we used to go, or we were going</i>
	3. Passé déf.	nous allâmes	<i>we went</i>
	4. Futur	nous irons	<i>we will, or shall go</i>
	5. Condi- tionnel	nous irions si . .	<i>we should or would go if. .</i>
	6. Impératif	— allons	<i>let us go</i>
Subjonctif.	7. Présent	il faut que nous al- lions à Paris	<i>we must go to Paris</i>
		je désire que vous alliez à Londres	<i>I wish you to go to London</i>
		il faudrait que nous allussions à Paris	<i>it would be necessary for us to go to Paris</i>
	8. Imparfait	je voudrais que vous allassiez à Londres	<i>I should like you to go to London</i>

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

INFINITIF.

Aller, to go.

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

allant, going.

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

allé, gone.

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	vais	vas	va	allons	allez	vont
2	allais	allais	allait	allions	alliez	allaient
3	allai	allas	alla	allâmes	allâtes	allèrent'
4	irai	iras	ira	irons	irez	iront
5	irais	irais	irait	irions	iriez	iraient
6	—	vas	—	allons	allez	—
7	aille	ailles	aille	allions	alliez	ailent
8	allasse	allasses	allât	allassions	allassiez	allassent

s'en aller, to go away

This verb is conjugated like *aller*; the only difference is, that *s'en aller* is pronominal, and consequently takes two pronouns of the same person, and that the word *en* is always put before the verb *aller* in simple tenses, and before the auxiliary in compound tenses.

EXAMPLES.

Simple Tenses,

Indicatif,	Présent	je m'en vais	<i>I am going away</i>
	Imparfait	nous nous en allions	<i>we were going away</i>
	Passé défini	vous vous en allâtes	<i>you went away</i>
	Futur	vous vous en irez	<i>you will go away</i>
	Conditionnel	vous vous en iriez si..	<i>you would go away if..</i>
Subjunc.	Impératif	— allez-vous en	<i>— go away</i>
	Présent	que vous vous en alliez	<i>that you may go away</i>
	Imparfait	que vous vous en allassiez	<i>that you might go away</i>

Compound Tenses,

je m'en suis allé	<i>I have gone away</i>
tu t'en étais allé	<i>thou hadst gone away</i>
il s'en fut allé	<i>he had gone away</i>
elle s'en fut allée	<i>she had gone away</i>
nous nous en serons allés	<i>we shall have gone away</i>
vous vous en seriez allés si . .	<i>you would have gone away if . .</i>

INFINITIF.

Envoyer, to send.

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

envoyant, *sending.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

envoyé, *sent.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	envoie	envoies	envoie	envoyons	envoyez	envoient
2	envoyais	envoyais	envoyait	envoyions	envoyiez	envoyaient
3	envoyai	envoyas	envoya	envoyâmes	envoyâtes	envoyèrent
4	enverrai	enverras	enverra	enverrons	enverrez	enverront
5	enverrais	enverrais	enverrait	enverrions	enverriez	enverraient
6	envoie	envoie	envoie	envoyons	envoyez	envoient
7	envoie	envoies	envoie	envoyions	envoyiez	envoient
8	envoyasse	envoyasses	envoyât	envoyassions	envoyassiez	envoyassent

Renvoyer, *to send back, to dismiss*, is conjugated like envoyer.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

INFINITIF.

Acquérir, to acquire.

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

acquérant, *acquiring.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

acquis, *acquired.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	acquiers	acquiers	acquiert	acquérons	acquérez	acquièrent
2	acquérerais	acquérerais	acquerrait	acquérions	acquériez	acquéraient

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
3	acquis	acquis	acquît	acquîmes	acquîtes	acquîrent
4	acquerrai	acquerras	acquerra	acquerrons	acquerez	acquerront
5	acquerrais	acquerrais	acquerrait	acquerrions	acqueriez	acquerraient
6	—	acquiers	—	acquérons	acquérez	—
7	acquière	acquières	acquière	acquérions	acquéries	acquîèrent
8	acquisse	acquisses	acquît	acquissions	acquissiez	acquissent

Conjugate in the same manner :—

conquérir
requérir *

to conquer
to request, to require, (seldom used except in law)
to inquire, (seldom used)

s'enquérir †

INFINITIF.

Bouillir, *to boil.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

bouillant, *boiling.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

bouilli, *boiled.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	bous	bous	bout	bouillons	bouillez	bouillent
2	bouillais	bouillais	bouillait	bouillions	bouilliez	bouillaient
3	bouillis	bouillis	bouillit	bouillîmes	bouillîtes	bouillirent
4	bouillirai	bouilliras	bouillira	bouillirons	bouillirez	bouilliront
5	bouillirais	bouillirais	bouillirait	bouillirions	bouilliriez	bouilliraient
6	—	bous	—	bouillons	bouillez	—
7	bouille	bouilles	bouille	bouillions	bouilliez	bouillent
8	bouillisse	bouillisses	bouillît	bouillissions	bouillissiez	bouillissent

* *Prier de*, to request, is the verb we use when we request somebody to do anything.

vous êtes prié de chanter
on m'a prié de venir

you are requested to sing
I was requested to come

† *S'informer de*, to inquire, is the verb we use when we inquire after somebody or something.

je m'informerai de lui
te me suis informé de vous

I shall inquire after him
I did inquire after him

REMARK.

This verb is seldom used in French except in the third person singular or plural; as:—

l'eau bout	<i>the water boils, or is boiling</i>
les pommes de terre bouillent	<i>the potatoes are boiling</i>

But when in English, *to boil* is used as an active verb, we use in French the verb *faire*, to make, before the *infinitif bouillir*.

EXAMPLES.

je fais bouillir de l'eau	<i>I boil some water</i>
nous faisons bouillir des choux	<i>we boil some cabbages</i>
faites bouillir des pommes de terre	<i>boil some potatoes</i>
il faut que vous fassiez bouillir la viande	<i>you must boil the meat</i>

INFINITIF.

Assaillir, *to attack, to assault.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

assaillant, *attacking, assaulting.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

assailli, *attacked, assaulted.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	assaille	assailles	assaille	assaillons	assaillez	assaillent
2	assaillais	assaillais	assaillait	assaillions	assailliez	assaillaient
3	assaillis	assaillis	assaillit	assaillîmes	assaillîtes	assaillirent
4	assaillirai	assailliras	assaillira	assaillirons	assaillirez	assailliront
5	assaillirais	assaillirais	assaillirait	assaillirions	assailliriez	assailliraient
6	—	assaille	—	assaillons	assaillez	—
7	assaille	assailles	assaille	assaillions	assailliez	assaillent
8	assaillisse	assaillisses	assaillit	assaillissions	assaillissiez	assaillissent

Tressaillir, *to start up, to start*, is conjugated like assaillir, with the difference of the *futur* and *conditionnel*, which make *tressaillerai*, *tressaillerais*, etc.

INFINITIF.

Courir, *to run.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

courant, *running.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

couru, *run.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	cours	cours	court	courons	courez	courent
2	courais	courais	courait	courions	couriez	couraient
3	courus	courus	courut	courûmes	courûtes	coururent
4	courrai	courras	courra	courrons	courrez	courront
5	courrais	courrais	courrait	courrions	courriez	courraient
6	—	cours	—	courons	courez	—
7	coure	coures	coure	courions	couriez	courent
8	courusse	courusses	courût	courussions	courussiez	courussent

Conjugate in the same manner:—

accourir	<i>to run to</i>	encourir	<i>to incur</i>
concourir	<i>to concur</i>	parcourir	<i>to run over</i>
discourir	<i>to discourse</i>	secourir	<i>to relieve, to succour</i>

INFINITIF.

Cueillir, *to gather.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

cueillant, *gathering.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

cueilli, *gathered.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	cueille	cueilles	cueille	cueillons	cueillez	cueillent
2	cueillais	cueillais	cueillait	cueillions	cueilliez	cueillaient
3	cueillis	cueillis	cueillit	cueillîmes	cueillîtes	cueillirent
4	cueillerai	cueilleras	cueillera	cueillerons	cueillerez	cueilleront
5	cueillerais	cueillerais	cueillerait	cueillerions	cueilleriez	cueilleraient
6	—	cueille	—	cueillons	cueillez	—
7	cueille	cueilles	cueille	cueillions	cueilliez	cueillent
8	cueillisse	cueillisses	cueillît	cueillissions	cueillissiez	cueillissent

Conjugate in the same manner:—

accueillir	<i>to welcome, to receive</i>
recueillir	<i>to reap, to collect</i>
se recueillir	<i>to meditate</i>

INFINITIF.

Dormir, * *to sleep.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

dormant, *sleeping.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

dormi, *slept.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	dors	dors	dort	dormons	dormez	dorment
2	dormais	dormais	dormait	dormions	dormiez	dormaient
3	dormis	dormis	dormit	dormîmes	dormîtes	dormirent
4	dormirai	dormiras	dormira	dormirons	dormirez	dormiront
5	dormirais	dormirais	dormirait	dormirions	dormiriez	dormiraient
6	—	dors	—	dormons	dormez	—
7	dorme	dormes	dorme	dormions	dormiez	dorment
8	dormisse	dormisses	dormît	dormissions	dormissiez	dormissent

Conjugate in the same manner:—

endormir	<i>to lull asleep</i>
s'endormir	<i>to fall asleep</i>
se rendormir	<i>to fall asleep again</i>

INFINITIF.

Faillir, *to fail.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

faillant, *falling.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

failli, *failed.*

This verb is used only in the infinitif *faillir*; in the passé défini, je *faillis*, tu *faillis*, il *faillit*, nous *faillîmes*, vous *faillîtes*, ils *faillirent*; and in the compound tenses, j'*ai failli*, nous *avons failli*, etc.; as:—

j'ai failli tomber	<i>I was near falling</i>
il faillit être tué	<i>he was near being killed</i>

* *Dormir*, is to be asleep, to be sleeping. To sleep in a place, or to sleep with somebody, is in French *coucher*; as:—

j'ai couché à Londres	<i>I have slept in London</i>
-----------------------	-------------------------------

INFINITIF.

Fuir, *to fly, to flee, to shun.*

PARTICIPE PRESENT.

fuyant, *flying.*

PARTICIPE PASSE.

fui, *fled.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	fuis	fuis	fuit	fuyons	fuyez	fuient
2	fuyais	fuyais	fuyait	fuyions	fuyiez	fuyaient
3	fuis	fuis	fuit	fulmes	fuites	fuirent
4	fuirai	fuiras	fuirà	fuirons	fuires	fuiront
5	fuirais	fuirais	fuirait	fuirions	fuiriez	fuiraient
6	—	fuis	—	fuyons	fuyez	—
7	fuie	fuies	fuie	fuyions	fuyiez	fuient
8	fuisse	fuissez	fuit	fuiissions	fuiissiez	fuiissent

INFINITIF.

Mourir, *to die.*

PARTICIPE PRESENT.

mourant, *dying.*

PARTICIPE PASSE.

mort, *dead.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	meurs	meurs	meurt	mourons	mourez	meurent
2	mourais	monrais	mourait	mourions	mouriez	mouraient
3	mourus	mourus	mourut	mourûmes	mourûtes	moururent
4	mourrai	mourras	mourra	mourrons	mourrez	mourront
5	mourrais	mourrais	mourrait	mourrions	mourriez	mourraient
6	—	meurs	—	mourons	mourez	—
7	meure	meures	meure	mourions	mouriez	meurent
8	mourusse	mourusses	mourût	mourussions	mourussiez	mourussent

INFINITIF.

Offrir, *to offer.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

offrant, *offering.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

offert, *offered.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	offre	offres	offre	offrons	offrez	offrent
2	offrais	offrais	offrait	offrions	offriez	offraient
3	offris	offris	offrit	offrimes	offrites	offrirent
4	offrirai	offriras	offrira	offrirons	offrirez	offriront
5	offrirais	offrirais	offrirait	offririons	offririez	offriraient
6	—	offre	—	offrons	offrez	—
7	offre	offres	offre	offrions	offriez	offrent
8	offrisse	offrisses	offrit	offrissions	offrissiez	offriissent

Conjugate in the same manner :—

souffrir

to suffer.

INFINITIF.

Ouvrir, *to open.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

ouvrant, *opening.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

ouvert, *opened.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	ouvre	ouvres	ouvre	ouvrons	ouvrez	ouvrent
2	ouvrais	ouvrais	ouvrait	ouvrions	ouvriez	ouvraient
3	ouvris	ouvris	ouvrit	ouvrimes	ouvrîtes	ouvrirent
4	ouvrirai	ouvriras	ouvrira	ouvrirons	ouvrirez	ouvriront
5	ouvrirais	ouvrirais	ouvrirait	ouvririons	ouvririez	ouvriraient
6	—	ouvre	—	ouvrons	ouvrez	—
7	ouvre	ouvres	ouvre	ouvrions	ouvriez	ouvrent
8	ouvrisse	ouvrisses	ouvrit	ouvrissions	ouvrissiez	ouvrissent

Conjugate in the same manner:—

rouvrir	<i>to open again</i>
couvrir	<i>to cover</i>
découvrir	<i>to uncover, to discover</i>
recouvrir	<i>to cover again</i>

INFINITIF.

Partir, *to go, to start, to set out.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

partant, *starting*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

parti, *gone, started.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	pars	pars	part	partons	partez	partent
2	partais	partais	partait	partions	partiez	partaient
3	partis	partis	partit	partimes	partîtes	partirent
4	partirai	partiras	partira	partirons	partirez	partiront
5	partirais	partirais	partirait	partirions	partiriez	partiraient
6	——	pars	——	partons	partez	——
7	parte	partes	parte	partions	partiez	partent
8	partisse	partisses	partit	partissions	partissiez	partissent

Conjugate in the same manner :

repartir	<i>to set out again</i>
----------	-------------------------

INFINITIF.

Sentir, *to feel, to smell.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

sentant, *feeling, smelling.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

senti, *smelt.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	sens	sens	sent	sentons	sentez	sentent
2	sentais	sentais	sentait	sentions	sentiez	sentaient
3	sentis	sentis	sentit	sentimes	sentîtes	sentirent
4	sentirai	sentiras	sentira	sentirons	sentirez	sentiront
5	sentirais	sentirais	sentirait	sentirions	sentiriez	sentiraient
6	——	sens	——	sentons	sentez	——
7	sente	sentes	sente	sentions	sentiez	sentent
8	sentisse	sentisses	sentit	sentissions	sentissiez	sentissent

Conjugate in the same manner :—

consentir	<i>to consent</i>	se repentir	<i>to repent</i>
pressentir	<i>to foresee</i>	mentir	<i>to utter falsehoods, to lie</i>
ressentir	<i>to resent</i>	démentir	<i>to belie</i>

INFINITIF.

Servir, *to serve, to help to.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.
servant, *serving.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.
servi, *served.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	sers	sers	sert	servons	servez	servent
2	servais	servais	servait	servions	serviez	servaient
3	servis	servis	servit	servîmes	servîtes	servirent
4	servirai	serviras	servira	servirons	servirez	serviront
5	servirais	servirais	servirait	servirions	serviriez	serviraient
6	—	sers	—	servons	servez	—
7	serve	erves	serve	servions	serviez	servent
8	servisse	servisses	servît	servissions	servissiez	servissent

Conjugate in the same manner :—

se servir de	<i>to use, to make use of</i>
se servir de	<i>to avail one's-self of</i>

INFINITIF.

Sortir, *to go out.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.
sortant, *going out.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.
sorti, *gone out.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	sors	sors	sort	sortons	sortez	sortent
2	sortais	sortais	sortait	sortions	sortiez	sortaient
3	sortis	sortis	sortit	sortîmes	sortîtes	sortirent
4	sortirai	sortiras	sortira	sortirons	sortirez	sortiront
5	sortirais	sortirais	sortirait	sortirions	sortiriez	sortiraient
6	—	sors	—	sortons	sortez	—
7	sorte	sortes	sorte	sortions	sortiez	sortent
8	sortisse	sortisses	sortît	sortissions	sortissiez	sortissent

Conjugate in the same manner :—

ressortir

to go out again

INFINITIF.

Tenir, *to hold, to keep.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

tenant, *holding.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

tenu, *held.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	tiens	tiens	tient	tenons	tenez	tiennent
2	tenais	tenais	tenait	tenions	teniez	tenaient
3	tins	tins	tint	tîmes	tîntes	tinrent
4	tiendrai	tiendras	tiendra	tiendrons	tiendrez	tiendront
5	tiendrais	tiendrais	tiendrait	tiendrions	tiendriez	tiendraient
6	—	tiens	—	tenons	tenez	—
7	tienne	tiennes	tienne	tenions	teniez	tiennent
8	tinse	tinsses	tint	tinssions	tinssiez	tinssent

Conjugate in the same manner :—

retenir *to retain, to detain*

détenir *to detain, to with-
hold*

appartenir *to belong*

contenir

maintenir

s'abstenir de

to contain, to hold

*to maintain, to re-
tain*

to abstain

INFINITIF.

Venir, *to come.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

venant, *coming.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

venu, *come.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	viens	viens	vient	venons	venez	viennent
2	venais	venais	venait	venions	veniez	venaient
3	vins	vins	vint	vinmes	vîntes	vinrent
4	viendrai	viendras	viendra	viendrons	viendrez	viendront
5	viendrais	viendrais	viendrait	viendrions	viendriez	viendraient
6	—	viens	—	venons	venez	—
7	vienne	viennes	vienne	venions	veniez	viennent
8	vinse	vinsses	vint	vinssions	vinssiez	vinssent

Conjugate in the same manner :—

revenir	<i>to come back, to return (from)</i>
convenir à-de	<i>to suit, to become, to be proper</i>
convenir de	<i>to own, to agree</i>
devenir	<i>to become, (something)</i>
contrevenir à	<i>to infringe, to contravene</i>
intervenir	<i>to intervene, to interpose</i>
se souvenir de	<i>to remember</i>

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

INFINITIF.

Mouvoir, to move.

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

mouvant, moving.

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

mu, moved.

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	meus	meus	meut	mouvons	mouvez	meuvent
2	mouvais	mouvais	mouvait	mouvions	mouviez	mouvaient
3	mus	mus	mut	mûmes	mûtes	murent
4	mouvrai	mouvras	mouvra	mouvrons	mouvrez	mouvront
5	mouvrais	mouvrais	mouvrait	mouvriions	mouvriez	mouvraient
6	—	meus	—	mouvons	mouvez	—
7	meuve	meuves	meuve	mouvions	mouviez	meuvent
8	musse	musses	mût	mussions	mussiez	mussent

Conjugate in the same manner :

émouvoir	<i>to move, to affect, to excite</i>
s'émouvoir	<i>to be moved, to be affected</i>
promouvoir	<i>to promote</i>

INFINITIF.

Pouvoir de, *to provide with.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

pouvoyant, *providing.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

pouvu de, *provided with.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	pourvois	pourvois	pourvoit	pouvoyons	pouvoyez	pourvoient
2	pouvoyais	pouvoyais	pouvoyait	pouvoyions	pouvoyiez	pouvoyaient
3	pourvus	pourvus	pourvut	pouvûmes	pouvûtes	pouvurent
4	pouvrais	pouvrais	pouvra	pouvrons	pouvriez	pouvraient
5	pouvrais	pouvrais	pouvrait	pouvriions	pouvriez	pouvraient
6	—	pourvois	—	pouvoyons	pouvoyez	—
7	pourvoie	pourvoies	pourvoie	pouvoyions	pouvoyiez	pourvoient
8	pouvusse	pouvusses	pouvût	pouvussions	pouvussiez	pouvussent

INFINITIF.

Pouvoir, * *to be able.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

pouvant, *being able.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

pu, *been able.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	puis	peux	peut	pouvons	pouvez	peuvent
2	pouvais	pouvais	pouvait	pouvions	pouviez	pouvaient
3	pus	pus	put	pûmes	pûtes	purent
4	pourrai	pourras	pourra	pourrons	pourrez	pourront
5	pourrais	pourrais	pourrait	pourrions	pourriez	pourraient
6	No Imperative.					
7	puisse	puisses	puisse	puissions	puissiez	puissent
8	pusse	pusse	pût	pussons	pussez	pusse

* See 18th Lesson, on Idiomatical and Useful Phrases, Part III.

REMARKS.

In the present of the indicative of this verb, (*pouvoir*), we say; je *puis*, or je *peux*, but je *puis* is to be preferred, for we say interrogatively *puis-je?* and not *peux-je?*

que puis-je faire pour vous?
puis-je vous être utile?

what can I do for you?
can I be useful to you?

We say also, *je ne puis*, and *je ne puis pas*; *je ne puis* implies difficulties, *je ne puis pas*, expresses impossibility.

INFINITIF.

S'asseoir, to sit down.

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

s'asseyant, sitting.

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

assis, seated.

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	m'assieds	t'assieds	s'assied	nous asseyons	vous asseyez	s'asseient
2	m'asseyais	t'asseyais	s'asseyait	nous asseyions	vous asseyiez	s'asseyaient
3	m'assis	t'assis	s'assit	nous assimes	vous assites	s'assirent
4	m'assiérai or m'asseierai	t'assiéras or t'asseieras	s'assiéra or s'asseiera	nous assiérons or nous asseierons	vous assiérez or vous asseierez	s'assiéront or s'asseieront
5	m'assiérais or m'asseieraient	t'assiérais or t'asseieraient	s'assièrait or s'asseieraient	nous assiérions or nous asseierions	vous assiériez or vous asseieriez	s'assièraient or s'asseieraient
6	—	assieds-toi	—	asseyons-nous	asseyez-vous	—
7	m'asseie	t'asseies	s'asseie	nous asseyions	vous asseyiez	s'asseient
8	m'assiasse	t'assisses	s'assit	nous assissions	vous assissiez	s'assissent

Seoir, to sit well, to become, is conjugated in the same manner; but is only used in the third person singular or plural.

INFINITIF.

Savoir, * to know (mentally.)

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

sachant, *knowing*.

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

su, *known*.

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	sais	sais	sait	savons	savez	savent
2	savais	savais	savait	savions	saviez	savaient
3	sus	sus	sut	sûmes	sûtes	surent
4	saurai	sauras	saura	saurons	saurez	sauront
5	saurais	saurais	saurait	saurions	sauriez	sauraient
6	—	sache	—	sachons	sachez	—
7	sache	saches	sache	sachions	sachiez	sachent
8	susse	susses	sût	sussions	sussiez	sussent

INFINITIF.

Valoir, to be worth.

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

valant, *being worth*.

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

valu, *been worth*.

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	vaux	vaux	vaut	valons	valez	valent
2	valais	valais	valait	valions	valiez	valaient
3	valus	valus	valut	valûmes	valûtes	valurent
4	vaudrai	vaudras	vaudra	vaudrons	vaudrez	vaudront
5	vaudrais	vaudrais	vaudrait	vaudrions	vaudriez	vaudraient
6	No Imperative.					
7	vaille	vailles	vaille	valions	valiez	vaillent
8	valusse	valusses	valût	valussions	valussiez	valussent

* See the verb *connaître*, to know, page 181.

Prévaloir, to prevail, is conjugated in the same manner, except in the subjunctif présent; *prévale, prévaies, prévale, prévalions, prévaliez, prevalent.*

INFINITIF.

Voir, *to see.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

voyant, *seeing.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

vu, *seen.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	vois	vois	voit	voyons	voyez	voient
2	voyais	voyais	voyait	voyions	voyiez	voyaient
3	vis	vis	vit	vîmes	vîtes	virent
4	verrai	verras	verra	verrons	verrez	verront
5	verrais	verrais	verrait	verrions	verriez	verraient
6	—	vois	—	voyons	voyez	—
7	voie	voies	voie	voyions	voyiez	voient
8	visse	visses	vit	vissions	vissiez	vissent

Revoir, to see again, is conjugated in the same manner.

INFINITIF.

Vouloir, * *to be willing, to wish.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

voulant, *wishing.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

voulu, *wished.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	veux	veux	veut	voulons	voulez	veulent
2	voulais	voulais	voulait	voulions	vouliez	voulaient
3	voulus	voulus	voulut	voulûmes	voulûtes	voulurent
4	voudrai	voudras	voudra	voudrôns	voudrez	voudront
5	voudrais	voudrais	voudrait	voudrions	voudriez	voudraient
6	—	—	—	—	veuillez	—
7	veuille	veuilles	veuille	voulions	vouliez	venillent
8	voulusse	voulusses	voulût	voulussions	voulussiez	voulussent

* See 18th Lesson, on Idiomatical and Useful Phrases, Part III.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

INFINITIF.

Absoudre, to absolve.

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

absolvant, *absolving.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

absous, *m.. absoute, f., absolved.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	absous	absous	absout	absolvons	absolvez	absolvent
2	absolvais	absolvais	absolvait	absolvions	absolviez	absolvaient
3	No Passé défini.					
4	absoudrai	absoudras	absoudra	absoudrons	absoudrez	absoudront
5	absoudrais	absoudrais	absoudrait	absoudrions	absoudriez	absoudraient
6	—	absous	—	absolvons	absolvez	—
7	absolve	absolves	absolve	absolvions	absolviez	absolvent
8	No Imparfait.					

Dissoudre, to dissolve, is conjugated like absoudre.

INFINITIF.

Battre, to beat.

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

battant, *beating.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

battu, *beaten.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	bats	bats	bat	battons	battez	battent
2	batais	batais	batait	battions	battiez	battaient
3	battis	battis	battit	battimes	battîtes	battirent
4	battrai	battras	battra	battrons	battrez	battront ;
5	battrais	battrais	battrait	battrions	battriez	battraient
6	—	bats	—	battons	battez	—
7	batte	battes	batte	battions	battiez	battent
8	battisse	battisse	battit	battissions	battissiez	battissent

Conjugate in the same manner:—

se battre	<i>to fight</i>
débattre	<i>to debate</i>
combattre	<i>to fight, to combat, to contend with</i>
abattre	<i>to cut down, to pull down</i>
rabattre	<i>to reduce, to take off</i>
se débattre	<i>to struggle</i>

INFINITIF.

Boire, *to drink.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

buvant, *drinking.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

bu, *drunk.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	bois	bois	boit	buvons	buvez	boivent
2	buvais	buvais	buvait	buvions	buviez	buvaient
3	bus	bus	but	bûmes	bûtes	burent
4	boirai	boiras	boira	boirons	boirez	boiront
5	boirais	boirais	boirait	boirions	boiriez	boiraient
6	—	bois	—	buvons	buvez	—
7	boive	boives	boive	buvions	buviez	boivent
8	busse	busses	bût	bussions	bussiez	bussent

INFINITIF.

Connaître, *to know, to be acquainted with.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

connaissant, *knowing.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

connu, *known.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	connais	connais	connait	connaissons	connaissez	connaissent
2	connaissais	connaissais	connaissait	connaissions	connaissiez	connaissaient
3	connus	connus	connut	connûmes	connûtes	connurent
4	connattrai	connattras	connattra	connattrons	connattrez	connattront
5	connattrais	connattrais	connattrait	connattrions	connattriez	connattraient
6	—	connais	—	connaissons	connaissez	—
7	connaisse	connaissez	connaisse	connaissons	connaissez	connaissent
8	connusse	connussiez	connût	connussions	connussiez	connussent

R

REMARK.

The pupil must not confound the verb *connaître*, to know, with *savoir*, (page 178,) which also signifies to know. *Savoir* is to know mentally; that is to say, to know anything that can be learnt, or anything that has happened, or that may happen.

savoir le Français
savoir si..

to know French
to know if.. or whether..

We cannot say, *savoir une personne*; we say, *connaître une personne*.

To know some one, or to be acquainted with somebody is *connaître*.

To know something that we learn, or to know if.., or whether.., is *savoir*.

Conjugate in the same manner:—

reconnaître
paraître
disparaître
reparaître

to recognize, to acknowledge
to look, to appear
to disappear
to reappear

INFINITIF.

Conclude, to conclude.

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

concluant, concluding.

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

conclu, concluded.

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	conclus	conclus	conclut	concluons	concluez	concluent
2	concluais	concluais	concluait	concluions	concluiez	concluaient
3	conclus	conclus	conclut	conclûmes	conclûtes	conclurent
4	conclurai	concluras	conclura	conclurons	conclurez	concluront
5	conclurais	conclurais	conclurait	conclurions	concluriez	concluraient
6	—	conclus	—	concluons	concluez	—
7	conclue	conclues	conclue	concluions	concluiez	concluent
8	conclusse	conclusses	conclût	concluissions	conclussiez	conclussent

Conjugate in the same manner :

exclure

to exclude

INFINITIF.

Conduire, *to conduct, to drive, to lead.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

conduisant, *conducting, driving.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

conduit, *conducted, lead.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	conduis	conduis	conduit	conduisons	conduisez	conduisent
2	conduisais	conduisais	conduisait	conduisions	conduisiez	conduisaient
3	conduisis	conduisis	conduisit	conduisîmes	conduisîtes	conduisirent
4	conduirai	conduiras	conduira	conduirons	conduirez	conduiront
5	conduirais	conduirais	conduirait	conduirions	conduiriez	conduiraient
6	—	conduis	—	conduisons	conduisez	—
7	conduise	conduises	conduise	conduisions	conduisiez	conduisent
8	conduisisse	conduisisses	conduist	conduisissions	conduisissiez	conduisissent

Conjugate in the same manner :—

se conduire
reconduire
construire
détruire
déduire
instruire
introduire
produire
réduire
traduire

to behave
to re-conduct
to construct, to build
to destroy
to deduct
to instruct
to introduce
to produce
to reduce
to translate

Nuire *d*, to hurt, to injure, is conjugated like *conduire*, except the past participle, which is *nui*, and which has no feminine.

INFINITIF.

Confire, to pickle, to preserve.

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

confisant, pickling, preserving.

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

confit, pickled, preserved.

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	confis	confis	confit	confisons	confisez	confisent
2	confisais	confisais	confisai	confisions	confisiez	confisaient
3	confis	confis	confit	confimes	confites	confirent
4	confirai	confiras	confira	confirons	confirez	confiront
5	confirais	confirais	confirait	confirions	confiriez	confiraient
6	—	confis	—	confisons	confisez	—
7	confise	confises	confise	confisions	confisiez	confisent
8			Not or seldom used.			

Suffire to suffice, to be sufficient, is conjugated like *confire*; but the past participle is *suffi*, and has no feminine.

INFINITIF.

Coudre, to sew.

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

cousant, sewing.

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

cousu, sewed.

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	couds	couds	coud	cousons	cousez	cousent
2	cousais	cousais	cousait	cousions	cousiez	cousaient
3	cousis	cousis	cousit	cousimes	cousites	cousirent
4	coudrai	coudras	coudra	coudrons	coudrez	coudront
5	coudrais	coudrais	coudrait	coudrions	coudriez	coudraient
6	—	couds	—	cousons	cousez	—
7	couse	couses	couse	cousions	cousiez	cousent
8	cousisse	cousisses	cousit	cousissions	cousissiez	cousissent

Conjugate in the same manner :—

découdre	<i>to unsew</i>
recoudre	<i>to sew again</i>

INFINITIF.

Craindre, to fear, to dread.

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

craignant, fearing.

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

craint, feared.

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	crains	crains	craint	craignons	craignez	craignent
2	craignais	craignais	craignait	craignons	craigniez	craignaient
3	craignis	craignis	craignit	craignîmes	craignîtes	craignirent
4	craindrai	craindras	craindra	craindrons	craindrez	craindront
5	craindraie	craindraie	craindrait	craindrions	craindriez	craindraient
6	——	crains	——	craignons	craignez	——
7	craigne	craignes	craigne	craignons	craigniez	craignent
8	craignisse	craignisses	craignît	craignissions	craignissiez	craignissent

Conjugate in the same manner :—

contraindre	<i>to constrain, to compel</i>
éteindre	<i>to put out, to extinguish</i>
enfreindre	<i>to infringe</i>
feindre de	<i>to feign</i>
joindre	<i>to join</i>
rejoindre	<i>to rejoin, to overtake</i>
peindre	<i>to paint, to describe</i>
plaindre	<i>to pity</i>
se plaindre	<i>to complain</i>
teindre	<i>to dye, to tinge</i>
atteindre	<i>to attain, to reach</i>

INFINITIF.

Croire, *to believe.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

croyant, *believing.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

cru, *believed.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	crois	crois	croît	croyons	croyez	croient
2	croyais	croyais	croyait	croyions	croyiez	croyaient
3	crus	crus	crut	crûmes	crûtes	crurent
4	croirai	croiras	croira	croirons	croirez	croiront
5	croirais	croirais	croirait	croirions	croiriez	croiraient
6	—	crois	—	croyons	croyez	—
7	croie	croies	croie	croyions	croyiez	croient
8	crusse	crusses	crût	crussions	crussiez	crussent

INFINITIF.

Croître, *to grow.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

croissant, *growing.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

crû, *grown.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	crois	crois	croît	croissons	croissez	croissent
2	croissais	croissais	croissait	croissions	croissiez	croissaient
3	crûs	crûs	crût	crûmes	crûtes	crurent
4	croîtrai	croîtras	croîtra	croîtrons	croîtrez	croîtront
5	croîtrais	croîtrais	croîtrait	croîtrions	croîtriez	croîtraient
6	—	crois	—	croissons	croissez	—
7	croisse	croisses	croisse	croissions	croissiez	croissent
8	crûsse	crûsses	crût	crûssions	crûssiez	crûssent

Conjugate in the same manner:—

accroître

to increase

décroître

to decrease

INFINITIF.

Dire (à-de,) *to say, to tell.*PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.
disant, *saying.*PARTICIPE PASSÉ.
dit, *said. told.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	dis	dis	dit	disons	dites	disent
2	disais	disais	disait	disions	disiez	disaient
3	dis	dis	dit	dimes	dites	dirent
4	dirai	diras	dira	dirons	direz	diront
5	dirais	dirais	dirait	dirions	diriez	diraient
6	—	dis	—	disons	dites	—
7	dise	dises	dise	disions	disiez	disent
8	disse	disse	dit	disions	disiez	disent

Redire, to say, or to tell again, is conjugated like *dire*.contredire *to contradict*dédire *to gainsay*se dédire *to recant*interdire *to prohibit*médire *to slander*prédire *to foretell, to predict*

These verbs are conjugated like *dire*, with the exception of the second person plural of the indicative present and the imperative which make—

vous contredisez
vous dédiez
vous vous dédiez
vous interdisez
vous médisez
vous prédisez

INFINITIF.

Ecrire, *to write.*PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.
écrivant, *writing.*PARTICIPE PASSÉ.
écrit, *written*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	écriis	écriis	écrivit	écrivons	écrivez	écrivent
2	écrivais	écrivais	écrivait	écrivions	écriviez	écrivaient
3	écrivis	écrivis	écrivit	écrivîmes	écrivîtes	écrivirent
4	écrirai	écriras	écrira	écrivons	écriviez	écriront
5	écrivais	écrivais	écrivait	écrivions	écriviez	écrivirent
6	—	écriis	—	écrivons	écrivez	—
7	écrive	écrives	écrive	écrivions	écriviez	écrivent
8	écrivisse	écrivisses	écrivit	écrivissions	écrivissiez	écrivissent

Conjugate in the same manner :—

décrire	<i>to describe</i>
inscrire	<i>to inscribe</i>
prescrire	<i>to prescribe</i>
proscrire	<i>to proscribe</i>
souscrire	<i>to subscribe</i>
transcrire	<i>to transcribe</i>

INFINITIF.

Faire, *to do, to make,*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

faisant, *making.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

fait, *made.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	fais	fais	fait	faisons	faites	font
2	faisais	faisais	faisait	faisions	faisiez	faisaient
3	fis	fis	fit	fîmes	fîtes	fîrent
4	ferai	feras	fera	ferons	feres	feront
5	ferais	ferais	ferait	ferions	feriez	feraient
6	—	fais	—	faisons	faites	—
7	fasse	fasses	fasse	fassions	fassiez	fassent
8	fîsse	fîsses	fît	fîssions	fîssiez	fîssent

Conjugate in the same manner :—

contrefaire	<i>to counterfeit, to ape, to mimic</i>
défaire	<i>to undo, to unmake</i>
se défaire de	<i>to part with, to rid one's self of</i>
refaire	<i>to do, or to make again</i>
surfaire	<i>to ask too much, to exact</i>
satisfaire	<i>to satisfy</i>

INFINITIF.
Lire, to read.

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

lisant, reading.

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

lu, read.

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	lis	lis	lit	lisons	lisez	lisent
2	lisais	lisais	lisait	lisions	lisiez	lisaient
3	lus	lus	lut	lûmes	lûtes	lurent
4	lirai	liras	lira	lirons	lirez	liront
5	lirais	lirais	lirait	lirions	liriez	liraient
6	—	lis	—	lisons	lisez	—
7	lise	lises	lise	lisions	lisiez	lisent
8	lusse	lusses	lût	lussions	lussiez	lussent

Elire, to elect, is conjugated like *lire*.

INFINITIF.
Luire, to shine.

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

luisant, shining.

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

lui, shone.

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	luis	luis	luit	luisons	luisiez	luisent
2	luisais	luisais	luisait	luisions	luisiez	luisaient
3	No Passé défini					
4	luirai	luiras	luira	luirons	luirez	luiront
5	luirais	luirais	luirait	luirions	luiriez	luiraient
6	—	luis	—	luisons	luisiez	—
7	luisse	luisés	luisse	luisions	luisiez	luisent
8	No Imparfait.					

Reluire, to shine, to glitter, is conjugated in the same manner.

INFINITIF.

Mettre, to put.

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

mettant, putting.

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

mis, put.

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	met	met	met	mettons	mettez	mettent
2	mettais	mettais	mettait	mettions	mettiez	mettaient
3	mis	mis	mit	mimes	mîtes	mirent
4	mettrai	mettras	mettra	mettrons	mettrez	mettront
5	mettrais	mettrais	mettrait	mettrions	mettriez	mettraient
6	—	met	—	mettons	mettez	—
7	mette	mettes	mette	mettions	mettiez	mettent
8	misse	misses	mit	missions	missiez	missent

Conjugate in the same manner:—

admettre	<i>to admit</i>
commettre	<i>to commit</i>
compromettre	<i>to compromise</i>
émettre	<i>to emit, to issue</i>
omettre de	<i>to omit</i>
permettre (à-de)	<i>to permit, to allow</i>
promettre (à-de)	<i>to promise</i>
remettre	<i>to put or set again ; to put off</i>
se remettre	<i>to recover, to mend, recover one's self</i>
soumettre	<i>to submit</i>
se démettre	<i>to resign, to put out of joint</i>
transmettre	<i>to transmit</i>

INFINITIF.

Moudre, to grind (corn, coffee, etc.)

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

moulant, grinding.

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

moulu, ground.

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	mouds	mouds	moud	moulons	moulez	moulent
2	moulais	moulais	moulait	moulions	mouliez	moulaient

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
3	moulus	moulus	moulut	moulûmes	moulûtes	moulurent
4	moudrai	moudras	moudra	moudrons	moudrez	moudront
5	moudrais	moudrais	moudrait	moudrions	moudriez	moudraient
6	—	mouds	—	moulons	moulez	—
7	moule	moules	moule	moulions	mouliez	moulent
8	moulusse	moulusses	moulût	moulussions	moulussiez	moulussent

Emoudre, to grind, (knives, razors, etc.) is conjugated like *moudre*.

INFINITIF.

Naître, to be born.

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

naissant, being born.

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

né, born.

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	nais	nais	naît	naïssons	naïssez	naissent.
2	naissais	naissais	naissait	naissions	naissiez	naissaient
3	naquis	naquis	naquit	naquîmes	naquîtes	naquirent
4	naîtrai	naîtras	naîtra	naîtrons	naîtrez	naîtront
5	naîtrais	naîtrais	naîtrait	naîtrions	naîtriez	naîtraient
6	No Imperatif.					
7	naïsse	naïsses	naïsse	naïssions	naïssiez	naïssent
8	naquisse	naquisses	naquit	naquissions	naquissiez	naquissent

Renaitre to revive, to spring up again, is conjugated like *naître*, but has no past participle.

INFINITIF.

Plaire à, *to please.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

plaisant, *pleasing.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

plu, *pleased.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	plais	plais	plaît	plaisons	plaisez	plaisent
2	plaisais	plaisais	plaisait	plaisions	plaisiez	plaisaient
3	plus	plus	plut	plûmes	plûtes	plurent
4	plairai	plairas	plaira	plairons	plairez	plairont
5	plairais	plairais	plairait	plairions	plairiez	plairaient
6	—	plais	—	plaisons	plaisez	—
7	plaise	plaises	plaise	plaisions	plaisiez	plaisent
8	plusse	plusses	plût	plussions	plussiez	plussent

Conjugate in the same manner :—

déplaire à	<i>to displease</i>
se complaire à	<i>to delight in</i>
se plaire à	<i>to delight in, to take delight in</i>

INFINITIF.

Prendre, *to take.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

prenant, *taking.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

pris, *taken.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	prends	prends	prend	prenons	prenez	prennent
2	prenais	prenais	prenait	prenions	preniez	prenaient
3	pris	pris	prit	prîmes	prîtes	prîrent
4	prendrai	prendras	prendra	prendrons	prendrez	prendront
5	prendrais	prendrais	prendrait	prendrions	prendriez	prendraient
6	—	prends	—	prenons	prenez	—
7	prenne	prennes	prenne	prenions	preniez	prennent
8	prisse	prisses	prît	prissions	prissiez	prissent

Conjugate in the same manner :—

apprendre	<i>to learn</i>
comprendre	<i>to understand, to comprehend</i>
entreprendre	<i>to undertake</i>
reprendre	<i>to resume, to take back</i>
surprendre	<i>to surprise</i>
se méprendre	<i>to mistake</i>

INFINITIF.

Résoudre, *to resolve, to solve.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

résolvant, *resolving.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

résolu,* or résous, *resolved.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	résous	résous	résout	résolvons	résolvez	résolvent
2	résolvais	résolvais	résolvait	résolvions	résolviez	résolvaient
3	résolus	résolus	résolut	résolûmes	résolûtes	résolurent
4	résoudrai	résoudras	résoudra	résoudrons	résoudrez	résoudront
5	résoudrais	résoudrais	résoudrait	résoudrions	résoudriez	résoudraient
6	—	résous	—	résolvons	résolvez	—
7	résolve	résolves	résolve	résolvions	résolviez	résolvent
8	résolusse	résolusses	résolût	résolussions	résolussiez	résolussent

Se résoudre à, to come to, to resolve, is conjugated like
résoudre

INFINITIF.

Rire, *to laugh.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

riant, *laughing.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

ri, *laughed.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	ris	ris	rit	riens	riez	rient
2	riaux	riaux	riaît	riions	riez	riaient

* This Verb has two past participles, *résolu* and *résous*. The past participle *résolu* signifies *determined, decided*. The past participle *résous* signifies *reduced, or turned into* (one thing turned into another). This last past participle has no feminine.

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
3	ris	ris	rit	rimes	rites	rirent
4	rirai	riras	rira	rirons	rirez	riront
5	rirais	rirais	rirait	ririons	ririez	riraient
6	—	ris	—	rions	riez	—
7	rie	ries	rie	riions	riez	rient
8	risse	rissez	rit	rissons	rissez	riissent

Sourire, to smile, *se rire de*, to laugh at, to ridicule, are conjugated like *rire*.

INFINITIF.

Rompre, to break.

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

rompant, *breaking*.

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

rompu, *broken*.

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	romps	romps	rompt	rompons	rompez	rompent
2	rompais	rompais	rompait	rompions	rompiez	rompaient
3	rompis	rompis	romptit	rompîmes	rompîtes	rompirent
4	romprai	rompras	rompra	romprons	romprez	rompront
5	romprais	romprais	romprait	romprions	rompiez	rompraient
6	—	romps	—	rompons	rompez	—
7	rompe	rompes	rompe	rompions	rompiez	rompent
8	rompisse	rompissiez	romptit	rompiassions	rompiassiez	rompiissent

Conjugate in the same manner :—

corrompre

to corrupt, to bribe

interrompre

to interrupt, to disturb

INFINITIF.

Suivre, *to follow, to attend.*PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.
suivant, *following.*PARTICIPE PASSÉ.
suivi, *followed, attended.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	suis	suis	suit	suivons	suivez	suivent
2	suivais	suivais	suivait	suivions	suiviez	suivaient
3	suivis	suivis	suivit	suivîmes	suivîtes	suivirent
4	suivrai	suivras	suivra	suivrons	suivre	suivront
5	suivrais	suivrais	suivrait	suivrions	suivriez	suivraient
6	—	suis	—	suivons	suivez	—
7	suive	suives	suive	suivions	suiviez	suivent
8	suivisse	suivisses	suivit	suivissions	suivissiez	suivissent

Conjugate in the same manner:—

poursuivre

to pursue, to prosecute, to go on.

S'ensuivre, to ensue, to result, it follows, is also conjugated like *suivre*, but it is used only in the third person singular and plural of every tense.

INFINITIF.

Se taire, *to be silent or still, to keep or to hold one's tongue.*PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.
se taisantPARTICIPE PASSÉ.
tu

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	me tais	te tais	se tait	taisons	taisez	taisent
2	me taisais	taisais	taisait	taisions	taisie	taisaient
3	me tus	te tus	se tut	tûmes	tûtes	turent
4	me tairai	tairas	taira	tairons	tairiez	tairont
5	me tairais	tairais	tairait	tairions	tairiez	tairaient
6	—	tais-toi	—	taisons-nous	taisez-vous	—
7	me taise	taises	taise	taisions	taisie	taisent
8	me tussés	tussés	tût	tussions	tussiez	tussent

Taire, to conceal, to keep secret, follows the same conjugation.

INFINITIF.

Vaincre, *to conquer, to vanquish.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

vainquant, *conquering.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

vaincu, *conquered.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	vaincs	vaincs	vainc	vainquons	vainquez	vainquent
2	vainquais	vainquais	vainquait	vainquions	vainquiez	vainquaient
3	vainquis	vainquis	vainquit	vainquîmes	vainquîtes	vainquirent
4	vaincrai	vaincras	vaincra	vaincrons	vaincrez	vaincront
5	vaincrais	vaincrais	vaincrait	vaincristions	vaincristiez	vaincristaient
6	—	vaincs	—	vainquons	vainquez	—
7	vainque	vainques	vainque	vainquions	vainquiez	vainquent
8	vainquisse	vainquisses	vainquit	vainquissions	vainquissiez	vainquissent

Conjugate in the same manner :

convaincre

to convince, to convict.

INFINITIF.

Vivre, *to live, to be living, to exist.*

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

vivant, *living.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

vécu, *lived.*

	JE	TU	IL	NOUS	VOUS	ILS
1	vis	vis	vit	vivons	vivez	vivent
2	vivais	vivais	vivait	vivions	viviez	vivaient
3	vécus	vécus	vécut	vécûmes	vécûtes	vécurent
4	vivrai	vivras	vivra	vivrons	vivrez	vivront
5	vivrais	vivrais	vivrait	vivristions	vivristiez	vivristaient
6	—	vis	—	vivons	vivez	—
7	vive	vives	vive	vivions	viviez	vivent
8	vécusse	vécusses	vécut	vécussions	vécussiez	vécussent

Revivre, to revive, is conjugated in the same manner.

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS,

ARRANGED ALPHABETICALLY.

		conjugated like	PAGE
abattre	<i>to cut down, to pull down</i>	battre	180
absoudre	<i>to absolve</i>		180
accourir	<i>to run to</i>	courir	168
accueillir	<i>to welcome, to receive</i>	cueillir	168
accroître	<i>to increase</i>	croître	186
acquérir	<i>to acquire</i>		166
admettre	<i>to admit</i>	mettre	190
aller	<i>to go</i>		164
appartenir	<i>to belong</i>	tenir	174
apparaître	<i>to appear</i>	connaître	181
apprendre	<i>to learn</i>	prendre	192
assaillir	<i>to assault, to assail</i>		167
atteindre	<i>to attain, to reach</i>	craindre	186
battre	<i>to beat</i>		180
boire	<i>to drink</i>		181
bouillir	<i>to boil</i>		166
conquérir	<i>to conquer</i>	acquérir	166
courir	<i>to run</i>		168
concourir	<i>to concur</i>	courir	168
cueillir	<i>to gather</i>		168
couvrir	<i>to cover</i>	ouvrir	171
consentir	<i>to consent</i>	sentir	172
contenir	<i>to contain, to hold</i>	tenir	174
convenir (à de)	<i>to suit, to become, to be proper</i>	venir	174
convenir (de)	<i>to own, to agree</i>	venir	174
contrevenir (à)	<i>to infringe, to contravene</i>	venir	174
combattre	<i>to fight, to combat</i>	battre	180
connaître	<i>to know, to be acquainted with</i>		181
conclure	<i>to conclude</i>		182
conduire	<i>to conduct, to lead, to drive</i>		183
construire	<i>to construct, to build</i>	conduire	183
confire	<i>to pickle, to preserve</i>		184
craindre	<i>to fear, to dread</i>		186
coudre	<i>to sew</i>		184
contraindre	<i>to compel, to constrain</i>	craindre	186
croire	<i>to believe</i>		186
croître	<i>to grow</i>		186
contredire	<i>to contradict</i>	dire	187
contrefaire	<i>to counterfeit, to mimic, to ape</i>	faire	188
commettre	<i>to commit</i>	mettre	190
compromettre	<i>to compromise</i>	mettre	190

		conjugated like	PAGE
comprendre	<i>to understand, to comprehend</i>	prendre	192
corrompre	<i>to corrupt, to bribe</i>	rompre	194
convaincre	<i>to convince, to convict</i>	vaincre	196
discourir	<i>to discourse</i>	courir	168
dormir	<i>to sleep, to be asleep</i>		169
découvrir	<i>to discover, to uncover</i>	ouvrir	171
démentir	<i>to belie</i>	sentir	172
détenir	<i>to detain, to withhold</i>	tenir	174
devenir	<i>to become (something)</i>	venir	174
débattre	<i>to debate</i>	battre	180
disparaître	<i>to disappear</i>	connaître	181
détruire	<i>to destroy</i>	conduire	183
déduire	<i>to deduct</i>	conduire	183
découdre	<i>to unsew</i>	coudre	184
décroître	<i>to decrease</i>	croître	186
dire (à-de)	<i>to say, to tell</i>		187
dédire	<i>to gainsay</i>	dire	187
décrire	<i>to describe</i>	écrire	187
défaire	<i>to undo, to unmake</i>	faire	188
déplaire (à)	<i>to displease</i>	plaire (à)	192
dissoudre	<i>to dissolve</i>	absoudre	180
écrire	<i>to write</i>		187
élire	<i>to elect</i>	lire	189
envoyer	<i>to send</i>		165
encourir	<i>to incur</i>	courir	168
endormir	<i>to lull asleep</i>	dormir	169
émettre	<i>to emit, to issue</i>	mettre	190
émoudre	<i>to grind (knives, razors, etc.)</i>	moudre	190
émouvoir	<i>to move, to effect, to excite</i>	mouvoir	175
enfreindre	<i>to infringe</i>	craindre	185
entreprendre	<i>to undertake</i>	prendre	192
éteindre	<i>to put out, to extinguish</i>	craindre	185
exclure	<i>to exclude</i>	conclure	182
faire	<i>to make, to do, to cause</i>		188
faillir	<i>to fail</i>		169
feindre (de)	<i>to feign</i>	craindre	185
fuir	<i>to fly, to flee, to shun</i>		170
induire	<i>to induce, to infer</i>	conduire	183
interdire	<i>to prohibit</i>	dire	187
intervenir	<i>to interpose, to intervene</i>	venir	174
introduire	<i>to introduce</i>	conduire	183
interrompre	<i>to interrupt, to disturb</i>	rompre	194
inscrire	<i>to inscribe</i>	écrire	187
instruire	<i>to instruct</i>	conduire	183

		conjugated like	PAGE
joindre	<i>to join</i>	craindre	185
lire	<i>to read</i>		189
luire	<i>to shine</i>		189
maintenir	<i>to maintain</i>	tenir	174
mentir	<i>to utter falsehoods, to lie</i>	sentir	172
médire (de)	<i>to slander, to speak ill of</i>	dire	187
mettre	<i>to put, to put on</i>		190
moudre	<i>to grind (corn, coffee, etc.)</i>		190
mourir	<i>to die</i>		170
mouvoir	<i>to move</i>		175
naître	<i>to be born, to arise, to spring</i>		191
nuire	<i>to hurt, to injure</i>	conduire	183
offrir	<i>to offer</i>		171
ouvrir	<i>to open</i>		171
omettre	<i>to omit</i>	mettre	190
parcourir	<i>to run over</i>	courir	168
partir	<i>to start, to go, to depart, to set out</i>		172
paraître	<i>to look, to appear</i>	connaître	181
peindre	<i>to paint, to describe</i>	craindre	185
permettre (à-de)	<i>to allow, to permit</i>	mettre	190
plaire (à)	<i>to please</i>		192
plaindre	<i>to pity</i>	craindre	185
pouvoir	<i>to be able</i>		176
pourvoir (de)	<i>to provide with</i>		176
poursuivre	<i>to pursue, to prosecute, to go on</i>	suivre	195
prendre	<i>to take</i>		192
prévaloir	<i>to prevail</i>	valoir	178
pressentir	<i>to foresee</i>	sentir	172
prédire	<i>to foretell, to predict</i>	dire	187
prescrire	<i>to prescribe</i>	écrire	187
produire	<i>to produce</i>	conduire	183
proscrire	<i>to proscribe</i>	écrire	187
promettre (à-de)	<i>to promise</i>	mettre	190
promouvoir	<i>to promote</i>	mouvoir	175
rabattre	<i>to reduce, to take off</i>	battre	180
renvoyer	<i>to send back, to dismiss</i>	envoyer	165
requérir	<i>to request, to require</i>	acquérir	165
recueillir	<i>to reap, to collect</i>	cueillir	168
rouvrir	<i>to open again</i>	ouvrir	171
recouvrir	<i>to cover again</i>	ouvrir	171
repartir	<i>to set out again</i>	partir	172

		conjugated like	PAGE
ressentir	<i>to resent, to feel</i>	sentir	172
ressortir	<i>to go out again</i>	sortir	173
retenir	<i>to retain, to detain</i>	tenir	174
revenir	<i>to come back, to return (from)</i>	venir	174
revoir	<i>to see again</i>	voir	179
reconnaître	<i>to recognize, to acknowledge</i>	connaître	181
reparaître	<i>to re-appear</i>	connaître	181
reconduire	<i>to re-conduct</i>	conduire	183
réduire	<i>to reduce</i>	conduire	183
recoudre	<i>to sew again</i>	coudre	184
rejoindre	<i>to rejoin, to overtake</i>	craindre	185
redire	<i>to say again, to tell again</i>	dire	187
refaire	<i>to do or to make again</i>	faire	188
relire	<i>to read again</i>	lire	189
réélire	<i>to re-elect</i>	lire	189
reluire	<i>to shine, to glitter</i>	luire	189
remettre	<i>to put off, to deliver, to remit, to put or set again</i>	mettre	190
renaître	<i>to revive, to spring up again</i>	naître	191
reprendre	<i>to resume, to take back</i>	prendre	192
reproduire	<i>to re-produce</i>	conduire	183
résoudre	<i>to resolve, to solve</i>		193
rire	<i>to laugh</i>		193
rompre	<i>to break, to break off</i>		194
revivre	<i>to revive, to come to life again</i>	vivre	196
satisfaire	<i>to satisfy</i>	faire	188
secourir	<i>to relieve, to succour</i>	courir	168
sentir	<i>to feel, to smell</i>		172
servir	<i>to serve, to help to, to wait (at table)</i>		173
sortir	<i>to go out</i>		173
seoir	<i>to fit well, to become</i>	s'asseoir	177
savoir	<i>to know (if or whether)</i>		178
souffrir	<i>to suffer</i>	offrir	171
souscrire	<i>to subscribe</i>	écrire	187
soumettre	<i>to submit</i>	mettre	190
sourire	<i>to smile</i>	rire	194
surfaire	<i>to ask too much, to exact</i>	faire	188
surprendre	<i>to surprise</i>	prendre	192
suivre	<i>to follow, to attend</i>		195
suffire	<i>to suffice, to be sufficient</i>	confire	184
survivre	<i>to survive</i>	vivre	196
s'abstenir (de)	<i>to abstain</i>	tenir	174
s'asseoir	<i>to sit down</i>		177
se battre	<i>to fight</i>	battre	180
se conduire	<i>to behave</i>	conduire	183
se complaire (à)	<i>to delight in</i>	plaire (à)	192

		conjugated like	PAGE
se débattre	<i>to struggle</i>	battre	180
se dédire	<i>to recant</i>	dire	187
se défaire (de)	<i>to part with, to rid one's self of</i>	faire	188
se demettre	<i>to resign, to put out of joint</i>	mettre	190
s'en aller	<i>to go away</i>	aller	164
s'enquérir	<i>to enquire (seldom used)</i>	acquérir	166
s'endormir	<i>to fall asleep</i>	dormir	169
s'émouvoir	<i>to be moved, to be affected</i>	mouvoir	175
s'ensuivre	<i>to ensue, to result, it follows</i>	suivre	195
se méprendre	<i>to mistake</i>	prendre	192
se plaindre	<i>to complain</i>	craindre	185
se plaire (à)	<i>to delight in, to take delight in</i>	plaire (à)	192
se recueillir	<i>to meditate</i>	cueillir	168
se rendormir	<i>to fall asleep again</i>	dormir	169
se repentir (de)	<i>to repent</i>	sentir	172
se rasseoir	<i>to sit down again</i>	s'asseoir	177
se remettre	<i>to recover one's self, to mend</i>	mettre	190
se résoudre (à)	<i>to come to, to resolve</i>	résoudre	193
se rire (de)	<i>to laugh at, to ridicule</i>	rire	193
se servir (de)	<i>to use, to make use of</i>	servir	173
se servir (de)	<i>to avail one's self of</i>	servir	173
se souvenir (de)	<i>to remember</i>	venir	174
se taire	<i>to be silent, to keep or to hold one's tongue</i>		195
taire	<i>to conceal, to keep secret</i>	se taire	195
tenir	<i>to hold, to keep</i>		174
teindre	<i>to dye, tinge</i>	craindre	185
traduire	<i>to translate</i>	conduire	183
transcrire	<i>to transcribe</i>	écrire	187
transmettre	<i>to transmit</i>	mettre	190
tressaillir	<i>to start up, to start</i>	assaillir	167
valoir	<i>to be worth</i>		178
vaincre	<i>to conquer, to vanquish</i>		196
venir	<i>to come</i>		174
vivre	<i>to live, to be living, to exist</i>		196
voir	<i>to see</i>		179
vouloir	<i>to be willing, to wish</i>		179

EXERCISES ON THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

Aller, envoyer, and renvoyer.

We are going to the theatre this evening, will you go with us? No, I thank you, I am going to Mr. D—'s. When shall we go to Paris together? We shall go to Paris when we can speak French, but not before. My sister goes to school every morning and my brother always goes with her. Where were you going when I met you? I was going to the bank. We go for a walk every day before breakfast when it is fine weather. We were going to church when we met your brother. We went to school yesterday. We shall go to Yarmouth next week. We would go to London if we had money. Let us go to Paris together. We must go for a walk this morning. My father would like us to go to France with him.

I send him some money every week. I used to send them some flowers every morning. I sent you a pretty little book yesterday, did you receive it? I will send you something to-morrow morning. I should send you to Paris if you were a good girl. I should have sent you to Germany if you had not been so ill. You must dismiss your servant and then you will go with me to France.

Offrir, ouvrir, etc.

My uncle offered me a seat in his carriage yesterday. I offer you my friendship, will you accept it? That young gentleman ought to offer you his seat. That young man ought to have offered you his arm. He offered it to me but I could not accept it. If he offers you his arm again I hope you will accept it.

Mary, is the window opened? No madam, it is not opened. Will you open it if you please? Yes madam, I will open it directly. You must open all the windows every morning. I cannot open that box, will you open it for me? Yes, I will open it directly. Bring it to me as soon as it is opened. We have discovered something in that box. You always discover something Sir, but I never can discover anything. When you (shall) have discovered who did that, you will open your box, but you must not open it before. No Sir, I shall not open it before I have discovered who sent it to me.

Partir, servir, etc.

When will you set out for France? I shall set out to-morrow morning. You must not start without me. We shall start together. My brother started yesterday. I should like to start directly. We shall not be able to start to-day. We should start to-day if you could finish that work. We should have started this morning if you had been able to finish that work.

Shall I have the pleasure to help you to a glass of wine? What wine shall I help you to? You have served me faithfully my friend and I will reward you. What grammar do you use? We use Mr. B's grammar now. You ought to have made use of my money my friend. I should have made use of it if I had wanted it. I shall make use of it when I want it. You may use my name if you like; I thank you Sir, I shall certainly use it.

Tenir, venir, etc.

My brother keeps a large establishment in London. We used to keep open house when we lived in Paris. Mr. B. maintains his opinion, you must maintain yours. To whom does this house belong? It belongs to my sister now, but it will soon belong to me I hope. You must abstain from drinking wine, Sir. Can you abstain from smoking? I will abstain from it to please you.

My sister comes here every day. My brother used to come also, but he never comes now. When will you come and see me? I will come as soon as I can. Can your mother come with you? No Sir, she cannot come to-day, but she will come as soon as she can. Is your father come back? No Sir, he is not back yet. Are you coming to-night? No Sir, I shall not come. We should come and see you if you were a good boy. We should have come to see you if you had been a good girl. You must come and see me to-morrow, I should like you to come every day.

Pouvoir.

I cannot read that book, can you read it? My brother can speak French much better than you. You may have my book if you like. You might have had my horse if you had wished. My sister was very ill last night, she could not sing at all. She can sing very well when

she likes. You can come if you like. You could come if you would. You could have come if you had wished. Your brother can do that for me. Your brother could do that for you. Your brother could have done that for us. They may give me something. They might give us something. They might have given you something. I shall not be able to go to London with you. Will you be able to come and see me this evening? My sisters will not be able to go to school this week. Why will they not be able to go to school? Because they cannot leave their mother who is very ill. My cousin may come. My brother might come. My cousin might have come certainly.

Savoir and Connaitre.

Do you know Mr. D.? Do you know whether Mr. D. will come this evening? I know Mr. D. very well, but I do not know whether he will come. If I knew him I would speak to him. If I knew where he lives I would go and see him. If I had known her I would have spoken to her. If we had known (that) she was in Norwich we would have gone to see her. Do you know your lesson my little boy? Not yet madam, but I shall know it before dinner. I did not know your brother before he came here. I did not know (that) your brother was here to-night. When you know him better you will like him. I hope you will like him better when you know how kind he is. I wish you to know my brother. I wish you to know your lesson by heart before three o'clock.

Valoir and voir.

That horse is worth more than two hundred pounds. That large house was not worth much a few years ago, but it is worth a great deal of money now. How much do you think (that) it is worth? I think it is not worth so much now as it will be (worth) next year. Your house would be worth three hundred pounds if it were in a better situation. Your watch is not worth ten shillings. My watch is good for nothing.

Have you seen my brother? No, but I hope (that) I shall soon see him. We see them every day now. We did not see them so often when we were in Paris. We saw them yesterday in London. I think (that) we shall see them next week. We should see them if

they were in Norwich. We should have seen them if they had been in Norwich. You must see my horse, I think you will like it. I cannot see it to-day, but I shall come and see it as soon as I can.

Battre, etc.

Why do you beat that poor little boy? You ought not to beat him so. I used to beat my brother at chess, but he beats me now. I think you will beat him this time. I saw two boys fighting yesterday in the street. They fought very bravely. The French and the English fight like lions. A brave soldier must fight for his country.

Why did you pull down your house? I will cut down that tree. You must not cut down that apple tree. I should have cut it down if I had been in your place. Why would you have cut it down? Because I think it is too old. The artillery beat down the walls of the fortress. These walls will soon be pulled down I hope. They must be pulled down before next week. As soon as your house is pulled down I shall build another one larger. I shall not begin to pull it down before the winter is over. You are quite right, Sir.

Boire, connaître, etc.

I drink a glass of fresh water every morning. My brother drinks water. We do not drink any beer, we only drink water. We used to drink two glasses of wine every day, but we do not drink any now. I am very thirsty, give me something to drink. You must not drink so much water when you are so warm. What have you been drinking? I have been drinking some water.

Are you acquainted with that gentleman? Yes Sir, I am acquainted with him. Will you be able to recognize him? Yes, madam, I shall recognize him everywhere. You look very ill to-day. I do not look so ill as you. She looks very beautiful this evening. She always looks beautiful. As soon as your cousin appeared my brother disappeared. My cousin re-appeared as soon as your brother had disappeared. You must not appear in public yet, you still look too ill. I shall appear in public as soon as I am strong enough.

Coudre and croire.

That woman sews very well, but her sister cannot sew at all. She used to sew better than you when she was young, but she is not able

to sew now. That piece is unsewed, you must sew it again. I shall sew it as soon as I have finished my breakfast.

I believe that man to be very clever, but I do not believe all (what) he says. Do you believe him Sir? Yes, I do (believe him). I always tell you the truth, but you will not believe me. You may believe her for she tells you the truth. I did not believe him before, but I believe him now. We will believe you if you are sincere. We would have believed you if you had been sincere. Believe me Sir, we shall succeed. Let us believe what he says, for he appears to speak the truth. I did believe you when you said that, but I cannot believe you now. Why will you not believe what I say? Well, I believe you now.

Dire, etc.

Do you know what he says? He says (that) you ought to go to Paris. He did not say that, did he? Will you tell him to come here to-night. Yes, I will tell him. Do you think [that] he will come if you tell him to come? Do you think he would come if you told him to come? Do you wish me to tell him that you wish him to come? Tell him what you like, but do not tell him that I wish to see him. Mary, tell the servant to clean the window? I told her this morning, madam. What did you tell her to do? I told her to make haste to clean the windows. What do you say? What did you say? What will you say? What can they say? They may say what they like I do not trouble. You contradict yourself Sir, you said—tell them to come here, and so I told them to come. You must not slander anybody, for if you slander I shall never speak to you any more. We never slander any body, and we do not like slanderers. No more do I.

Ecrire, etc.

You write very badly my friend, you used to write better than that, did you not? Yes, Sir, I used to write much better, but I cannot write so well now. To whom were you writing when I came? I was writing to my little sister who is in London. When will you write to your brother who lives in Paris? I shall write to him this afternoon. If you write to him will you tell him that I wish to be kindly remembered to him? Yes Sir, I will (tell him so). I would write to him if I knew where he is. I should have written to you if I had known where you were. You must write to me twice a week. I shall write to you as often as I can. Can you describe the house

in which you live? I shall describe it to you if you wish it, but my brother can describe it much better than I. I wish you to describe it yourself. Very well Sir, I shall describe it as well as I can.

Faire, etc.

We do all [that which] we can [for] to please you, but we cannot succeed. What have you been doing this morning? I have done what you told me to do. Why do you make so much noise my little boy? If you make so much noise I will send you away. I shall not make any noise if you will allow me to remain with you. Why do you undo what I have done? Can you undo that for me? If you undo it you must do it again. We will satisfy you as well as we can. If (for) to satisfy you we must part with our dog, we shall part with it willingly. Do not part with it before I see you again. What are you doing here my little girl? I am making a dress for my doll, sir. If you make her a dress you must make her a bonnet also. Yes sir, and I shall make her a pair of shoes too if I can. Do you think (that) you can make me speak French? Yes, my dear, I can make you speak, read, and write French very well.

Craindre, etc.

I fear God, but I do not fear you. We dread his presence. We fear him very much. Do you not fear the consequences? No sir, I do not fear them. Do you not pity that poor man? We pity him for he is really to be pitied. He is to be pitied, but he never complains. What do you complain of? I complain of you, sir. Why do you complain of me? I complain of you because you have joined their party without my consent. Do you paint, miss? No sir, I do not. I wish I could paint as well as my sister. So do I sir. Mary, put out the fire before you go to bed. I always put it out before I go to bed. James, is the candle out? No sir, it is not out. Put it out directly. Yes sir, I will put it out. That man is always complaining. What does he complain of? I do not know, but I think he would not complain if you gave him what he wants. I will give him all I can, and then I hope he will not complain any more.

Lire, etc,

What book are you reading now? I am reading a very interesting book. We do not read so much now as we used to read when we

were in London. My brother reads for an hour every morning. I read something very extraordinary last week in a Paris newspaper. Have you read my letter? Not yet sir, but I will read it directly after breakfast. I should have read it before but I was prevented. If you have not read this book I advise you to read it, for it is very interesting. I thank you sir, I shall read it as soon as I can. You must not read it hastily, you must read it leisurely. I wish you to read this letter, and as soon as you have read it you will return it to me. I should like you to read this book. I thank you, I think I have read it.

Who has been elected? Who will be elected? We shall elect the most worthy. If we elect Mr. B. we must elect Mr. C. also. Mr. D. has been re-elected and Mr. E. expects to be re-elected also.

Mettre, etc.

We put our trust in God. When I was a little boy I was not allowed to play with my companions. Mary, what dress will you put on this evening? I shall put on my new white dress. If you put that bonnet on I shall not go with you. What bonnet do you wish me to put on? Put on your black velvet bonnet. Will you allow me to help you to a glass of wine? I do not admit that principle. Must we admit that man in our society? You may admit him if you like? You might have admitted him last night. Do you put your money in the bank? Have you put your money in the bank? Do not compromise me. No sir, I shall not compromise you, you may be sure of it. But you might compromise me without knowing it. You might have compromised us without knowing it. Do not be afraid sir, we shall not compromise you. What crime has that man committed? He has committed no crime sir. He would not commit a bad action for anything in the world.

Moudre, émoudre, and naitre.

We grind our coffee ourselves now. We used to grind our coffee every morning, but we do not grind it so frequently now. Who grinds your corn? you do not grind it yourself I suppose. No sir, we cannot grind it ourselves. Mary, is the coffee ground yet? No madam, but I will grind it directly. Make me a cup of coffee as soon as it is ground. How much shall I grind (of it) madam? You must not grind (of it) more than half a pound. Will you grind my scissors if you please? I must have my razors ground, they do not

cut at all. I will grind them for you if you like. I thank you sir, I am very much obliged to you.

Remember my friend that health springs from labour, that from health springs contentment, and that contentment is the source of every joy and of every pleasure. Napoléon Bonaparte was born at Ajaccio, in Corsica, on the 15th of August, in the year 1769. They were born the same day. Napoléon and Wellington were born the same year.

Conduire, etc.

You conduct your affairs very cleverly sir. I conduct them as well as I can. My brother used to conduct his business himself, but he does not conduct it now. Your cousin conducted the ladies to the drawing-room last night, and he behaved very well indeed. My cousin always behaves very well sir. I am very glad of it. I hope you will behave like a gentleman. I never behave differently sir. He would behave very well if he were well trained. She would have behaved very well if she had been well trained. Behave well my dear boy, everybody will respect you, but if you do not behave properly nobody will respect you. Your father wishes you to behave as you have always behaved, that is to say, like a gentleman. I hope I never shall behave otherwise sir. That is right my boy. Have you seen the pretty little girl of whom we are speaking? How well she behaved last night. Yes mamma, I have seen her, and I hope I can behave quite as well as she. I think you ought to behave quite as well as anybody. I think you ought to have behaved as well as your brother.

Prendre, etc.

What will you take Sir? I will take a glass of wine if you please. Which wine will you take? I will take a glass of port. Do you learn French? No Sir, I learn music. Why do you not learn French? I shall learn it next year. You ought to begin to learn it now. I should like very much to learn it, but my father does not wish me to learn it yet. We learn our lessons every morning before breakfast. We used to learn a piece of poetry by heart every week, but now we have so many things to learn that we cannot think of learning poetry. What are you learning now? We are learning history, geography, astronomy, and many other things. Can you understand what I say? I can understand you perfectly well Sir.

My brother does not understand half what you say. Your brother undertakes too many things in a day Sir. You must undertake to make him understand that my friend. As soon as you have learnt your lesson we will resume our walk, and you will tell me what you wish to undertake. Let us resume our conversation now if you please.

Rire, rompre, etc.

Why do you laugh so? I laugh because you make me laugh. If you laugh again I will send you out of the room. Forgive me Sir, I shall not laugh any more. I will forgive you if you promise me not to laugh another time. Do not make me laugh so my boy. Who makes you laugh? What makes you laugh? Why do you smile when I speak to you? Your sister is always smiling. She used to smile when I spoke to her, but she does not smile now. I hope she will smile again. So do I, madam.

You will break this chain if you pull so hard. Do not interrupt me when I speak. You always interrupt us my little boy. I will not allow you to interrupt those gentlemen. If you do interrupt us again I will send you away. Allow me to stay here sir, I shall not interrupt you any more.

Suffire and suivre.

I will give you twenty francs, will that be sufficient. No sir, that will not be sufficient for me, for I think that twice that sum would not be sufficient (for) to pay all the expense. It is not sufficient to be generous, you must be just before you exercise your generosity. I act according to the dictates of my conscience and that is sufficient for me.

Why do you not follow the advice of your father? I will follow it for it is a good advice. Always follow the advice of sensible people my young man. I will follow you wherever you go my friend. We follow the principles of justice. I went yesterday for a long walk, and your little dog followed me wherever I went. Does he always follow you when you go out? He will follow me if I go out. He would follow me if I did go out. He would have followed me if I had gone out.

Se taire, vaincre, and vivre.

Hold your tongue my little boy. If you do not hold your tongue I will send you to play in the garden. I shall hold my tongue if you

will let me stay here with you. You may stay with me if you will hold your tongue.

I am convinced (that) my cousin will come to-night. We are convinced they are still living. If they are still living they will write to us. You cannot convince me of that sir. I wish I could convince you. I will try to conquer all the difficulties. Are you convinced now ladies? If you are not quite convinced I will do all (that which) I can (for) to convince you. I shall not be satisfied till you are convinced (that) I tell you the truth. You have great difficulties to conquer before you can convince us.

OF PARTICIPLES.

The *participle* is so called because it partakes of or participates in the nature of the *verb* and of the *adjective*; of the *verb* when it expresses an *action*; of the adjective when it expresses a *quality* or a *state of being*.

There are two sorts of participles: the *participle présent* et le *participle passé*.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

The *participle présent* expresses an action; it is invariable (*ant ing*) and cannot be used in French after any preposition, except *en* (which corresponds to the English preposition *by*): After any other preposition we use the infinitive instead of the present participle.

EXAMPLES.

je suis fatigué de lire (not lisant)	<i>I am tired of reading (to read)</i>
nous sommes fatigués de nous promener	<i>we are tired of walking (to walk)</i>
êtes-vous fatiguée de travailler	<i>are you tired of working? (to work)</i>
avez-vous fini de pleurer?	<i>have you finished crying? (to cry)</i>
nous avons fini de jouer	<i>we have done playing? (to play)</i>
je vins après avoir fini mon ouvrage	<i>I came after having finished my work</i>

après avoir appris mes leçons	after having learnt my lessons
je suis venu sans avoir lu votre lettre	I came without having read your letter
il partit sans pouvoir nous payer	he set out without being able to pay us
vous vous enrichirez en travaillant	you will enrich yourself by working
il se ruinera en jouant	he will ruin himself by gambling
mon frère s'est ruiné en négligeant ses affaires	my brother has ruined himself by neglecting his business
en se promenant	by walking
en étudiant on fait des progrès	by studying we improve ourselves
en buvant on se ruine	by drinking, one ruins one's self
en travaillant on s'enrichit	by working we enrich ourselves
en persévérant on réussit	by persevering one succeeds

The present *participle* (ant) becomes an adjective when it expresses a quality, then it is *variable*, that is to say, it must agree in gender and number with the noun which it qualifies.

EXAMPLES.

ces enfants sont charmants	these children are charming
ces roses sont charmantes	these roses are charming
ce garçon est très-obligéant	that boy is very obliging
cette fille est très-obligeante	that girl is very obliging
ces hommes sont surprenants	those men are surprising
ces femmes sont surprenantes	these women are surprising
{ des enfants intéressants	{ some interesting children
{ lisant des histoires intéressantes	{ reading interesting histories

EXERCISE.

Have you finished reading that pretty little book? Come and
 lire m venez
 speak to me when you have finished writing your letter. That man
 écrire t
 is tired of working for you sir. When shall we have the pleasure of
 travailler
 seeing you madam? I shall come as soon as I have finished cleaning
 voir nettoyer
 my house. Have you done crying, Miss? My brother went for a
 t fini de pleurer faire

walk after having learnt his lessons. Why did you come without
 having been invited? I should not like to go to Paris without having
 learnt French before. No more should I. You will learn French by
 reading and translating it. Yes, but I should learn better and
 quicker by taking lessons of a French master, and particularly by
 frequently conversing in French with him. I think so too. So do I
 Sir. I have seen some interesting children learning their lessons by
 heart and pleasing their masters by studying attentively.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

The *participe passé* is sometimes variable and sometimes invariable.

1st. The *past participle* is variable when it is used without any auxiliary, it is then considered as an *adjective*, that is to say, must agree in gender and number with the noun or the pronoun to which it refers.

EXAMPLES.

les récompenses accordées au mérite sont les plus hono- rables	<i>rewards given to merit are the most honorable</i>
combien de vies perdues dans cette sanglante bataille	<i>how many lives lost in that bloody battle!</i>
qu'elle est belle cette nature cultivée!	<i>how beautiful this cultivated nature is!</i>
comme elle est brillante et pompeusement parée	<i>how brilliant it is, and how beautifully adorned!</i>
que de trésors ignorés! les fleurs, les fruits perfection- nés	<i>how many unknown treasures flowers, fruits, perfected</i>
cette dame frappée de cette nouvelle tomba évanouie dans les bras de son fils	<i>this lady struck with that news fell fainting in the arms of her son</i>

les soldats <i>revenus</i> de la	<i>the soldiers returned from the</i>
Crimée recevront une	<i>Crimea shall receive a</i>
médaille d'honneur	<i>medal of honour</i>

2nd. The *past participle* is variable when it is used with the auxiliary verb to be, *être*, it must then agree with the nominative of that verb.

EXAMPLES.

mes livres sont <i>perdus</i>	<i>my books are lost</i>
mes lettres sont <i>brûlées</i>	<i>my letters are burnt</i>
les remparts sont <i>détruits</i>	<i>the ramparts are destroyed</i>
les Russes ont été <i>vaincus</i>	<i>the Russians have been van-</i>
	<i>quished</i>
la guerre est <i>terminée</i>	<i>the war is over</i>
la paix est <i>rétablie</i>	<i>peace is restored</i>
les roses sont <i>fleuries</i>	<i>the roses are in bloom</i>
cette maison est bien <i>bâtie</i>	<i>this house is well built</i>
ces maisons sont bien <i>bâties</i>	<i>these houses are well built</i>
ce garçon a été <i>puni</i>	<i>this boy has been punished</i>
ces garçons ont été <i>punis</i>	<i>these boys have been punished</i>
cette fille sera <i>récompensée</i>	<i>that girl will be rewarded</i>
ces filles seront <i>récompensées</i>	<i>those girls will be rewarded</i>
tout le vin est <i>bu</i>	<i>all the wine is drunk</i>
toute la viande est <i>mangée</i>	<i>all the meat is eaten</i>
tous les hommes sont <i>partis</i>	<i>all the men are gone</i>
toutes les femmes sont <i>parties</i>	<i>all the women are gone</i>

3rd. The *past participle*, used with the auxiliary verb to have, *avoir*, presents some difficulties, but the pupil may easily overcome them if he will take the trouble to learn the following rules :—

1st. The past participle of an active verb has *nothing to do with the nominative*, that is to say, cannot refer to the *nominative* of the verb.

2nd. The past participle of an active verb, can only refer to the *objective*, (*régime direct* or *indirect*, see page 81,) and the *régime direct* alone has influence over the past participle, so if there is no *régime direct*, it is evident that the past participle cannot agree with it. Now the

only difficulty is to find this *régime direct*, the pupil must therefore learn how to find it, and when he has found it, he must observe the place it occupies in the sentence, for it is that very place (of the *régime direct*,) which causes the past participle to agree or to remain invariable.

So then, the past participle of an active verb used with the auxiliary verb to have, *avoir*, is *variable* or *invariable*.

1st. It is *invariable* (does not agree) when it is put *before* the *régime direct*, (that is the noun or the pronoun to which it refers).

EXAMPLES.

j'ai perdu mes livres	<i>I have lost my books</i>
j'ai écrit une lettre	<i>I have written a letter</i>
elle a appris ses leçons	<i>she has learnt her lessons</i>
nous avons acheté deux maisons	<i>we have bought two houses</i>
ma sœur a déchiré sa robe	<i>my sister has torn her dress</i>
avez-vous lu mes lettres?	<i>have you read my letters?</i>
votre frère a-t-il vu mes chevaux?	<i>has your brother seen my horses</i>
vos sœurs ont-elles cueilli des fleurs?	<i>have your sisters gathered some flowers?</i>

2nd. The past participle of an active verb is variable (agrees) when it is placed *after* the *régime direct*, (the noun or the pronoun to which it refers,) then it agrees in gender and number with that *régime direct*.

EXAMPLES.

les livres que j'ai perdus	<i>the books (that) I have lost</i>
la lettre que j'ai écrite	<i>the letter (that) I have written</i>
les leçons qu'elle a apprises	<i>the lessons she has learnt</i>
les deux maisons que nous avons achetées	<i>the two houses we have bought</i>
la robe que ma sœur a déchirée	<i>the dress that my sister has torn</i>
les lettres que vous avez lues	<i>the letters (which) you have read</i>
les chevaux que votre frère a vendus	<i>the horses which your brother has sold</i>
je ne les ai pas vus	<i>I have not seen them</i>

Obs. When the *régime* is *indirect*, that is when the objective (noun or pronoun) is used with a preposition (see page 82,) the past participle must remain invariable, as it cannot agree with anything but the *régime direct*.

EXAMPLES.

nous leur avons <i>parlé</i>	<i>we have spoken to them</i>
ils nous ont <i>écrit</i>	<i>they have written to us</i>
nous leur avons <i>répondu</i>	<i>we did answer (to) them</i>
votre sœur a de très belles fleurs	<i>your sister has some fine flowers</i>
elle nous en a <i>donné</i>	<i>she has given us some (of them)</i>
vous en a-t-elle <i>donné</i> aussi ?	<i>did she give you some also ?</i>
non elle ne m'en a pas <i>donné</i>	<i>no, she did not give me any (of them)</i>
elle me l'a dit ce matin	<i>she told me so this morning</i>

RECAPITULATORY LESSON ON THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

1st. Used without any *auxiliary* the past participle agrees with the noun or pronoun to which it refers.

2nd. Used with the auxiliary verb *to be* the past participle agrees with the nominative of that verb.

3rd. Used with the auxiliary verb *to have* the past participle refers only to the objective (*régime direct*), then it agrees or does not agree, that depends on the place it occupies.

It does not agree when it comes *before* the *régime direct*.

It agrees when it goes *after* the *régime direct*.

EXAMPLES.

1st. Ces peuples *accoutumés* à la molesse, *nourris* dans l'oisiveté, *découragés*, *abattus*, traînent une vie qui leur est à charge.

These four past participles being used without any auxiliary verb are considered as adjectives, that is to say, must agree with the word *peuples* to which they both refer.

2nd. Ces malheureux enfants sont *sortis* de la situation affreuse où ils étaient *tombés*.

The two participles *sortis* and *tombés* being used with the auxiliary verb *to be* must agree with the nominative of that verb (*ces malheureux enfants.*)

3rd. *Mes cousins m'ont envoyé des fruits que j'ai trouvés délicieux.*

The past participle *envoyé* does not agree because it comes before the régime direct. (*envoyé quoi? des fruits*)

The past participle *trouvés* agrees with the régime direct because it goes after that régime (*trouvés quoi délicieux? les fruits.*) *Nous avons vu ces dames et leur avons demandé des nouvelles de leur voyage.*

The past participle *vu* does not agree because it comes before the régime direct (*vu qui? ces dames*).

The past participle *demandé* does not agree because it comes before the régime direct. (*demandé quoi? des nouvelles de leur voyage.*) *Nous avons voyagé. Nous avons dormi.* (*Voyagé quoi? dormi quoi?*) as there is no régime direct the past participle cannot agree.

Les lettres que j'ai écrites ont été brûlées.

I have written what? the letters. What have been burnt? the letters. *Written* agrees with *letters* because *written* goes after letters. *Burnt* agrees with the nominative of the verb (*have been,*) which nominative is *letters*, because burnt follows the verb *to be*.

Avez-vous lu mes lettres? (lu quoi? lettres, does not agree—Why?) Oui je les ai lues. (lues quoi? lettres, agrees—Why?)

EXERCISE.

Men disappear like flowers, which, blown in the morning, are
disparaître *épanouir*
 withered in the evening and trampled under foot. I have seen beau-
fêtrir *fouler aux pieds*
 tiful hills covered with vines and fruits. Houses built on sand can-
colline f. couvert de vignes *sable*
 not be solidly built. Men taught by experience ought to be well
solidement *instruit*
 taught. We are always rewarded by our conscience when we have
récompenser

done a good ^{_____ f} action. Good girls are always rewarded, but naughty boys ^{toujours} are always punished. The heart of an ungrateful man is like a ^{cœur m} desert which drinks with avidity the rain fallen from heaven, it ^{ingrat} engulfs it and produces nothing. My brother has lost his books. The ^{comme} books which my brother has lost have been found. My sister has ^{_____ m} burnt three of my letters. The three letters that my sister has burnt. ^{boire} Have you seen my house? Yes, I have seen it. Have you read my ^{pluie tomber} letters? No, I have not read them. We have seen your sisters and ^{ciel m} we have spoken to them. They have written to us. The letter ^{engloutir} that ^{produire} they have written to us have been sent to Paris. ^{perdre} ^{livre m} ^m ^{trouver} ^{brûler} ^f ^f ^{ou} ^f ^{lire} ^{ou} ^{écrire} ^f ^{envoyer}

OF ADVERBS.*

The adverb is so called because it generally accompanies a verb; it is an indeclinable word.

The adverbs mark the manner, the time, the place, the order, the quantity, the comparison, the affirmation and the negation.

ADVERBS OF MANNER.

sagement	wisely	fort bien	} very well, right
poliment	politely	très bien	
lentement	slowly	fort mal	} very wrong, badly
tout-à-fait	quite	très mal	
vite	quickly, quick,	à regret	} reluctantly, with
	fast	à contre cœur	
prudemment	prudently	de bonne vo-	} very willingly
méchamment	wickedly	lonté	
bien	well, right	de bon cœur	
mal	wrong, bad, badly	volontiers	willingly

* The adverb cannot in French be put between the nominative and the verb, it must always be put after the verb. So instead of saying (as in English) he seldom goes to — say (in French) he goes seldom.

au hasard	} <i>at random</i>	à pied	<i>on foot, walking</i>
à tort et à travers		à cheval	<i>on horse-back, riding</i>
par hasard	<i>by chance</i>		
au pis aller	<i>let the worst come to the worst</i>	en voiture	{ <i>riding, driving</i> } <i>in a carriage</i>
de manière à..	<i>so as to..</i>	en bateau	<i>in a boat</i>
de toutes les manières	<i>any way</i>	pour rire	<i>in a joke</i>
sous tous les rapports	<i>in every respect</i>	pour badiner	<i>in a jest</i>
sous le rapport de	<i>with respect to</i>	exprès	<i>on purpose, purposely</i>
à l'égard de	<i>with regard to</i>	de mieux en mieux	<i>better and better</i>
sans avoir égard à	<i>without regard to</i>	de pis en pis	<i>worse and worse</i>
sous ce rapport	<i>in that respect</i>	à peine	<i>scarcely, hardly</i>
à cet égard	<i>in this respect</i>	presque	<i>almost, nearly</i>
sans façon	} <i>without ceremony</i>	à peu près	<i>nearly, almost</i>
sans cérémonie		environ	<i>about</i>
		sans faute	<i>without fail</i>

EXERCISE.

She has acted very wisely. He politely told me to go out. We learn very slowly but we learn very well. I am quite out of breath, because I came too fast. You must act prudently in that affair. That book is very well written, but it is very badly bound. He came here reluctantly because you always speak at random. I shall go for a walk with you very willingly. Have you by chance found the books that I have lost? Come and see me to-morrow without fail. This man is very clever in every respect. I am satisfied in that respect. I shall come walking, my brother will come riding (on horse back,) and my sister will come driving. I shall go to London purposely (for) to see you. My brother speaks better and better, but you write worse and worse. I had scarcely finished my dinner when your cousin came in. We had nearly finished our work when your sister called us. We have earned about ten shillings.

ADVERBS OF TIME.

FOR THE PRESENT.

<i>maintenant</i>	<i>now</i>	<i>dès aujourd'hui</i>	} <i>this very day</i>
<i>à présent</i>	<i>at present, now</i>	<i>aujourd'hui</i>	
<i>à cette heure</i>	<i>at this time, by this time</i>	<i>même</i>	
<i>sur le champ</i>	<i>immediately</i>	<i>ce matin</i>	<i>this morning</i>
<i>tout-de-suite</i>	<i>directly</i>	<i>ce soir</i>	<i>this evening, to-night</i>
<i>à l'instant</i>	<i>instantly</i>	<i>cette après midi</i>	<i>this afternoon</i>
<i>à l'instant même</i>	<i>this very instant</i>	<i>tout-à-l'heure</i>	<i>just now, this instant</i>
<i>aujourd'hui</i>	<i>to-day</i>		

EXERCISE.

My brother is much better now. I hope he is home by this time. Come here directly, I want to speak to you. My father will buy a horse to-day. We shall set out for France this very day. I (have) heard you sing this morning. Will you go for a walk with me this afternoon? Shall we have the pleasure of seeing (to see) you this evening? We are learning French now, and we shall begin to learn music this very day. How are you this morning? Are you better to-night? Yes I thank you I am much better now. What are you going to do? I am going to take a walk directly.

FOR THE PAST

<i>hier</i>	<i>yesterday</i>	<i>le mois dernier</i>	<i>last month</i>
<i>hier matin</i>	<i>yesterday morning</i>	<i>l'année dernière</i>	<i>last year</i>
<i>hier après midi</i>	<i>yesterday afternoon</i>	<i>il y a huit jours</i>	<i>a week ago, or a week since</i>
<i>hier soir</i>	<i>last night, last evening, yesterday evening</i>	<i>il y a quinze jours</i>	<i>a fortnight ago or since</i>
<i>avant hier</i>	<i>the day before yesterday</i>	<i>il y a un mois</i>	<i>a month ago or since</i>
<i>la veille</i>	<i>the eve, the day before</i>	<i>il y a un an</i>	<i>a year ago or since</i>
<i>le jour précédent</i>	<i>the preceding day</i>	<i>il y a vingt ans</i>	<i>twenty years ago or since</i>
<i>l'autre jour</i>	<i>the other day</i>	<i>il y a quelque temps</i>	<i>some time ago or since</i>
<i>la dernière fois</i>	<i>the last time</i>	<i>il y a long temps</i>	<i>a long time ago or since</i>
<i>la semaine dernière</i>	<i>last week</i>	<i>il y a quelques jours</i>	<i>a few days ago or since</i>

il n'y a pas long	<i>not long ago or</i>	il y eut Lundi	<i>last Monday</i>
temps	<i>since</i>	quinze jours	<i>fortnight</i>
il y a très long	<i>very long time</i>	autrefois	<i>formerly</i>
temps	<i>ago or since</i>	depuis peu	<i>lately, of late</i>
il n'y a pas très-	<i>not very long</i>	auparavant	<i>before</i>
long-temps	<i>time ago or since</i>	récemment	<i>recently</i>
il y a aujourd'-	<i>this day week</i>	tout récemment	<i>very lately</i>
hui huit jours	<i>(past)</i>	il n'y a qu'un	} <i>just now</i>
il y a aujourd'-	<i>this day fort-</i>	moment	
hui quinze	<i>night (past)</i>	tout-à-l'heure	
jours		dernièrement	<i>lately</i>
il y eut hier	<i>yesterday week</i>	la nuit dernière	<i>last night (dur-</i>
jours			<i>ing the night)</i>
il y eut hier	<i>yesterday fort-</i>		
quinze jours	<i>night</i>		

EXERCISE.

I saw your brother yesterday in London. Your sister came here yesterday afternoon. We met your cousin the day before yesterday. I met your friend Mr. B. the other day. The last time (that) I saw you I was very ill. We went to Yarmouth last week. Your brother went to Paris last year, did he not? I met him a week ago in London. I beg your pardon sir, it is a fortnight ago. That man was very rich ten years ago. I saw him here some time ago. We met him yesterday week. He was here yesterday fortnight. My brother and sister went to London last Thursday week. There was a great concert last Wednesday fortnight, did you go? No, I have not been able to go out lately. Mr. N—'s ball took place a few days ago, was your brother there? No sir, he was not. My sister was very ill a week ago,*but she is very well now. I saw her not long ago, I think (that) it was last Friday week. Where were you last Sunday fortnight? Where was your sister yesterday week? She was at home, sir.

FOR THE TIME TO COME.

demain	<i>to-morrow</i>	après demain	<i>the day after to-</i>
demain matin	<i>to-morrow morn-</i>		<i>morrow</i>
	<i>ing</i>	le lendemain	<i>the next day</i>
demain après	<i>to-morrow after-</i>	le jour suivant	<i>the following day</i>
midi	<i>noon</i>	la semaine pro-	<i>next week</i>
demain soir	<i>to-morrow even-</i>	chaine	
	<i>ing</i>	le mois prochain	<i>next month</i>

l'année prochaine	<i>next year</i>	dans une quin-	<i>in a fortnight</i>
d'aujourd'hui	<i>this day week (to</i>	zaine	
en huit	<i>come)</i>	dans un mois	<i>in a month</i>
d'aujourd'hui	<i>this day fort-</i>	dans un an	<i>in a year</i>
en quinze	<i>night (to come)</i>	dans peu	<i>shortly, in a</i>
de demain en	<i>to-morrow week</i>		<i>short time</i>
huit		dorénavant	} <i>henceforth</i>
de Mardi en	<i>next Tuesday</i>	désormais	
huit	<i>week</i>	à l'avenir	<i>for the future</i>
de demain en	<i>to-morrow fort-</i>	avant qu'il soit	<i>before long</i>
quinze	<i>night</i>	long temps	
de Jeudi en	<i>next Thursday</i>	tout-à-l'heure	<i>directly, by & by</i>
quinze	<i>fortnight</i>	tout-de-suite	<i>directly, immedi-</i>
dans huit jours	<i>in a week</i>		<i>ately</i>

EXERCISE.

Will you go for a walk with me to-morrow morning? Not to-morrow, but the day after to-morrow if you like. We shall have a ball next week in Norwich, will you go. No, I shall not be able to go next week. My cousin will go to France next year, and I shall go with him. We shall have an evening party this day week, shall we have the pleasure of seeing (to see) you (there)? I shall not be able to see you this day week, but next Monday fortnight I shall be at home, and if you will come and see me I shall receive you with pleasure. The great ball will take place next Tuesday week, will you go with us? I shall study a little more for the future, for I shall go to France before long, and I must be able to speak French. Wait for me here a little while, I shall come back directly. Do not be long pray, for I must go in a short time.

FOR TIME IN GENERAL.

premièrement	<i>first</i>	très tard	<i>very late</i>
d'abord	<i>first, at first</i>	trop tard	<i>too late</i>
ensuite	} <i>then, after-</i>	plus tard	<i>later, by and by</i>
puis		au plus tard	<i>at the latest</i>
alors	<i>then, at that time</i>	tôt ou tard	<i>sooner or later,</i>
aussitôt que	} <i>as soon as</i>		<i>by and by</i>
dès que		tantôt	<i>by and by, some-</i>
bientôt	<i>soon, very soon</i>		<i>times (some-</i>
trop tôt	<i>too soon</i>		<i>times he reads</i>
plus tôt	<i>sooner</i>		<i>sometimes he</i>
tard	<i>late</i>		<i>writes)</i>
en retard	<i>late (to be late)</i>	quelquefois	<i>sometimes</i>

souvent	<i>often</i>
plus souvent	<i>oftener</i>
rarement	<i>seldom</i>
jamais	<i>never, ever</i>
à jamais	<i>for ever</i>
presque jamais	<i>scarcely ever</i>
plus que jamais	<i>more than ever</i>
toujours	<i>always</i>
pour toujours	<i>for ever, for ever and ever</i>
depuis	<i>since</i>
depuis ce temps-là	<i>ever since, since that time</i>
à toute heure	} <i>every moment</i>
à tout moment	
dès lors	<i>from that time</i>
soudain	<i>on a sudden, suddenly</i>
au plus vite	<i>with all speed</i>
de bonne heure	<i>early</i>
de bon matin	} <i>early in the morning</i>
de grand matin	
continuellement	<i>continually</i>
sans cesse	<i>incessantly</i>
cependant	<i>in the meanwhile, however</i>
pendant que	} <i>whilst, while</i>
tandis que	
comme à l'ordinaire	<i>as usual</i>
la plupart du temps	<i>most times, generally</i>
la majeure partie du temps	<i>most times, commonly, generally</i>
la plupart de	<i>most (greatest part of)</i>
la majeure partie de . . .	<i>most part of, greater part of</i>

en partie	<i>partly</i>
en plein jour	} <i>at noon-day, at broad noon, in broad daylight</i>
en plein midi	
de temps en temps	<i>from time to time now and then</i>
en même temps	<i>at the same time</i>
peu de temps après	<i>shortly after</i>
pas encore	<i>not yet</i>
pas tout-à-fait	<i>not quite</i>
de nouveau	<i>anew</i>
de jour en jour	<i>from day to day</i>
au premier jour	} <i>with the first opportunity</i>
à la première occasion	
fort à propos	<i>very seasonably</i>
enfin	<i>at last</i>
à la fin	<i>at the end</i>
tous les jours	<i>every day</i>
tous les deux jours	<i>every other day</i>
toute la journée	<i>the whole day, all day long</i>
tous les matins	<i>every morning</i>
toute la matinée	<i>the whole morning</i>
tous les soirs	<i>every evening</i>
toute la soirée	<i>the whole evening</i>
toutes les semaines	<i>every week</i>
toute la semaine	<i>the whole week</i>
tous les ans	<i>every year</i>
toute l'année	<i>the whole year</i>
tout d'un coup	<i>all at once</i>
tout-à-coup	<i>suddenly</i>
tout-à-fait	<i>quite, entirely, altogether</i>

EXERCISE.

Learn your lessons first and then you shall play. We shall go to Paris first, and afterwards we shall go to Berlin. That little girl cries, then she laughs, and then she cries again. I could not believe it at first, but afterwards I was obliged to believe it. As soon as he had learnt his lesson he went for a walk. We came here as soon as we had received your letter. We shall soon have finished our breakfast. Is it not too soon to go to bed? No sir, it is not too soon. Why did you not come sooner? I came as soon as I could. Had you come a little sooner you would have heard Miss D. sing. I would have come much sooner if I had been able. It is late, we must go directly. We shall be late if we do not start directly. I hope we shall not be too late. We must be in London by eight o'clock at the latest.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE.

We shall succeed sooner or later if we persevere. I shall come and see you by and by, if you are a good girl. Sometimes he cries, sometimes he laughs. Do you sometimes go to the theatre? Sometimes, but not often. My brother goes to the theatre oftener than I. We often go to the concert, but very seldom to the ball. That boy never goes to school without crying. That girl scarcely ever goes to church, she always says she is ill. If you come this evening, come early if you please. My father used to rise very early in the morning, but he does not rise so early now. Study, my young friend, whilst you are young. Let us be industrious whilst we are in good health. Your brother came here yesterday, but very late as usual. We shall come to-morrow evening as usual. My sister wishes to learn French whilst she has the opportunity. She ought to have begun to take lessons two or three years ago. Yes! certainly.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE.

I have been robbed in broad daylight. I have partly recovered the money I had lost. Your brother comes here now and then. He goes to London from time to time. My cousin was wounded at the battle of the Alma, and he died shortly after. We have not quite finished yet, wait a little longer. We expect my brother from day to day. You come very seasonably, sir. At last we are at the end of our journey. My brother comes here every day. We go for a walk every other day. It has been raining the whole day. We breakfast every morning at half-past eight. I have studied the whole morning. She goes to my sister's every evening. She has been crying the whole evening. We go to London every week. We will stay here the whole week. My cousin goes to Paris every year. We stayed in Paris the whole year.

ADVERBS OF PLACE AND ORDER.

où ?	where ?	tout près d'ici	just by, close by
quelque part	somewhere	de côté	by, aside
nulle part	nowhere, not any where	des deux côtés de part et d' autre	} on both sides
partout	everywhere	de tout côté	
partout où	wherever	de tous les côtés	} on every side, on all sides
ailleurs	elsewhere, some- where else	de toutes parts	
d'où	whence, where from	droit	straight
par où	which way	à droite	on the right
ici	here	à gauche	on the left
d'ici	from here, hence	à main droite	on the right hand side
par ici	this way	à main gauche	on the left hand side
là	there		
de là	from there, hence, thence	depuis le haut	from the top to jusqu'en bas the bottom
par là	that way	en avant	forward
là bas	yonder	en arrière	backward
en bas	down stairs, be- low, below	plus en avant	forwarder
	stairs	plus en arrière	backwarder
en haut	up stairs	premièrement	first, firstly
jusqu' où ?	how far ? (ques- tion)	deuxièmement	} secondly
(question)	tion) how far shall we go ?	en premier lieu	
jusqu' où (ré- ponse)	as far as (an- swer) as far as you like	en second lieu	in the first place in the second place
jusqu' à	as far as (the name of a place)	en dernier lieu	lastly
jusqu' ici	as far as here, down to here	alternativement	alternately
jusque-là	as far as there, down or up to there	ensemble	together
loin	far	ensuite	afterwards, then after
bien loin	very far	de suite	} one after another running
pas loin	not far	l'un après l'autre	
pas très-loin	not very far	séparément	separately
près	near	un à un	one by one
ici près	} here, near here	deux à deux	two and two
près d'ici		tour à tour	} by turn
		à la ronde	
		dernièrement	lately, lastly
		* dedans	in it
		dessus	on it, upon it
		dessous	under it

* See *dans*, *sur*, and *sous*, prepositions, page 230.

EXERCISE.

Where are you going? We are going upstairs. Where did your brother go this morning? No where that I know sir. Your cousin says that he is not happy here, he wishes to go somewhere else. She is happy every where. He is happy nowhere. I am happy wherever I go. We will follow you wherever you go. Where do you come from? Which way shall we go? We shall go this way and come back that way if you please. Go down stairs directly. No, I prefer to stay upstairs. How far shall we go? As far as you like. How far did your brother go? He went as far as Thorpe. I will learn as far as here, and you must learn as far as there. Is it very far? No sir, it is not very far. Where does your friend live? He lives close by. Where were you going this morning when I met you? I was going somewhere with my brother.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISE.

My brother puts some money by every year. They fought bravely on both sides. We were surrounded on every side. Go straight before you. Take the first street on the right. The second street on the left. My cousin lives in that beautiful house on the right hand side. Who lives in that large white house on the left hand side? Have you learnt that page from the top to the bottom? The boy is gone forward. The girl is backward. Put this forwarder. Place that backwarder. You must learn your lesson first, and then we shall go for a walk together. Have you seen your friend Doctor B. lately? No, I have not seen him lately. I have a pretty purse, but there is nothing in it. Do not put your book under the table, put it upon it. Do not look on the table, look under it. Your hat is on my chest of drawers, and my shoes are under it. My brother's purse is full of money, and I thought (that) there was nothing in it.

ADVERBS OF QUANTITY AND OF NUMBER.

The following Adverbs expressing a certain quantity or a certain number of (something) require the preposition *de* of, before the noun that follows, (the preposition *de* but no article) and if no noun follows, no preposition *de* is wanted.

THESE ADVERBS ARE

combien de	<i>how much, or how many</i>	trop de	<i>too too much too many</i>
beaucoup de	<i>much, very much, many, a great many</i>	trop peu de	<i>too little</i>
"	<i>a great deal, a good deal</i>	plus de	<i>more</i>
pas beaucoup de	<i>not much not many, not a great many</i>	beaucoup plus de	<i>much more many, or a great many more</i>
"	<i>not a great deal</i>	moins de	<i>a great deal more less</i>
peu de	<i>little</i>	beaucoup moins de	<i>much less many, or a great many less</i>
très peu de	<i>very little, very few</i>	autant de	<i>a great deal less as much, or as many</i>
un peu de	<i>a little, rather, (rather cold, rather warm, etc.)</i>	tant de	<i>so much, or so many</i>
tant soit peu de	<i>ever so little</i>	pas tant de	<i>not so much, or not so many</i>
assez de	<i>enough</i>		

EXERCISE.

How many times have you been in Paris? How much money has he lost? How much do I owe you? I have not much money in my purse. I do not owe you much. I like that book very much. Your cousin has a great many friends and a great deal of money, has he not? No sir, he has not much money, but I think he has a great many friends. Will you give me a little money? You give me very little (of it). Have I not given you enough (of it)? No sir, give me a little more if you please. We have very little time to spare, and very few friends to visit. You spend too much money sir, you ought not to spend so much. I do not spend more than six shillings a day. It is a great deal too much sir. You ought to spend a great deal less than that. We have as much money as you, but we do not spend so much. My brother takes a great deal of pains to learn his lessons, but he does not make much progress.

ADVERBS OF QUALITY AND OTHERS.

cher	<i>dear</i>	bon marché	<i>cheap</i>
bien cher	<i>very dear</i>	bien bon marché	<i>very cheap</i>
très cher		très bon marché	
fort cher		fort bon marché	

meilleur marché	<i>cheaper</i>	environ	<i>about</i>
le meilleur	<i>the cheapest</i>	presque	} <i>nearly, almost</i>
marché		à peu près	
par-dessus le	<i>into the bargain</i>	à peu de choses	<i>within a small</i>
marché		près	<i>matter</i>
de beaucoup	<i>by much</i>	d'autant plus	<i>so much the more</i>
peu à peu	<i>little by little, by</i>	d'autant moins	<i>so much the less</i>
	<i>degrees</i>	combien de fois	<i>how many times</i>
de plus	<i>moreover</i>	quelquefois	<i>sometimes</i>
tout au plus	<i>at most</i>	une fois	<i>once</i>
au moins (mar-	<i>at least, (shows</i>	deux fois	<i>twice</i>
que l'exten-	<i>the extension)</i>	trois fois	<i>three times</i>
sion)		plusieurs fois	<i>several times</i>
du moins (je le	<i>at least, (I think</i>		
pense)	<i>so)</i>		

EXERCISE.

This wine is very dear I think. Yes, it is too dear. I have bought a very pretty house very cheap. Yes, but it is not so cheap as mine. Your tea is very dear, mine is dearer, but his is the dearest. My wine is very cheap, his is cheaper, but yours is the cheapest. Buy this of me, and I will give you that into the bargain. We learn French by degrees. My brother earns eight shillings a week at most. That man has lost at least twenty pounds, at least I think so. He spends about ten shillings a day, at least, I was told so. My book is nearly finished, I must begin another (book.) How many times have I told you to study your lesson? You have told me so only once I believe. I beg your pardon, I have told you so twice. My sister has been in London several times this year. My brother goes sometimes to the theatre, but I seldom go there. I have never been to the theatre more than twice, or three times at most.

ADVERBS OF AFFIRMATION, NEGATION, AND INTERROGATION.

oui	<i>yes</i>	sans doute	<i>no doubt, with-</i>
non	<i>no, not</i>		<i>out doubt, of</i>
certainement	<i>certainly</i>		<i>course,</i>
vraiment	<i>truly, indeed</i>	aussi	<i>too, also</i>
véritablement	<i>truly</i>	ainsi	<i>thus, so, and so,</i>
en vérité	<i>indeed</i>	ainsi de suite	<i>so forth, so on</i>
à la vérité	<i>in truth</i>	plutôt	<i>rather, (rather do</i>
			<i>this than that)</i>

peut-être	<i>perhaps</i>	combien y a-t-il	<i>how far is it</i>
probablement	<i>very likely, probably</i>	d'ici?	<i>from here?</i>
pas du tout	} <i>not at all</i>	il y a..	<i>it is..</i>
point du tout		jusqu'où?	<i>how far? (question) as far as (answer)</i>
jamais	<i>never</i>	quand?	<i>when?</i>
comment?*	<i>how? (to interrogate)</i>	lorsque	<i>when</i>
comme*	} <i>how (without interrogation)</i>	pas encore	<i>not yet</i>
comme cela		ne-pas	<i>no, not</i>
comme	<i>so, like that</i>	ne-point	<i>no, not, none</i>
pourquoi?	<i>like, as</i>	ne-jamais	<i>never</i>
combien?	<i>why?</i>	ne-rien	<i>nothing</i>
combien y a-t-il	<i>how much? how many?</i>	ne-que	<i>but</i>
que?	<i>since?</i>	ne-plus	<i>no more, no longer</i>
il y a long	<i>it is a long time</i>	ne-ni	<i>neither, nor</i>
temps que	<i>since</i>	ni, non-plus	<i>nor, neither</i>

EXERCISE.

Are you going to London to-morrow? Certainly not, sir. You are going to the theatre of course. Very likely we shall go to the concert also. If you go to the concert I shall probably go too, so I shall have the pleasure to see you there. How do you like music? I like it very much indeed. How does Miss L. play? She does not play well at all. How silly you are to say so. How beautifully she sings. How ill you look, sir. How pretty she is. How much do I owe you sir? How much do you owe him? How long is it since I saw you? How far is it from here to London? It is about one hundred and ten miles. How far shall we go this afternoon? We shall go as far as you like. When shall we go to Paris? When you like. We cannot speak French yet, so we cannot go to Paris. Have you finished your breakfast, sir? No madam, not yet. I have nothing to eat. Nor I either. Nor you either. Nor these gentlemen either.

OF THE PREPOSITION.

The Preposition is an *invariable* word, which shows the relation that exists between one word and another.

- * comment avez-vous fait cela ?
- * comme elle chante bien !

how did you do that ?
how beautifully she sings !

à* (à Londres)	to or at (a place) to or at London	voici	here is, here are ; this is, these are
chez* (chez moi)	to or at (a person's house) to or at mine	voilà	there is, there are ; that is, those are
de	of or from	quant à	as for
dès	from	attenant à	adjoining, contiguous
avant†	before	jusqu'à	till, until, as far as, even to
après	after	vis-à-vis de	opposite
devant†	before	près de	near, by, (expresses proximity, nearness)
derrière	behind	auprès de	near, by, next to (expresses proximity and assiduity)
depuis	since, from	autour de	round, about
entre	between	à l'égard de	with respect to, with regard to
vers	towards (place or time)	à cause de	on account of, because of
envers	towards, to (persons)	à côté de	by, next to
environ	about	à force de	by dint of
excepté	but, except, save	à l'insu de	unknown to, without the knowledge of
malgré	in spite of, notwithstanding	au lieu de	instead of
outré	besides	à raison de	at the rate of
d'ailleurs	besides	en dépit de	in spite of
par	by, through	à l'épreuve de	proof against
parmi	among, amongst	à l'abri de	sheltered from, under shelter
pendant	during	le long de	along
suiwant	} according to	faute de	for want of
selon		au péril de	at the peril of
dans†	} in, into	au travers de	through
en		à travers	across
sur†	upon, on		
sous†	under		
au-dessus de	above, beyond		
au-dessous de	beneath, under		
avec	with		
sans	without		
pour	for, to		
contre	against		

* il va à Londres

* il va chez Monsieur L.

+ See 23rd lesson on Idiomatical and Useful Phrases, part III.

† See *dedans*, *dessus*, and *dessous*, page 225.

he goes to London

he goes to Mr. L's

EXERCISE.

Where are you going? I am going to London. Where is your brother going? He is going to Mr. N—'s. Were you at the concert last night? Was your sister at Mrs. D's the other day? No sir, she was at the ball. We shall go for a walk to-morrow morning before breakfast, if you like. I should prefer to go after dinner. Why do you stay so long before the fire, sir? Why did you stay so long behind the door? I have not seen your brother since yesterday, do you know where he is? He came here yesterday morning between nine and ten, but I have not seen him since. I saw him going towards the market place. Be respectful towards everybody. Behave respectfully towards your parents. How far is it from here to Yarmouth? About twenty miles, sir. I have learnt all my lessons, *but* one. They are all going to Mr. B's, except me. I shall go in the garden with or without your leave, sir. We shall go to France in a year or two. Put your book on the table, and your hat under this chair.

Will you go with me as far as Thorpe? Where does your cousin live? He lives opposite that large white house. Sit down near me, my friend. He is very happy near his mother. Let us sit round the table. Let us walk round the castle. My mother will not be able to come to-night, on account of my brother's illness. I have suffered much on your account. You will succeed by dint of perseverance. You ought not to go to the concert, without the knowledge of your mother. If you play instead of studying your lesson my little boy, you will not be the first of your class. You will be the second instead of the first. My brother has bought three dozen of champagne, at the rate of seventy-five shillings a dozen. Let us go for a walk along the river. We cannot go to France for want of money. He (has) lost his fortune for want of attention to his business. I shall defend you at the peril of my life. Wait for me here till four o'clock. I shall go as far as Thorpe with you.

OF THE CONJUNCTION.

The conjunction is an *invariable* word, which serves to join or to connect words and sentences together.

mais	<i>but</i>	que	<i>that</i>
car	<i>for, because</i>	et	<i>and</i>
comme	<i>as, like</i>	ni	<i>neither, nor</i>

puisque	since, as	de même que	like, as, so as
cependant	yet, however	ainsi que	like, as, even as
néanmoins	nevertheless	parce que	because
toutefois	nevertheless, <i>aye</i>	de sorte que	so that, so
pourtant	however, not- withstanding	de manière que	so that, so
quand	} when	de ce que	because, that
lorsque		attendu que	seeing that, be- cause
si	if, whether	vu que	seeing that
ou	or	depuis que	since
ou bien	or else		

EXERCISE.

I should like to go with you to London, but I am afraid (that) my father will not give me leave. I have brought you some pears, for I know you like them. You speak French like a Frenchman, sir. Since you think so, sir, I shall not go to Paris this year. My father is very fond of French, and yet he will not allow his children to learn it. We shall go for a walk when you have finished reading your letter. Do you know whether your brother will come here this evening? If he does not come, I shall be obliged to leave you very early. You must stay with us, or I shall think (that) you do not like our company. Study your lessons my little boy, or else you will be punished. If we go to London, it is because we do not wish to be always in a country town. Your sister has been very ill, since we saw you, sir, but she is very much better now.

The following conjunctions govern the Subjunctive mood, that is to say, the verbs placed after the following conjunctions must be in the *subjunctive mood*.

afin que	} in order that	*à moins que	unless
pour que		jusqu'à ce que	until, till
avant que	before	pourvu que	provided
en cas que	in case	soit que	whether
quoique	although, though	sans que	without that
*de crainte que	for fear	bien que	though, although
*de peur que	for fear		

* de crainte que, de peur que, and à moins que, require the negation *ne* before the verb.

EXERCISE.

I will give you some money, in order that you may be able to pay that man. We shall have finished our breakfast, before you have begun yours. You must stay at home my dear little boy, for fear your father should be angry with you. My father is never angry with me madam, although I sometimes am rather troublesome. We shall take an umbrella for fear it should rain. You cannot learn your lessons, unless you study a little more my dear boy. I will study until I know my lesson by heart, and then I shall go and play. You may go for a walk, whether your brother wishes it or not. I do not wish to go for a walk, unless my brother go with me. Your brother is a very naughty boy, though you do not think so. You ought not to go out, before your sister is well enough to go with you.

There are words which are sometimes *prepositions* and sometimes *conjunctions*; they are prepositions when they only connect words with words, but they are conjunctions when they connect one sentence with another.

These words are :—

PREPOSITIONS.		CONJUNCTIONS.	
depuis	<i>since</i>	depuis que	<i>since</i>
avant	} <i>before</i>	avant que	<i>before</i>
avant de		après que	<i>after</i>
après	<i>after</i>	jusqu'à ce que	<i>until, till</i>
jusqu'à	<i>till</i>	pour que	<i>in order that</i>
pour	<i>for to, in order to</i>	afin que	<i>in order that</i>
afin de	<i>in order to</i>		

EXAMPLES.

je ne vous ai pas vu depuis hier	<i>I have not seen you since yesterday</i>
je ne vous ai pas vu depuis que vous êtes marié	<i>I have not seen you since you have been married</i>
nous ne partirons pas avant demain matin	<i>we shall not start before to-morrow morning</i>
nous ne partirons pas avant que vous ayez fini	<i>we shall not start before you have finished</i>
je viendrai vous voir avant de partir pour Paris	<i>I will come and see you before I start for Paris</i>

voulez-vous rester ici jusqu'à la semaine prochaine ?	<i>will you stay here till next week ?</i>
voulez-vous rester ici jusqu'à ce que nous ayons fini ?	<i>will you stay here until we have finished ?</i>
vous êtes trop jeune pour aller à Paris	<i>you are too young to go to Paris</i>
vous êtes trop jeune pour que je vous conduise à Paris	<i>you are too young for me to take you to Paris</i>
il travaille pour gagner sa vie	<i>he works to get his living</i>
il travaille pour que vous soyez content de lui	<i>he works in order that you should be pleased with him</i>
étudiez mon cher, afin de plaire à vos maîtres	<i>study my dear, in order to please your masters</i>
étudiez ma chère, afin que vos maîtres soient contents de vous	<i>study my dear, in order that your masters should be pleased with you</i>

EXERCISE.

I have done nothing *since* yesterday morning. I have not done anything *since* you were here. I have brought this book *for* you, *for* I know you like reading. Do something *for* my poor brother, *for* I think (that) he cannot do anything *for* himself. I shall be here *before* three o'clock. I shall be here *before* you have finished your breakfast. Stay here *till* to-morrow. Stay here *till* we have finished playing. I will wait for you *until* four o'clock. I will wait for you *until* you have finished your work. Your brother came here yesterday *before* dinner. Your brother came here yesterday *before* my father was up. My cousin has brought these papers *for* you, sir. My cousin has brought these papers in order that you may read them, sir. You must study (*for*) to learn your lessons. You are too young (*for*) to go to France. You are too young *for us* to take you to Germany.

OF INTERJECTIONS.

An interjection is a word which expresses sudden emotions of the mind.

ah !	ah !	<i>expresses joy, admiration, affection, pain</i>
ha !	ha !	<i>expresses surprise, astonishment, fear</i>

eh !	eh !	<i>expresses admiration, surprise</i>
hé bien !	well !	} <i>expresses interrogation</i>
hé bien ?	well ?	
oh !	oh !	<i>expresses affirmation, exclamation</i>
ho !	ho !	<i>expresses indignation, astonishment, surprise</i>
hein !	eh !	<i>expresses interrogation, hein ? or astonishment, hein !</i>
holà !	ho ! there !	} <i>expresses calling</i>
hé !	holloa !	
chut ! paix !	silence ! hush !	<i>express silence</i>
	hist !	
hélas ! ô ciel !	alas ! O Heaven	<i>express grief</i>

PART III.

LESSONS ON IDIOMATICAL AND USEFUL PHRASES.

FIRST LESSON.

Sentences in which the verb *to be* is used in English, when in French the verb *to have* must be used.

avoir faim*	<i>to be hungry</i>
avoir soif	<i>to be thirsty</i>
avoir chaud	<i>to be warm</i>
avoir froid	<i>to be cold</i>
avoir raison	<i>to be right</i>
avoir tort	<i>to be wrong</i>
avoir peur de	<i>to be afraid of</i>

* The pupil is requested to observe, that in this lesson the verb *avoir*, is used in French instead of the verb *être*, and that consequently we say ; I *have* hunger, he *has* thirst, etc., and not, I am hungry, he is thirsty.

	faim		<i>hungry</i>
	grand'faim		<i>very hungry</i>
	soif		<i>thirsty</i>
	grand'soif		<i>very thirsty</i>
j'ai	chaud	<i>I am</i>	<i>warm</i>
tu as	grand chaud	<i>thou art</i>	<i>very warm</i>
il a	froid	<i>he is</i>	<i>cold</i>
elle a	grand froid	<i>she is</i>	<i>very cold</i>
nous avons	raison	<i>we are</i>	<i>right</i>
vous avez	bien raison	<i>you are</i>	<i>quite right</i>
ils ont	tort	<i>they are</i>	<i>wrong</i>
	grand tort		<i>very wrong</i>
	peur		<i>afraid</i>
	grand peur		<i>very much afraid</i>

j'ai froid aux mains
 j'ai grand froid aux mains
 j'ai si grand froid aux mains
 avez-vous chaud ?
 avez-vous chaud aux pieds ?
 mon petit frère a grand faim
 donnez-lui un morceau de pain
 si vous avez soif, prenez un
 verre d'eau
 voulez-vous prendre un verre
 de vin ?
 non, je vous remercie, je n'ai
 pas soif
 vous avez raison de ne pas
 boire
 vous avez tort de ne pas
 manger
 vous aviez raison
 vous aviez tort
 vous avez eu raison
 vous avez eu tort
 vous avez eu grand tort
 j'ai peur de vous
 j'ai grand peur de vous
 pourquoi avez-vous peur de lui ?
 ma sœur a peur de votre chien
 ma sœur a grand peur de votre
 chien

my hands are cold
my hands are very cold
my hands are so very cold
are you warm ?
are your feet warm ?
my little brother is very hungry
give him a piece of bread
if you are thirsty, take a glass
of water
will you take a glass of wine ?
no, I thank you, I am not
thirsty
you are right not to drink
you are wrong not to eat
you were right
you were wrong
you have been right
you have been wrong
you have been very wrong
I am afraid of you
I am very much afraid of you
why are you afraid of him ?
my sister is afraid of your dog
my sister is very much afraid of
your dog

pourquoi votre sœur a-t-elle
si grand peur ?
parce qu'elle a peur des chiens
j'en suis bien fâché
et moi aussi

*why is your sister so much
afraid ?
because she is afraid of dogs
I am very sorry for it
so am I*

SECOND LESSON.

j'ai mal à la tête
la tête me fait mal
j'ai grand mal à la tête
la tête me fait grand mal
avez-vous mal à la tête ?
est-ce que vous avez mal à la
tête ?

*I have a head ache
my head aches
I have a very bad head ache
my head aches very much
have you a head ache ?
does your head ache ?*

si vous avez si grand mal à la
tête, allez vous coucher
ma sœur a mal aux dents
ma sœur a grand mal aux dents

*if you have such a head ache, go
and lie down
my sister has the tooth-ache
my sister has a very bad tooth-
ache*

ma sœur a si grand mal aux
dents, qu'elle ne peut pas
dormir

*my sister has such a tooth-ache,
that she cannot sleep*

mon frère a mal à la gorge
mon frère a grand mal à la
gorge

*my brother has a sore throat
my brother has a very bad sore
throat*

mon frère a si grand mal à la
gorge, qu'il ne peut pas parler

*my brother has such a sore
throat, that he cannot speak*

j'ai mal aux lèvres { au
j'ai grand mal aux lèvres { à la
j'ai si grand mal aux { à l'
lèvres { aux

*my lips are sore
my lips are very sore
my lips are so very sore*

j'ai mal au côté

my side aches

le mal de tête

the head ache

le mal de gorge

a sore throat

le mal d'oreille

the ear ache

j'ai le mal de tête

I have the head ache

nous avons le mal de gorge

we have a sore throat

avez-vous le mal d'oreille ?

have you the ear ache ?

To have a cold, être enrhumé.

je suis enrhumé

I have a cold

je suis très enrhumé

I have a very bad cold

tu es enrhumé	<i>thou hast a cold</i>
il est enrhumé	<i>he has a cold</i>
elle est enrhumée	<i>she has a cold</i>
elle est très enrhumée	<i>she has a very bad cold</i>
nous sommes enrhumés	<i>we have a cold</i>
vous êtes enrhumés	<i>you have a cold</i>
ils sont enrhumés	<i>they have a cold</i>
elles sont enrhumées	<i>they have a cold</i>
un rhume	<i>a cold</i>
vous avez un mauvais rhume	<i>you have a bad cold</i>
elle a un rhume violent	<i>she has a violent cold</i>
elle a une toux	<i>she has a cough</i>
elle a une mauvaise toux	<i>she has a bad cough</i>
elle a une bien mauvaise toux	<i>she has a very bad cough</i>
j'en suis bien fâché pour elle	<i>I am very sorry for her</i>

THIRD LESSON.

When in English the verb *to be*, is followed by another verb in the infinitive, as, I am to sing, we are to write, etc., in French the verb *devoir* must be used instead of the verb *être*, as ; *je dois chanter, nous devons écrire*, etc.

PRESENT.

je dois	} chanter	I am to	} sing
tu dois		thou art to	
il doit		he is to	
nous devons		we are to	
vous devez		you are to	
ils doivent		they are to	

IMPARFAIT.

je devais	} voyager	I was to	} travel
tu devais		thou wast to	
il devait		he was to	
nous devions		we were to	
vous deviez		you were to	
ils devaient		they were to	

mon frère doit chanter ce soir	}	<i>my brother is to sing this evening</i>
que doit-il faire ?		<i>what is he to do ?</i>
qu'est-ce qu'il doit faire ?		

vous ne devez pas faire de questions		<i>you are not to ask any questions</i>
que dois-je apprendre ?	}	<i>what am I to learn ?</i>
qu'est-ce que je dois apprendre ?		
que devons-nous lire ?	}	<i>what are we to read ?</i>
qu'est-ce que nous devons lire ?		
vous devez apprendre votre leçon		<i>you are to learn your lesson</i>
qui doit m'enseigner ?	}	<i>who is to teach me ?</i>
qui est-ce qui doit m'enseigner ?		

FOURTH LESSON.

When in English the verb *to have*, is followed by the word *just*, as *I have just lost my dog, we have just met your brother*, etc., in French the verb *venir* must be used instead of the verb *avoir*, as

je viens de perdre mon chien
nous venons de rencontrer votre frère, etc.

PRESENT.

je viens de	} déjeuner	<i>I have just</i>	} breakfasted
tu viens de		<i>thou hast just</i>	
il vient de		<i>he has just</i>	
elle vient de		<i>she has just</i>	
nous venons de		<i>we have just</i>	
vous venez de		<i>you have just</i>	
ils viennent de		<i>they have just</i>	

IMPARFAIT.

je venais de	} donner	<i>I had just</i>	} given
tu venais de		<i>thou hadst just</i>	
il venait de		<i>he had just</i>	
nous venions de		<i>we had just</i>	
vous veniez de		<i>you had just</i>	
ils venaient de		<i>they had just</i>	

je viens de recevoir une lettre de votre sœur	<i>I have just received a letter from your sister</i>
mon frère vient de chanter une chanson	<i>my brother has just sung a song</i>

nous venons de perdre notre
petit chien
vous venez de lui parler
ils viennent de le rencontrer
ces messieurs viennent de lire
votre lettre
je venais d'arriver quand je
le vis
mon frère venait de finir quand
elle arriva
nous venions de déjeuner quand
vous vîntes
ils venaient de terminer leur
ouvrage, quand ces dames
arrivèrent
ma sœur venait de se lever,
quand elle reçut votre lettre
et nous venions de finir notre
déjeuner

we have just lost our little dog

you have just spoken to him
they have just met him
these gentlemen have just read
your letter
I had just arrived when I saw
him
my brother had just finished
when she came
we had just breakfasted when
you came
they had just finished their work,
when these ladies arrived

my sister had just risen, when
she received your letter
and we had just finished our
breakfast

FIFTH LESSON.

When in English the verb *to be*, is used to express the state of the atmosphere, (state of the weather), as *it is warm*, *it is cold*, etc.; in French the verb *faire* must be used instead of the verb *être*, as *il fait chaud*, *il fait froid*, etc.

il fait	} <i>chaud</i>
il faisait	
il a fait	
il fera	
il ferait	
il faut qu'il fasse	

it is	} <i>warm</i>
it was	
it has been	
it will be	
it would be	
it must be	

il fait froid ce matin
il faisait froid hier soir
il a fait beau temps
il a fait mauvais temps
il fera beau temps demain

it is cold this morning
it was cold last night
it has been fine weather
it has been bad weather
it will be fine to-morrow

il fait	}	humide	it is	}	damp
il faisait			it was		
il fait	}	du vent	it is	}	windy
il faisait			it was		
il fait	}	du brouillard	it is	}	foggy
il faisait			it was		
il fait	}	noir	it is	}	dark
il faisait			it was		
il fait	}	clair de lune	it is	}	moonlight
il faisait			it was		
il fera			it will be		
il fait	}	glissant	it is	}	slippery
il faisait			it was		
il fera			it will be		
il fait	}	très sale [#]	it is	}	very dirty
il faisait			it was		
il fera			it will be		
il a fait très mauvais temps			it has been very bad weather		

SIXTH LESSON.

When in English the age of a person is spoken of, the verb *to be* is used, and the word year or years is omitted or understood; but in French the verb *avoir* is used, and the word year "*an*," or years "*ans*," must be expressed; as:

j'ai vingt ans	<i>I am twenty (I have twenty years)</i>
mon frère a dix-huit ans	<i>my brother is eighteen (my brother has eighteen years)</i>
quel âge avez-vous ?	<i>how old are you ?</i>
j'ai dix-neuf ans	<i>I am nineteen</i>
quel âge a votre sœur ?	<i>how old is your sister ?</i>
elle n'a pas encore douze ans	<i>she is not twelve yet</i>
quel âge a votre frère ?	
quel âge votre frère a-t-il ?	<i>how old is your brother ?</i>
il a plus de trente ans	<i>he is more than thirty</i>
elle n'a pas plus de quinze ans	<i>she is not more than fifteen</i>
ma nièce aura seize ans demain	<i>my niece will be sixteen to-morrow</i>

mon neveu a eu six ans ce
matin

mon cousin eut huit ans hier
ma cousine aura vingt-cinq
ans demain

il aurait quarante ans main-
tenant

il aura bientôt quatre ans
quel âge a ce petit garçon ?
quel âge ce petit garçon a-t-il ? }
il doit avoir neuf ans

il doit avoir plus que cela
mon frère a six ans de plus
que moi

ma sœur a dix ans de moins
que moi

je suis dans ma dix-huitième
année

mon frère est dans sa dixième
année

ma sœur est dans sa vingtième
année

my nephew was six this morning

my cousin was eight yesterday
*my cousin will be twenty-five to-
morrow*

he would be forty now

he will soon be four

how old is that little boy?

he must be nine

he must be more than that
*my brother is six years older
than I*

*my sister is ten years younger
than I*

I am in my eighteenth year

my brother is in his tenth year

*my sister is in her twentieth
year*

SEVENTH LESSON.

To want, to have need, *avoir besoin de, falloir à.*

j'ai
tu as
il a
mon frère a
nous avons
vous avez
ils ont
ces dames ont

— besoin d'argent —

I want
thou wantest
he wants
my brother wants
we want
you want
they want
these ladies want

— money —

OR

il me faut
il te faut
il lui faut
il lui faut
il nous faut
il vous faut
il leur faut

— de l'argent —

I want
thou wantest
he wants
she wants
we want
you want
they want

— money —

j'ai besoin de vous parler
nous avons besoin d'aller à
Paris

*I want to speak to you
we want to go to Paris*

avez-vous besoin d'un cheval ?
non, mais mon frère en a be-
soin d'un

*do you want a horse ?
no, but my brother wants one*

qui a besoin d'un crayon ?
j'en ai besoin d'un

*who wants a pencil ?
I want one*

ma sœur n'en a pas besoin
a-t-elle besoin d'argent ?

*my sister does not want any
does she want any money ?*

non, elle n'en a pas besoin
elle en avait besoin hier
mais elle n'en a pas besoin
aujourd'hui

*no, she does not want any
she wanted some yesterday
but she does not want any now*

avez-vous besoin de quelque
chose ?

do you want anything ?

non, je vous remercie, je n'ai
besoin de rien

*no, I thank you, I do not want
anything*

quand vous aurez besoin de
lui parler, vous viendrez chez
moi

*when you want to speak to him,
you will come to my house*

oui monsieur, avec grand
plaisir

yes sir, with great pleasure

j'avais besoin de
tu avais besoin de
il avait besoin de
nous avions besoin de
vous aviez besoin de
ils avaient besoin de

*I wanted to
thou wantedst to
he wanted to
we wanted to
you wanted to
they wanted to*

avais-je besoin de... ?
avait-elle besoin de... ?
votre frère avait-il be-
soin de... ?
avons-nous besoin de... ?
aviez-vous besoin de... ?
avaient-ils besoin de... ?
ces dames avaient-elles
besoin de... ?

*did I want to... ?
did she want to... ?
did your brother want to... ?
did we want to... ?
did you want to... ?
did they want to... ?
did those ladies want to... ?*

EIGHTH LESSON.

The English expression *to be the matter*, is expressed in French by the verb *avoir*, *to have*.

qu'avez-vous?	}		<i>what is the matter with you?</i>	
qu'est-ce que vous avez?				
qu'avez-vous au doigt?	}		<i>what is the matter with your finger?</i>	
qu'est-ce que vous avez au doigt?				
qu'a-t-il?	{	au à la à l' aux	}	<i>what is the matter with him?</i>
qu'est-ce qu'il a?				
qu'a-t-il à la main?	}		<i>what is the matter with his hand?</i>	
qu'est-ce qu'il a à la main?				
pas grand chose			<i>not much</i>	
savez-vous ce qu'il a?			<i>do you know what is the matter with him?</i>	
savez-vous ce qu'il a à la main?			<i>do you know what is the matter with his hand?</i>	
qu'ont-ils?	}		<i>what is the matter with them?</i>	
qu'est-ce qu'ils ont?				
qu'y a-t-il?	}		<i>what is the matter (there)?</i>	
qu'est-ce qu'il y a?				
y a-t-il quelque chose?			<i>is there anything the matter? (there)</i>	
non, il n'y a rien			<i>no, nothing the matter (there)</i>	
j'en suis bien aise			<i>I am very glad of it</i>	

NINTH LESSON.

To hurt, *faire mal à*

vous me faites mal	{	au	}	<i>you hurt me</i>
vous me faites mal à la main				<i>you hurt my hand</i>
vous lui faites mal	{	à la	}	<i>you hurt him (or her)</i>
vous lui faites mal au bras				<i>you hurt his arm</i>
vous vous ferez mal	{	à l'	}	<i>you will hurt yourself</i>
vous vous ferez mal aux pieds				<i>you will hurt your feet</i>
il vous fait mal	{	aux	}	<i>he hurts you</i>
il vous a fait mal				<i>he did hurt you</i>
il vous fera mal	{	à la	}	<i>he will hurt you</i>
il vous ferait mal				<i>he would hurt you</i>
vous fait-il mal?	{	à l'	}	<i>does he hurt?</i>
				<i>does he hurt?</i>

vous a-t-il fait mal ?	<i>did he hurt ?</i>
est-ce que je vous fais mal ?	<i>do I hurt you ?</i>
vous ai-je fait mal ?	
est-ce que je vous ai fait mal ?	<i>did I hurt you ?</i>
mes bottes me font mal	<i>my boots hurt me</i>
mes bottes me font mal aux pieds	<i>my boots hurt my feet</i>
votre soulier vous fait-il mal ?	
est-ce que votre soulier vous fait mal ?	<i>does your shoe hurt you ?</i>
sa botte lui fait mal au pied	<i>his boot hurts his foot</i>
sa botte lui fait-elle mal au pied ?	
est-ce que sa botte lui fait mal au pied ?	<i>does his boot hurt his foot ?</i>
oui, elle lui fait grand mal	<i>yes, it hurts him very much</i>
j'en suis très fâché	<i>I am very sorry for it</i>

TENTH LESSON.

To suit, convenir à

cela me convient	<i>that suits me</i>
cela ne me convient pas	<i>that does not suit me</i>
cela me conviendra	<i>that will suit me</i>
cela ne me conviendra pas	<i>this will not suit me</i>
cela me conviendrait	<i>this would suit me</i>
cela ne me conviendrait pas	<i>that would not suit me</i>
cela peut me convenir	<i>that may suit me</i>
cela ne peut pas me convenir	<i>this cannot suit me</i>
Jeudi ne me convient pas	<i>Thursday does not suit me</i>
Mercredi me conviendra mieux	<i>Wednesday will suit me better</i>
ce cheval me convient	<i>that horse suits me</i>
cette maison lui convenait	<i>this house did suit him</i>
Lundi nous conviendra	<i>Monday will suit us</i>
ma maison vous conviendrait	<i>my house would suit you</i>
ce pays ne leur convient pas	<i>this country does not suit them</i>
cela ne convient pas à mon frère	<i>that does not suit my brother</i>
mais cela conviendra à mon cousin	<i>but this will suit my cousin</i>
cela me convient-il ?	<i>does that suit me ?</i>
cette maison lui convenait-elle ?	<i>did this house suit her ?</i>
ce pays nous conviendra-t-il ?	<i>will that country suit us ?</i>

Lundi vous conviendrait-il mieux ?	<i>would Monday suit you better ?</i>
cette maison ne leur conviendrait pas	<i>this house would not suit them</i>
oui, je crois qu'elle leur conviendrait très bien	<i>yes, I think it would suit them very well</i>

ELEVENTH LESSON.

Sur les différentes heures du jour—on the different hours of the day.

quelle heure est-il ?	<i>{ what is the time ? what o'clock is it ?</i>
quelle heure est-il à votre montre ?	<i>what is the time by your watch ?</i>
savez-vous quelle heure il est ?	<i>{ do you know what o'clock it is ? do you know what the time is ?</i>
il est midi (not douze heures)	<i>it is twelve (in the day)</i>
il est minuit (not douze heures)	<i>it is twelve (at night)</i>
il est midi cinq minutes	<i>it is five minutes past twelve</i>
il est midi dix minutes	<i>it is ten minutes past twelve</i>
il est midi un quart	<i>it is a quarter past twelve</i>
il est une heure vingt minutes	<i>it is 20 minutes past one</i>
il est une heure 25 minutes	<i>it is 25 minutes past one</i>
il est une heure et demie	<i>it is half-past one</i>
il est deux heures moins 25 minutes	<i>it is 25 minutes to two</i>
il est deux heures moins 20 minutes	<i>it is 20 minutes to two</i>
il est deux heures moins un quart	<i>it is a quarter to two</i>
il est deux heures moins dix minutes	<i>it is ten minutes to two</i>
il est deux heures moins cinq minutes	<i>it is five minutes to two</i>
il est deux heures	<i>it is two o'clock</i>
il est un peu plus deux heures	<i>it is a little more than two</i>
il n'est pas encore trois heures	<i>it is not three yet</i>
il n'est pas tout-à-fait quatre heures	<i>it is not quite four</i>
votre montre va-t-elle bien ?	<i>does your watch go well ?</i>
votre montre ne va pas bien	<i>your watch does not go well</i>

elle avance	<i>it is too fast</i>
elle retarde	<i>it is too slow</i>
elle avance d'un quart d'heure	<i>it is a quarter of an hour too fast</i>
elle retarde d'une demi heure	<i>it is half an hour too slow</i>
vous retardez	<i>you are too slow</i>
vous avancez	<i>you are too fast</i>
vous retardez de dix minutes	<i>you are ten minutes too slow</i>
vous avancez de 20 minutes	<i>you are 20 minutes too fast</i>
je retarde	} <i>I am too slow</i>
je suis en retard	
j'avance	} <i>I am too fast</i>
je suis en avance	
je retarde de 5 minutes	} <i>I am five minutes too slow</i>
je suis en retard de 5 minutes	
je suis en avance d'un quart d'heure	} <i>I am a quarter of an hour too fast</i>
j'avance d'un quart d'heure	

TWELFTH LESSON.

some or any	{	<i>du, de la, des, de l',</i> used before nouns only.
		<i>de, d',</i> used before an adjective or in negative sentences.
		<i>en,</i> used instead of a noun before mentioned.

du, de la, des, de l', can only be used before a noun taken in a partitive sense.

en, can only be used with a verb, and instead of a noun before mentioned.

avez-vous de l'argent ?	<i>have you any money ?</i>
oui, monsieur, j'en ai	<i>yes, sir, I have some</i>
voulez-vous m'en donner ?	<i>will you give me some ?</i>
je vous en donnerai si vous en avez besoin	<i>I will give you some if you want any</i>
mon frère a du pain	<i>my brother has some bread</i>
il vous en donnera si vous en voulez	<i>he will give you some if you wish for any</i>
nous avons des amis à Londres	<i>we have friends in London, have</i>
en avez-vous à Paris ?	<i>you any in Paris ?</i>

nous *en* avons à Paris, mais
nous n'*en* avons point à
Londres

si vous avez de l'or donnez-
m'*en*

donnez-lui *en*

donnez-nous *en*

donnez leur *en*

ne m'*en* donnez pas

ne lui *en* donnez pas

ne leur *en* donnez pas

vous ai-je donné *du* lait ?

oui, vous m'*en* avez donné

vous *en* ai-je donné assez ?

non, vous ne m'*en* avez pas
donné assez

vous *en* donnerai-je un peu
plus ?

non, je vous remercie, monsieur
j'*en* ai assez maintenant

si vous n'avez pas d'argent je
vous *en* donnerai

merci j'*en* ai

vous n'*en* avez pas assez

je n'*en* ai pas du tout

*we have some in Paris, but we
have none in London*

*if you have any gold give me
some*

give him some

give us some

give them some

do not give me any

do not give him any

do not give them any

did I give you any milk ?

yes, you have given me some

*did I give you enough ? (of it,
milk)*

*no, you did not give me enough
(of it)*

*shall I give you a little more ?
(of it)*

no, I thank you, sir

I have enough now

*if you have no money I will give
you some*

thank you I have some

you have not enough (of it)

I have none at all (money)

THIRTEENTH LESSON.

prenez un siège

voulez-vous prendre un siège ?

asseyez-vous

voulez-vous vous asseoir ?

veuillez vous asseoir

donnez-moi une chaise

voulez-vous me donner une
chaise ?

prêtez-lui de l'argent

voulez-vous lui prêter de l'ar-
gent ?

lui avez-vous prêté de l'argent ?

oui, je lui *en* ai prêté

take a seat, a chair

will you take a seat ? a chair ?

sit down, sit yourself

will you sit down ?

pray sit down, be seated pray

give me a chair

will you give me a chair ?

lend him some money

will you lend him some money ?

did you lend him any money ?

yes, I did lend him some

ne lui prêtez plus d'argent
 ne lui *en* prêtez plus, car il ne
 vous le rendrait jamais
 je lui *en* prêterai encore, car il
 m'a toujours rendu ce que
 je lui ai prêté
 attendez-moi
 voulez-vous m'attendre?
 ne m'attendez pas
 pourquoi ne m'avez-vous pas
 attendu?
 vous ne m'avez pas dit de
 vous attendre

do not lend him any more money
do not lend him any more, for
he never would return it to you
I will lend him some again, for
he has always returned what
I did lend him
wait for me
will you wait for me?
do not wait for me
why did you not wait for me?
you did not tell me to wait for
you

FOURTEENTH LESSON.

to send for
to go for
to come for
to look for

envoyer chercher
 aller chercher
 venir chercher
 chercher

envoyez chercher le docteur
 voulez-vous envoyer chercher
 le docteur?
 avez-vous envoyé chercher le
 docteur?
 je l'enverrai chercher tout de
 suite
 allez chercher votre sœur
 ayez la bonté d'aller chercher
 votre sœur
 voulez-vous avoir la bonté de
 ..?
 veuillez avoir la bonté de ..
 venez me chercher à dix heures
 voulez-vous venir me chercher?
 ayez la bonté de venir me
 chercher
 voulez-vous avoir la bonté de
 venir me chercher?
 à quelle heure irai-je vous
 chercher?

send for the doctor
will you send for the doctor?
did you send for the doctor?
I will send for him directly
go for your sister
have the kindness to go for your
sister
will you have the kindness to ..?
be so kind as to ..
come for me at ten o'clock
will you come for me?
have the kindness to come for me
will you have the kindness to
come for me?
at what time shall I go for you?

aussitôt que vous pourrez	<i>as soon as you can</i>
que cherchez-vous ?	<i>what are you looking for ?</i>
qu'est-ce que vous cherchez ?	<i>who is he looking for ?</i>
qui cherche-t-il ?	<i>who is looking for him ?</i>
qui est-ce qui le cherche ?	
qu'avez-vous cherché ?	<i>what have you been looking for ?</i>
qu'est-ce que vous avez cherché ?	<i>are you looking for somebody ?</i>
cherchez-vous quelqu'un ?	<i>have you been looking for something ?</i>
avez-vous cherché quelque chose ?	<i>I have been looking for you, but I did not find you</i>
je vous ai cherché, mais je ne vous ai pas trouvé	

FIFTEENTH LESSON.

On the English verb, *to hear*.

<i>to hear (somebody or something)</i>	<i>entendre (quelqu'un ou quelque chose)</i>
<i>to hear from..</i>	<i>recevoir des nouvelles de..</i>
<i>to hear of..</i>	<i>entendre parler de..</i>
<i>to hear that..</i>	<i>entendre dire que..</i>
	<i>apprendre</i>
avez-vous entendu du bruit ?	<i>did you hear any noise ?</i>
avez-vous entendu M ^{lle} . C. chanter ?	<i>have you heard Miss C. sing ?</i>
oui, je l'ai entendue deux fois	<i>yes, I heard her twice</i>
j'aimerais beaucoup l'entendre chanter	<i>I should very much like to hear her sing</i>
et moi aussi, et mon frère aussi	<i>so should I, and so should my brother</i>
nous vous avons entendu jouer du piano	<i>we heard you play on the piano</i>
j'espère que nous vous entendrons chanter	<i>I hope we shall hear you sing</i>
avez-vous reçu des nouvelles de votre sœur ?	<i>have you heard from your sister ?</i>
non monsieur, pas encore, mais j'espère que j'en recevrai bientôt	<i>no sir, not yet, but I hope I shall soon hear from her</i>
mon père a reçu des nouvelles de Londres	<i>my father heard from London</i>

mais il n'en a pas reçu de Paris encore	<i>but he has not heard from Paris yet</i>
j'espère que je recevrai de vos nouvelles	<i>I hope I shall hear from you</i>
si vous ne recevez pas de mes nouvelles, vous en recevrez de ma tante	<i>if you do not hear from me, you will hear from my aunt</i>
avez-vous entendu parler de l'ac- cident ?	<i>have you heard of the accident ?</i>
non, je n'en ai pas entendu par- ler	<i>no, I have not heard of it, or about it</i>
quand vous en entendrez parler, vous viendrez me le dire, n'est- ce pas ?	<i>when you hear of it, you will come and tell me, will you not ?</i>
je n'y manquerai pas	<i>I shall not fail to do so</i>
avez-vous entendu dire que Mr. F. est mort ?	<i>have you heard that Mr. F. is dead ?</i>
non, je ne l'ai pas entendu dire mon frère l'a entendu dire ce matin	<i>no, I have not heard it my brother heard it this morning</i>
nous avons entendu dire que Mlle. B. allait se marier	<i>we heard that Miss B. was going to be married ?</i>
quand est-ce que vous avez en- tendu dire cela ?	<i>when did you hear that ?</i>
quand avez-vous entendu dire cela ?	
je l'ai entendu dire ce matin même	<i>I heard it this very morning</i>

SIXTEENTH LESSON.

On the verb to take place, *avoir lieu*.

This verb is used only in the third person singular or plural.

<i>it takes place</i>	<i>il a lieu</i>
<i>they take place</i>	<i>ils ont lieu</i>
<i>it used to take place or was taking place</i>	<i>il avait lieu</i>
<i>they used to take place or they were taking place</i>	<i>ils avaient lieu</i>

<i>it took place</i>	<i>il eut lieu</i>
<i>they took place</i>	<i>ils eurent lieu</i>
<i>it has taken place</i>	<i>il a eu lieu</i>
<i>they have taken place</i>	<i>ils ont eu lieu</i>
<i>it will take place</i>	<i>il aura lieu</i>
<i>they will take place</i>	<i>ils auront lieu</i>
<i>it would take place</i>	<i>il aurait lieu</i>
<i>they would take place</i>	<i>ils auraient lieu</i>
<i>it would have taken place</i>	<i>il aurait eu lieu</i>
<i>they would have taken place</i>	<i>ils auraient eu lieu</i>
<i>it is to take place</i>	<i>il doit avoir lieu</i>
<i>they are to take place</i>	<i>ils doivent avoir lieu</i>
<i>it must have taken place</i>	<i>il doit avoir eu lieu</i>
<i>they must have taken place</i>	<i>ils doivent avoir eu lieu</i>
<i>it ought to take place</i>	<i>il devrait avoir lieu</i>
<i>it ought to have taken place</i>	<i>il aurait dû avoir lieu</i>

savez-vous quand le concert aura lieu ?

je crois qu'il aura lieu demain

les assises auront lieu bientôt

quand auront-elles lieu ?

elles auraient dû avoir lieu la semaine dernière

mais elles auront lieu la semaine prochaine

quand le bal aura-t-il lieu ?

il aurait eu lieu hier, si Mr. N. n'avait pas été si malade

mais maintenant il ne pourra pas avoir lieu avant de Mardi en huit

s'il avait eu lieu il y eut Mardi huit jours, j'y serais allé avec vous

je suis bien fâché qu'il n'ait pas eu lieu alors

et moi aussi, je vous assure

do you know when the concert will take place ?

I believe it will take place to-morrow

the assizes will soon take place

when will they take place ?

they ought to have taken place last week

but they will take place next week

when will the ball take place ?

it would have taken place yesterday, if Mr. N. had not been so ill

but now it will not be able to take place till Tuesday week

if it had taken place last Tuesday week, I would have gone with you

I am very sorry it did not take place then

so am I, I assure you

SEVENTEENTH LESSON.

On the verb *y avoir*, there to be, it is.

il y a long-temps que je n'ai pas eu le plaisir de vous voir	<i>it is a long time since I had the pleasure of seeing you</i>
combien y a-t-il ?	<i>how long is it ?</i>
il y a plus de quinze jours	<i>it is more than a fortnight since</i>
il doit y avoir plus de quinze jours	<i>it must be more than a fortnight</i>
il n'y a pas si long-temps que cela	<i>it is not so long as that</i>
combien pensez-vous qu'il y ait ?	<i>how long do you think it is ?</i>
il doit y avoir long-temps	<i>it must be a long time since</i>
il y aura Lundi quinze jours	<i>it will be a fortnight next Monday</i>
il ne peut pas y avoir si long-temps	<i>it cannot be so long</i>
pas depuis il y eut Mercredi huit jours	<i>not since last Wednesday week</i>
combien y a-t-il d'ici à Londres ?	<i>how far is it from here to London ?</i>
il y a environ cent-dix milles	<i>it is about a hundred and ten miles</i>
y a-t-il loin d'ici à ?	<i>is it far from here to ?</i>
non monsieur, il n'y a pas loin	<i>no sir, it is not far</i>
combien y a-t-il que Mr. F. est mort ?	<i>how long has Mr. F. been dead</i>
il mourut il y eut Samedi huit jours	<i>he died last Saturday week</i>
y a-t-il long-temps que Mlle. M. est mariée ?	<i>has Miss M. been married long ?</i>
il n'y a pas plus de quinze jours	<i>she has not been married more than a fortnight</i>
y avait-il beaucoup de monde au concert ?	<i>were there many people at the concert ?</i>
oui, il y en avait beaucoup	<i>yes, there were a great many</i>
il doit y avoir un bal	<i>there is to be a ball</i>
y aura-t-il un autre concert ?	<i>will there be another concert ?</i>
oui, il doit y en avoir un	<i>yes, there is to be one</i>
oui, il y en aura un autre de demain en huit	<i>yes, there will be another to-morrow week</i>

il doit y en avoir un ce soir	<i>there is to be one to-night</i>
combien y a-t-il que vous êtes ici ?	<i>how long have you been here ? (here still)</i>
y a-t-il long-temps que vous êtes ici ?	<i>have you been here long ? (still here)</i>
il doit y avoir un an	<i>it must be a year</i>
combien y a-t-il que vous apprenez le Français ?	<i>how long have you learnt French ? (still learning)</i>
il y a deux ans que je l'apprends	<i>I have learnt it two years (learning still)</i>
y a-t-il long-temps que votre frère apprend le Latin ?	<i>has your brother learnt Latin long ? how long has your brother been learning Latin ?</i>
il y a environ deux ans qu'il l'apprend	<i>he has learnt it about two years (still learning)</i>
combien de temps avez-vous appris ?	<i>how long have you learnt ? (left off learning)</i>
avez-vous appris long-temps ?	<i>have you learnt long ? (left off learning)</i>
j'ai appris pendant six ans	<i>I have learnt six years (left off)</i>

EIGHTEENTH LESSON.

Sur les verbes pouvoir et vouloir, on the verbs to be able and to will.

puis-je aller à Paris avec vous ?	<i>may I go to Paris with you ?</i>
vous le pouvez, si vous voulez	<i>you may, (or can) if you like</i>
votre frère peut-il chanter ?	<i>can your brother sing ?</i>
il le peut, quand il le veut	<i>he can when he likes</i>
vous pouvez faire cela si vous voulez	<i>you can do that if you like</i>
vous pourriez faire cela si vous le vouliez	<i>you might (or could) do that if you wish it</i>
vous auriez pu faire cela si vous l'aviez voulu	<i>you could (or might) have done that if you had wished</i>
vous pouvez avoir cela	<i>you may (or can) have that</i>
vous pourriez avoir cela	<i>you might (or could) have that</i>
vous auriez pu avoir cela	<i>that</i>
il peut venir s'il le veut	<i>he may or can come if he likes</i>
il pourrait venir s'il le voulait	<i>he might or could come if he wish</i>

il aurait pu venir s'il l'avait voulu

il doit venir s'il le peut

il devrait venir ici ce soir

il aurait dû venir ici ce matin

il viendra s'il le peut

il viendrait s'il le pouvait

il serait venu s'il l'avait pu

vous viendrez si vous pouvez,
n'est-ce pas ?

vous viendriez si vous pouviez,
n'est-ce pas ?

vous seriez venu si vous aviez
pu

viendrez-vous quand vous
pourrez ?

viendriez-vous si vous pouviez ?
seriez-vous venue si vous aviez
pu ?

oui, je serais venue si j'avais
pu

votre frère serait venu aussi,
n'est-ce pas ?

*he might or could have come if
he had wished it*

he is to come if he can

he ought to come here to-night

*he ought to have come here this
morning*

he will come if he can

he would come if he could

*he would have come if he had
been able*

*you will come if you can, will
you not ?*

*you would come if you could,
would you not ?*

*you would have come if you had
been able*

will you come when you can ?

would you come if you could ?

*would you have come if you had
been able ?*

*yes, I would have come if I had
been able*

*your brother would have come too,
would he not ?*

NINETEENTH LESSON.

On verbs which require the two prepositions *à-de*.

commander à-de..

conseiller à-de..

convenir à-de..

défendre à-de..

demander à-de..

dire à-de..

ordonner à-de..

permettre à-de..

promettre à-de..

plaître à-de..

to command..to..

to advise, to counsel

*to suit, to become, to be
proper..to..*

to forbid, to prohibit to..

to ask..to..

to tell..to..

to order..to..

to allow, to permit..to..

to promise..to..

to please..to..

The above verbs require two prepositions *à* and *de*. *À* comes before a *noun*, or is included in the pronouns *me*, *te*, *lui*, *nous*, *vous*, *leur* ; and *de* comes before the verb that generally follows. *De* takes the place of the English preposition *to*.

EXAMPLES.

dites <i>à</i> votre frère <i>de</i> venir	<i>tell your brother to come</i>
demandez <i>à</i> votre sœur <i>de</i> chanter	<i>ask your sister to sing</i>
voulez-vous ordonner <i>à</i> cet homme <i>de</i> sortir ?	<i>will you order that man to go out?</i>
ordonnez- <i>lui de</i> se taire	<i>order him to be silent</i>
il ne <i>vous</i> convient pas <i>de</i> parler ainsi	<i>it does not become you to speak so</i>
il convient <i>à</i> mon père <i>de</i> venir ici	<i>it suits my father to come here</i>
je <i>vous</i> permets <i>de</i> partir	<i>I allow you to go</i>
promettez-moi <i>de</i> revenir.	<i>promise me to come back, or, you will come back</i>
je <i>vous</i> promets <i>de</i> revenir, si <i>vous</i> voulez <i>me</i> permettre <i>de</i> partir	<i>I promise you to come back, if you will allow me to go</i>
il plaît <i>à</i> ce garçon <i>de</i> jouer, mais il ne <i>lui</i> plaît pas <i>d'étudier</i>	<i>it pleases that boy to play, but it does not please him to study</i>
plaise <i>à</i> Dieu <i>de</i>	<i>please God</i>
plût <i>à</i> Dieu	<i>would to God</i>
<i>à</i> Dieu ne plaise	<i>God forbid</i>

TWENTIETH LESSON.

On the verb *to walk*.

The English verb *to walk*, has in French several significations :—

<i>to walk (from one place to another)</i>	{ <i>marcher</i> <i>or</i> <i>aller à pied</i>
<i>to walk, or to take a walk (for pleasure)</i>	{ <i>se promener</i> <i>or</i> <i>faire une promenade</i>

<i>to walk after</i>	<i>suivre</i>
<i>to walk in</i>	<i>entrer</i>
<i>to walk out</i>	<i>sortir</i>
<i>to walk up</i>	<i>monter</i>
<i>to walk up to</i>	<i>s'approcher de</i>

When we go out for pleasure or for the benefit of health, we go either walking, driving, riding, or in a boat. These different actions are in French, expressed by the verb to walk, *se promener*, or to take a walk, *faire une promenade*.

<i>se promener</i> or <i>faire une promenade</i>	}	<i>to walk, or to take a walk</i>	
<i>se promener</i> or <i>faire une promenade</i>	}	<i>à cheval</i>	<i>to have or take a ride</i>
		<i>en voiture</i>	<i>to take a drive</i>
		<i>en bateau</i>	<i>to have a sail</i>

When we go from one place to another, or when we travel from one place to another, we go either on foot (walking,) on horseback (riding,) in a carriage, or any kind of vehicle (riding, driving,) in a boat (sailing, or rowing,) or by rail; these different actions are in French expressed as follows :—

<i>to go walking</i>	}	<i>marcher</i> or
		<i>aller à pied</i>
<i>to go by rail</i>		<i>aller en chemin de fer</i>
<i>to go riding (on horseback)</i>		<i>aller à cheval</i>
<i>to go riding (in a vehicle)</i>		<i>aller en voiture</i>
<i>to go sailing (or rowing)</i>		<i>aller en bateau</i>

EXAMPLES.

<i>voulez-vous aller vous promener ?</i>	}	<i>will you go for a walk ?</i>
<i>voulez-vous aller faire une promenade ?</i>		
<i>nous irons nous promener à cheval</i>	}	<i>we will go for a ride, (horseback)</i>
<i>nous irons faire une promenade à cheval</i>		

allons nous promener en voi- ture	}	<i>let us go for a ride, (vehicle)</i>
allons faire une promenade en voiture		
promenons-nous en bateau	}	<i>let us have a sail, (or rowing)</i>
faisons une promenade en ba- teau		
nous irons à Londres cette après midi		<i>we will go to London this after- noon</i>
irez-vous à pied ou en voiture ?		<i>will you go walking or riding ?</i>
non, j'irai par le chemin de fer		<i>no, I shall go by rail</i>
mon frère ira à cheval		<i>my brother will go riding (on horseback)</i>
ma sœur ira en voiture		<i>my sister will ride (in any vehi- cle)</i>
et mes cousins iront à pied		<i>and my cousins will go walking</i>

TWENTY-FIRST LESSON.

On the English word *a* or *an*. differently used in French.

The English word *a* or *an*, is in French used only as a numeral adjective, and therefore merely shows the number *one*.

un homme	<i>a man</i>
une femme	<i>a woman</i>
une orange	<i>an orange</i>
un an	<i>one year</i>

When in English, the word *a*, is used to express the price of anything we buy by the pound, the yard, etc., (either measure or weight) in French the word *le*, is used instead of the word *a*; as:—

deux francs <i>la</i> bouteille	<i>two francs a bottle</i>
trois francs <i>le</i> mètre	<i>three francs a yard</i>
un franc <i>la</i> livre	<i>a franc a pound</i>
dix francs <i>la</i> douzaine	<i>ten francs a dozen, etc.</i>

When in English the same word *a* is used to express the division of time, that is to say, to show or indicate how many times a thing is done, or has been done in the day,

the week, or the year; or what we have, what we earn or lose, *a* year, etc., in French the word *par*, *by*, *per*, is used instead of the word *a*; as;

deux fois <i>par</i> semaine	<i>twice a week</i>
six fois <i>par</i> an	<i>six times a year</i>
deux ou trois fois <i>par</i> jour	<i>two or three times a day</i>
huit shillings <i>par</i> semaine	<i>eight shillings a week</i>
trois livres de pain <i>par</i> semaine	<i>three pounds of bread a week</i>
deux cents livres sterling <i>par</i> an	<i>two hundred a year</i>
il gagne trois francs <i>par</i> jour	<i>he earns three francs a day</i>
il perd quatre francs <i>par</i> semaine	<i>he loses four francs a week</i>
le pain vaut quarante centimes* <i>la</i> livre	<i>bread is worth four pence a pound</i>
le vin vaut trois francs <i>la</i> bouteille	<i>wine three francs a bottle</i>
mon frère a trois cents livres <i>par</i> an	<i>my brother has three hundred a year</i>
il va à Paris deux fois <i>par</i> an	<i>he goes to Paris twice a year</i>

TWENTY-SECOND LESSON.

On the verb to go, or to go without, *se passer de*.

je ne puis pas me passer de pain	<i>I cannot do without bread</i>
il ne peut pas se passer de vin	<i>he cannot do without wine</i>
elle ne peut pas se passer de ses fleurs	<i>she cannot do without her flowers</i>
mon frère ne peut pas se passer de vous	<i>my brother cannot do without you</i>
nous ne pouvons pas nous passer de fumer	<i>we cannot do without smoking</i>
vous ne pouvez pas vous passer de boire	<i>you cannot do without drinking</i>
ils ne peuvent pas se passer de manger	<i>they cannot do without eating</i>
ces messieurs ne peuvent pas se passer d'argent	<i>these gentlemen cannot do without money</i>

* Ten *centimes* or two *sous* are equivalent to an English penny. Five *centimes* or one *sou* equivalent to an English half-penny.

When the English verb to do, or to go without, is followed by the pronoun *it*, (to do or go without *it*,) this pronoun is then included in the French pronoun *en* which means *of it*, and *en*, must be put before the verb. (*S'en passer.*) This pronoun *en*, takes the place of the noun before mentioned.

EXAMPLES.

pouvez-vous vous passer de café?	can you go without coffee?
non, je ne puis pas m'en passer	no, I cannot go without it
votre frère peut-il se passer d'argent?	can your brother go without money?
non monsieur, il ne peut pas s'en passer	no sir, he cannot do without some
il faut que nous ayons de l'argent, car nous ne pourrions pas nous en passer	we must have money, for we shall not be able to do without some or any
vous auriez pu vous passer de moi	you might have done without me
non, je n'aurais pas pu me passer de vous	no, I could not have done with- out you

TWENTY-THIRD LESSON.

On the English words *before* and *for*.

The English word *before*, has in French *five* different meanings.

before	devant	preposition, in front of, opposite to, in the presence of
	avant	preposition marking the priority of time or order
	avant que	conjunction connecting two sentences together
	avant de	preposition used before a verb in the infinitive mood
	suparavant	adverb that cannot be followed by any régime or complément

devant is *before* opposed to behind.

avant is *before* opposed to after.

EXAMPLES.

les hommes sont égaux <i>devant</i>	<i>men are equal before the law</i>
la loi	
nous sommes tous égaux <i>devant</i>	<i>we are all equal before the law of</i>
la loi du pays	<i>the country</i>
mon frère est <i>devant</i> la porte	<i>my brother is before the door</i>
mon frère est arrivé <i>avant</i> vous	<i>my brother has arrived before you</i>
nous partirons demain matin	<i>we shall set out to-morrow morn-</i>
<i>avant</i> six heures	<i>ing before six o'clock</i>
vous ne partirez pas <i>avant que</i>	<i>you will not start before we are</i>
nous soyons prêts	<i>ready</i>
nous ne partirons pas <i>avant de</i>	<i>we shall not start before we have</i>
vous avoir vu	<i>seen you</i>
je viendrai vous voir <i>avant</i>	<i>I will come and see you before.</i>
<i>que</i> vous ayez fini	<i>you have done</i>
je viendrai vous voir <i>avant</i>	<i>I will come and see you before</i>
<i>d'</i> aller à Paris	<i>I go to Paris</i>
si vous venez, venez <i>avant</i>	<i>if you come, come before ten</i>
dix heures	<i>o'clock</i>
vous irez à Paris si vous voulez,	<i>you will go to Paris if you like,</i>
mais il faut que vous ap-	<i>but you must learn French</i>
preniez le Français <i>aupara-</i>	<i>before</i>
<i>vant</i>	
mon frère veut être médecin,	<i>my brother wishes to be a phy-</i>
mais il faut qu'il étudie	<i>sician, but he must study a</i>
beaucoup <i>auparavant</i>	<i>great deal before</i>

The English word *for*, has in French four different meanings.

for	{	<i>pour</i>	<i>preposition (for)</i>
		<i>car</i>	<i>conjunction connecting one sentence with</i>
			<i>another (because)</i>
		<i>depuis</i>	<i>preposition expressing time past (since)</i>
		<i>pendant</i>	<i>preposition expressing a certain duration</i>
			<i>of time (during)</i>

EXAMPLES.

j'ai apporté ces fruits <i>pour</i> vo-	<i>I have brought this fruit for</i>
tre frère	<i>your brother</i>
j'ai apporté ces pommes <i>pour</i>	<i>I have brought these apples for</i>
votre frère, <i>car</i> je sais qu'il	<i>your brother, for I know he</i>
les aime	<i>likes them</i>
je ne vous ai pas vu <i>depuis</i>	<i>I have not seen you since yester-</i>
hier	<i>day</i>

je ne vous ai pas vu <i>depuis</i> long-temps	<i>I have not seen you for a long time</i>
nous irons à Paris <i>pour</i> une semaine	<i>we will go to Paris for a week</i>
nous avons demeuré à Paris <i>pendant</i> quelque temps	<i>we have lived in Paris for some time</i>
je vous donnerai un shilling <i>pour</i> votre peine	<i>I will give you a shilling for your trouble</i>
je vous donnerai un shilling, <i>car</i> vous avez été bon garçon	<i>I will give you a shilling, for you have been a good boy</i>
ce pain est <i>pour</i> vous, <i>car</i> vous avez faim	<i>this bread is for you, for you are hungry</i>
donnez-moi un verre d'eau, <i>car</i> j'ai grand soif	<i>give me a glass of water, for I am very thirsty</i>

TWENTY-FOURTH LESSON.

On the English words *since* and *but*.

The English word *since*, has in French three significations.

since	{	depuis	<i>preposition expressing time past</i>
		depuis que	<i>conjunction connecting one sentence with another</i>
		puisque	<i>conjunction expressing the cause for which we act (as)</i>

EXAMPLES.

il est à Londres <i>depuis</i> hier	<i>he has been in London since yes- terday</i>
il n'a rien mangé <i>depuis</i> Mardi matin	<i>he has eaten nothing since Tues- day morning</i>
il n'a rien mangé <i>depuis que</i> vous êtes ici	<i>he has not eaten anything since you have been here</i>
je ne l'ai pas vu <i>depuis</i> son re- tour	<i>I have not seen him since his re- turn</i>
je ne l'ai pas vu <i>depuis qu'il</i> est revenu	<i>I have not seen him since he has returned</i>
je chanterai <i>puisque</i> vous le voulez	<i>I will sing since you wish it</i>
<i>puisque</i> vous êtes si industrieux je vous donnerai quelque chose	<i>since you are so industrious I will give you something</i>

vous aurez quelque chose de bon, *puisque* vous avez été bon garçon

you ~~will~~ have something good, since (or as) you have been a good boy

The English word *but*, has in French four different meanings.

but.	mais	conjunction, connecting one sentence with another (<i>but</i>)
	ne-que	adverb of negation (<i>but, only</i>)
	seulement	adverb (<i>only</i>)
	excepté	preposition (<i>but, except</i>)

EXAMPLES.

je vous aurais écrit beaucoup plus tôt, *mais* réellement je n'ai pas eu le temps

I would have written to you much sooner, but really I had no time

nous voudrions aller à Paris, *mais* nous n'avons pas d'argent

we should like to go to Paris, but we have no money

nous n'avons *que* trois shillings, *mais* nous en aurons bientôt davantage

we have but three shillings, but we shall soon have some more

votre frère est un très beau garçon, *mais* le mien est beaucoup plus beau

your brother is a very handsome boy, but mine is much handsomer

si j'avais *seulement* dix mille livres, j'irais voir mon cousin qui demeure à Rome

if I had but ten thousand pounds, I would go and see my cousin who lives in Rome

si j'avais *seulement* le temps de lui parler

if I had but the time to speak to him

si nous pouvions *seulement* parler Français

if we could but speak French

ils iront tous à Paris *excepté* moi

they all will go to Paris but me

ils sont tous invités *excepté* vous

they are all invited but you

TWENTY-FIFTH LESSON.

On the English word *what*.

The English word *what*, has in French four different significations.

what	quel m. quelle	used before a noun, and before the verb to be
	que	used before a verb (means what thing)
	ce que	used as a conjunction to connect two sentences together
	quoi	preceded or followed by a preposition
	quoi ?	interrogation ! exclamation !
	quel livre lisez-vous ?	what book are you reading ?
	quels livres avez-vous lus ?	what books have you read ?
	quelle grammaire avez-vous apprise ?	what grammar have you learnt ?
	quel jour pouvez-vous venir ?	what day can you come ?
	quelle robe mettez-vous ce soir ?	what dress will you put on this evening ?
	quel est le nom de cette fleur ?	what is the name of this flower ?
	quelle fleur voulez-vous dire ?	which flower do you mean ?
	que faites-vous monsieur ?	
	qu'est-ce que vous faites monsieur ?	what are you doing sir ?
	qu'avez-vous fait ?	
	qu'est-ce que vous avez fait ?	what have you been doing ?
	que voulez-vous dire ?	
	qu'est-ce que vous voulez dire ?	what do you mean ?
	que voulez-vous ?	
	qu'est-ce que vous voulez ?	what do you wish ? what do you want ?
	que voulez-vous prendre ?	
	qu'est-ce que vous voulez prendre ?	what will you take ? what do you wish to take ?
	qu'avez-vous mangé ?	
	qu'est-ce que vous avez mangé ?	what have you been eating ?
	savez-vous ce que vous faites ?	do you know what you are doing ?
	savez-vous ce que vous avez fait ?	do you know what you have been doing ?
	je ne sais pas ce que vous dites	I do not know what you say
	je ne sais pas ce que vous avez dit	I do not know what you have been saying
	il ne comprend pas ce que vous dites	he does not understand what you say
	il n'a pas compris ce que vous avez dit	he did not understand what you said
	qu'est-ce qui vous fait rire ?	what makes you laugh ?

dites-moi <i>ce qui</i> vous fait rire	<i>tell me what makes you laugh</i>
je ne sais pas <i>ce qui</i> vous fait rire	<i>I do not know what makes you laugh</i>
<i>ce que</i> vous dites est vrai	<i>what you say is true</i>
<i>qu'est-ce que c'est ?</i>	<i>what is it ?</i>
<i>qu'est-ce que c'est que cela ?</i>	<i>what is that ?</i>
<i>qu'est-ce que cela fait ?</i>	<i>what does it signify ?</i>
	<i>what does it matter ?</i>
	<i>what is that to you ?</i>
<i>qu'est-ce que cela vous fait ?</i>	<i>what does it signify to you ?</i>
	<i>what does it matter to you ?</i>
<i>à quoi attribuez-vous cela ?</i>	<i>to what do you attribute this or that ?</i>
avec <i>quoi</i> avez-vous fait <i>cela ?</i>	<i>with what did you do that ?</i>
	<i>with what have you done this ?</i>

TWENTY-SIXTH LESSON.

On the English word *that*.

The English word *that*, has in French several significations

that	{	ce m. or cette f.	<i>used only before nouns</i>
		ce	<i>demonstrative pronoun, used before the verb to be</i>
		qui	<i>relative pronoun nominative to a verb</i>
		que	<i>relative pronoun objective to a verb</i>
		que	<i>conjunction connecting one sentence with another</i>
		celui de or celle de	<i>demonstrative pronoun (that of)</i>
		celui-ci or celle-ci	<i>demonstrative pronoun (this one nearest)</i>
		celui-là or celle-là	<i>demonstrative pronoun (that one farthest)</i>
		cela	<i>demonstrative pronoun, meaning that thing without naming it</i>

EXAMPLES.

<i>ce garçon est très industrieux</i>	<i>that boy is very industrious</i>
<i>cette fille est très industrieuse</i>	<i>that girl is very industrious</i>
<i>c'est un beau cheval</i>	<i>that is a fine horse</i>
<i>ce n'est pas un beau cheval</i>	<i>that is not a fine horse</i>

c'est une belle jument
ce n'est pas une belle jument
c'est mon frère
c'est ma sœur
ce sont mes chevaux
ce sont de très beaux chevaux
est-ce là votre maison ?
sont-ce là vos chevaux ?
le monsieur qui parle est mon
frère
connaissez-vous la dame qui
chante ?
donnez-moi le livre qui est sur
la table
donnez-moi le livre que vous
venez de lire
le garçon qui est dans le
jardin
le garçon que vous avez vu
dans le jardin
connaissez-vous cette fille qui
est dans cette chambre ?
connaissez-vous cette femme
que j'ai vue dans cette
chambre ?
je pense que je la connais
pensez-vous qu'elle viendra ce
soir ?
on dit que son frère vient avec
elle
je crois que son frère ne
viendra pas
pourquoi pensez-vous qu'il ne
viendra pas ?
parce que je crois qu'il est
à Londres
j'ai lu mon livre et celui de
mon frère
j'ai mangé ma pomme et celle
de ma sœur
voici deux livres, prenez celui-
ci et laissez celui-là
voici deux oranges, mangez
celle-ci et gardez celle-là

this is a fine mare
this is not a fine mare
this is my brother
that is my sister
these are my horses
these are very fine horses
is that your house ?
are these your horses ?
the gentleman that speaks is my
brother
do you know the lady that is
singing ?
give me the book that is on the
table
give me the book that you have
just read
the boy that is in the garden

the boy that you saw in the
garden
do you know that girl that is in
that room ?
do you know that woman that I
have seen in that room ?

I think I know her
do you think she will come to-
night ?
they say her brother is coming
with her
I think her brother will not come

why do you think he will not
come ?
because I think he is in London

I have read my book and that
of my brother
I have eaten my apple and that
of my sister
here are two books, take this and
leave that
here are two oranges, eat this
and keep that

qui vous a dit de faire <i>cela</i> ?	who told you to do that ?
qu'est-ce que <i>cela</i> fait ?	{ what does it matter ? what does it signify ?
qu'est-ce que <i>cela</i> vous fait ?	{ what is that to you ? what does it matter to you ? what does that signify to you ?
<i>cela</i> ne fait rien	that does not matter, it does not signify
<i>cela</i> ne vous fait rien	that is nothing to you, it does not matter to you
<i>cela</i> ne vous regarde pas	that is no business of yours, that does not concern you
<i>cela</i> m'est égal	I don't care, that is indifferent to me
<i>cela</i> m'est bien égal	I don't care a pin, it is perfectly indifferent to me

TWENTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

On the French word *quelque*, whatever or however.

The French word *quelque*, has three different spellings.

1st. Before the verb to be, *quelque* is written in two words, *quel que* ; in this case the word *quel*, is an *indefinite adjective*, and must agree with the nominative of the verb to be : the second word *que*, is a conjunction, and remains invariable, the verb to be that follows *que*, must be in the *subjunctive mood*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>quel que</i> soit votre talent	whatever your talent may be
<i>quelle que</i> soit votre fortune	whatever your fortune may be
<i>quels que</i> soient vos talents	whatever your talents may be
<i>quelles que</i> soient vos pensées	whatever your thoughts may be

2nd. Before a noun, *quelque* is written in one word, and must agree in number with that noun ; the word *que*, is put after the noun, and the verb that follows must be in the *subjunctive mood*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>quelque</i> fortune <i>que</i> vous ayez	<i>whatever</i> fortune you may have
<i>quelque</i> raison <i>que</i> vous don- niez	<i>whatever</i> reason you may give
<i>quelques</i> talents <i>que</i> vous pos- sédiez	<i>whatever</i> talents you may possess
<i>quelques</i> livres <i>que</i> vous lisiez	<i>whatever</i> books you may read

3rd. Before an adjective, *quelque* is written in one word, and must remain *invariable*; the word *que*, is put after the adjective, and the verb that follows must be in the *subjunctive mood*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>quelque</i> beau <i>que</i> soit votre frère	<i>however</i> handsome your brother may be
<i>quelque</i> belle <i>que</i> soit votre sœur	<i>however</i> handsome your sister may be
<i>quelque</i> grande <i>que</i> soit votre fortune	<i>however</i> great your fortune may be
<i>quelque</i> grandes <i>que</i> soient vos écuries	<i>however</i> large your stables may be
<i>quelque</i> petit <i>que</i> soit votre revenu	<i>however</i> small your income may be

EXAMPLES ON THE THREE SPELLINGS OF THE FRENCH WORD QUELQUE.

whatever or however	{	quel que	before the verb to be, is written in two words
	{	quelques	before a noun plural, takes an s
	{	quelque	before an adjective, is invariable
whatever	{	quoi que	quoi que vous fassiez, <i>whatever</i> you do
	{	tout ce qui	tout ce qui est juste, <i>whatever</i> is right
	{	tout ce que	tout ce que vous voudrez, <i>whatever</i> you like

quel que soit votre ordre je m'y conformerai
je me conformerai à votre ordre *quel qu'*il soit
quelle que soit son intention nous devons la respecter
nous devons respecter votre intention *quelle qu'*elle soit

quels que soient vos ordres ils seront exécutés
 vos ordres seront exécutés *quels qu'ils* soient
quelles que soient vos pensées je les devine
 je puis deviner vos pensées *quelles qu'elles* soient
quelque fortune que vous possédiez soyez toujours modeste et
 affable
 soyez toujours content de votre sort *quel qu'il* soit
quelques livres que vous lisiez vous devez les montrer à votre mère
quelques services que vous lui ayez rendus il vous en a toujours
 payé
quelqu' attention que vous fassiez vous ne pourrez jamais réussir
 vous ne pourrez jamais le comprendre *quelqu'* attentivement que
 vous l'écoutez
 il vous a toujours blâmé *quelles qu'aient* été vos intentions
quelque belle que soit votre sœur la mienne est plus belle encore
quelque beaux que soient vos frères ils ne sont pas si beaux que
 les miens
quelqu' industrieux que vous soyez je suis plus industrieux que
 vous

TWENTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

On the English preposition *to*.

The English preposition *to*, has in French several significations.

to	à	used before an infinitive, after certain verbs and certain adjectives (see page 284)
	de	used before an infinitive, after certain verbs and certain adjectives (see page 285)
	chez	to a person's house
	pour	for to, in order to, for the purpose of . .
	en	we do not go to a country, we go into a country
	jusqu'à	up to
	envers	towards

EXAMPLES.

avez-vous quelque chose à faire ?	have you anything to do ?
n'avez-vous rien à me dire ?	have you nothing to tell me ?
j'ai beaucoup de choses à vous dire	I have a great many things to tell you

je n'ai pas le temps <i>de</i> vous parler maintenant	<i>I have no time to speak to you now</i>
avez-vous le temps <i>de</i> venir me voir ?	<i>have you time to come and see me ?</i>
aurai-je le plaisir <i>de</i> vous voir demain ?	<i>shall I have the pleasure to see you to-morrow ?</i>
avez-vous fini <i>de</i> lire votre lettre ?	<i>have you finished reading (to read) your letter ?</i>
avez-vous fini <i>de</i> pleurer ?	<i>have you finished crying ?</i>
nous n'avons rien <i>à</i> manger	<i>we have nothing to eat</i>
nous n'avons pas le temps <i>de</i> rester ici	<i>we have no time to stay here</i>
je suis bien aise <i>de</i> vous voir	<i>I am very glad to see you</i>
je serai bien heureux <i>de</i> vous voir	<i>I shall be very happy to see you</i>
que je suis content <i>de</i> vous voir !	<i>how pleased I am to see you !</i>
je suis bien fâché <i>de</i> vous avoir déplu	<i>I am very sorry to have displeased you</i>
voulez-vous aller <i>chez</i> Monsieur L. ?	<i>will you go to Mr. L.'s ?</i>
nous n'avons pas le temps <i>d'</i> aller <i>chez</i> Monsieur L.	<i>we have no time to go to Mr. L.'s</i>
vous êtes trop jeune <i>pour</i> aller <i>en</i> France	<i>you are too young to go to France</i>
je ne ne suis pas trop jeune <i>pour</i> apprendre le Français	<i>I am not too young to learn French</i>
j'ai besoin <i>de</i> vous parler	<i>I want to speak to you</i>
j'ai besoin <i>d'</i> argent <i>pour</i> aller <i>en</i> France	<i>I want money to go to France</i>
vous n'avez pas besoin <i>d'</i> aller <i>en</i> France <i>pour</i> apprendre <i>à</i> parler Français	<i>you do not want to go to France to learn how to speak French</i>
nous sommes mouillés <i>jusqu'</i> à la peau	<i>we are wet to the skin</i>
nous étions dans l'eau <i>jusqu'</i> -aux genoux	<i>we were in the water up to the knees</i>
il est très bon <i>envers</i> tout le monde	<i>he is very kind to everybody</i>
soyez bon et généreux <i>envers</i> les pauvres	<i>be kind and generous to the poor</i>
ne soyez pas cruel <i>envers</i> les animaux	<i>do not be cruel to animals</i>

TWENTY-NINTH LESSON.

On the English preposition *in*.

The English preposition *in*, has in French several significations.

in	dans	<i>has a precise and definite meaning, and must be followed by the article, or by a determinative adjective, as ; dans le jardin, dans ma chambre, etc.</i>
	en	<i>has a vague and undefined meaning, and is not followed by the article, nor by a determinative adjective, as ; il est en France, il est en prison, etc.</i>
	à	<i>at (to be in the sun, in the shade, in time)</i>
	par	<i>by (speaking of the weather) par un temps pareil, in such weather</i>
	juste	<i>just (in tune)</i>

EXAMPLES.

votre frère est <i>dans</i> le jardin	<i>your brother is in the garden</i>
votre sœur est-elle <i>dans</i> sa chambre ?	<i>is your sister in her room ?</i>
nous vous avons vu <i>dans</i> la salle à manger	<i>we saw you in the dining room</i>
nous irons <i>en</i> France <i>dans</i> une quinzaine	<i>we shall go to France in a fortnight</i>
nous n'irons pas <i>en</i> Allemagne cette année	<i>we shall not go to Germany this year</i>
pourquoi n'écrivez-vous pas <i>en</i> Allemand ?	<i>why do you not write in German ?</i>
je préfère écrire <i>en</i> Français	<i>I prefer to write in French</i>
il est <i>en</i> prison je crois	<i>he is in prison I believe</i>
il est <i>dans</i> la prison de Norwich	<i>he is in the prison of Norwich</i>
ils demeurent <i>d</i> Londres	<i>they live in London</i>
mon frère ira demeurer <i>d</i> Paris	<i>my brother will go and live in Paris</i>
quand vous demeurerez <i>d</i> Paris j'irai vous voir	<i>when you live in Paris I shall go and see you</i>
mon frère est <i>d</i> Paris	<i>my brother is in Paris</i>
ma sœur est <i>d</i> Londres	<i>my sister is in London</i>

<i>vous ne pouvez pas sortir par</i>	<i>you cannot go out in such wea-</i>
<i>un temps pareil</i>	<i>ther</i>
<i>nous allâmes en Italie par un</i>	<i>we went to Italy in fine weather</i>
<i>beau temps</i>	
<i>ce monsieur chante juste</i>	<i>that gentleman sings in tune</i>
<i>je ne puis pas jouer juste</i>	<i>I cannot play in tune</i>
<i>pourquoi restez vous au soleil ?</i>	<i>why do you stay in the sun ?</i>
<i>parce que je ne veux pas être</i>	<i>because I do not wish to be in the</i>
<i>d l'ombre</i>	<i>shade</i>
<i>je crois que nous n'arriverons</i>	<i>I believe we shall not arrive in</i>
<i>pas à temps</i>	<i>time</i>
<i>j'espère que nous y serons à</i>	<i>I hope we shall be there in time</i>
<i>temps</i>	

THIRTIETH LESSON.

On the English word *out*.The English word *out*, has in French various significations.

out	{	hors	<i>out of</i>
		dehors	<i>out (out of doors)</i>
		sortir	<i>to go out</i>
		éteint, e	<i>out, (the fire is out)</i>
		mort, e	<i>out, (the candle is out)</i>
		fini	<i>out, (finished)</i>
		haut	<i>out, (loud)</i>
		par	<i>out, (through)</i>
		faux	<i>out, (out of tune)</i>
		dans	<i>the English drink out of a glass, the French</i>
	<i>drink in a glass</i>		
	sur	<i>out of a hundred</i>	
	jusqu'au bout	<i>out, (hear me out)</i>	

EXAMPLES

<i>je suis hors d'haleine</i>	<i>I am out of breath</i>
<i>pourquoi êtes-vous hors d'haleine ?</i>	<i>why are you out of breath ?</i>
<i>parce que je suis venu trop vite</i>	<i>because I came too fast</i>
<i>il est tout-à-fait hors de son élément</i>	<i>he is quite out of his element</i>
<i>le vaisseau est tout-à-fait hors de vue</i>	<i>the ship is quite out of sight</i>

mettez ce chien *dehors*, il fait
trop de bruit

avez-vous mis les chevaux *dehors* ?

pourquoi avez-vous mis les
chevaux *hors* de l'écurie ?

parce qu'ils sont mieux *dehors*
que dedans

vous ne devriez pas rester *dehors*
quand il pleut

où est votre frère ? il est *sorti*
mon frère est *sorti*, ma sœur
est *sortie*

le feu est *éteint*, la chandelle
est *éteinte*

le feu est *mort*, la chandelle
est *morte*

mon temps est *fini*

la bouteille est *finie*

parlez *haut* si vous voulez
qu'on vous entende

regardez *par* la fenêtre

pourquoi buvez-vous *dans* ce
verre ?

il aime à boire *dans* un gobelet
d'argent

vous chantez *faux* mon ami
sur cent personnes qu'il y avait
trois furent tuées

vous réussirez trois fois *sur*
cinq

il faut que vous m'écoutez
jusqu' au bout monsieur

*put this dog out, it makes too
much noise*

have you put the horses out ?

*why did you put the horses out of
the stable ?*

*because they are better out than
in*

*you should not stay out when it
rains*

*where is your brother ? he is out
my brother is out, my sister is
out*

the fire is out, the candle is out

the fire is out, the candle is out

my time is out

the bottle is out

*speak out if you wish to be
heard*

look out of the window

*why do you drink out of that
glass ?*

*he likes to drink out of a silver
mug*

*you sing out of tune my friend
out of a hundred persons that
there were, three were killed*

*you will succeed three times out
of five*

you must hear me out sir

THIRTY-FIRST LESSON.

On the English preposition *by*.

The English preposition *by*, has in French several significations.

by	par	<i>used with verbs expressing a bodily action</i>
	de	<i>used with passive verbs expressing the feelings or the affection of the soul</i>
	de	<i>used with comparatives, and also in knowing by sight or name</i>
	en	<i>used before the present participle of a verb</i>
	près de	<i>expresses proximity, nearness</i>
	à	<i>expresses an epoch, and also the hour marked by a watch or a clock</i>
	à	<i>used to express that anything is sold by the pound, by the bushel, etc. (weight or measure)</i>
	sur	<i>used before cardinal numbers, expressing dimensions</i>

EXAMPLES.

your frère a été mordu par un petit chien	<i>your brother has been bitten by a little dog</i>
un grand garçon a été battu par un petit	<i>a great boy was beaten by a little one</i>
your sœur est aimée de tout le monde	<i>your sister is loved by everybody</i>
your cousin est respecté de tous ceux qui le connaissent	<i>your cousin is respected by all those that know him</i>
vous êtes aimé et estimé de tous vos amis	<i>you are loved and esteemed by all your friends</i>
je suis plus vieux que vous de trois ans	<i>I am three years older than you</i>
j'ai trois ans de plus que vous	
mon cousin a quatre pouces de plus que vous	<i>my cousin is taller than you by three inches</i>
mon cousin est plus grand que vous de quatre pouces	
elle a six ans de moins que lui	<i>she is six years younger than he</i>
elle est plus jeune que lui de six ans	
ma chambre est plus grande que la vôtre de beaucoup	<i>my room is larger than yours by much</i>
il a perdu sa fortune en jouant	<i>he lost his fortune by gambling</i>
il s'est ruiné en négligeant ses affaires	<i>he ruined himself by neglecting his business</i>
il gagne sa vie en travaillant	<i>he earns his living by working</i>
il a fait sa fortune en vendant des fruits	<i>he made his fortune by selling fruit</i>
connaissez-vous Monsieur L. . . ?	<i>do you know Mr. L. . . ?</i>

je le connais seulement <i>de</i> vue	<i>I know him only by sight</i>
je connais un monsieur <i>du</i> nom de	<i>I know a gentleman by the name of</i>
asseyez-vous <i>près de</i> moi	<i>sit down by me</i>
allez vous asseoir <i>près de</i> votre mère	<i>go and sit down by your mother</i>
quelle heure est-il <i>d</i> votre mon- tre ?	<i>what is the time by your watch ?</i>
il est huit heures <i>d</i> la montre de mon père	<i>it is eight by my father's watch</i>
aurez-vous fini <i>d</i> Noël ?	<i>will you have done by Christmas ?</i>
j'espère que nous y serons <i>d</i> neuf heures	<i>I hope we shall be there by nine o'clock</i>
le beurre se vend <i>d</i> la livre	<i>butter is sold by the pound</i>
les pommes de terre se vendent <i>au</i> boisseau	<i>potatoes are sold by the bushel</i>
cette chambre a seize pieds <i>de</i> long <i>sur</i> douze de large	<i>this room is sixteen feet long by twelve wide</i>
ce mur a vingt pieds <i>de</i> lon- gueur <i>sur</i> trois pieds <i>d'</i> épais- seur	<i>this wall is twenty feet long by three feet thick</i>
un puits de trois cents mètres <i>de</i> profondeur	<i>a well of three hundred metres* deep</i>
cet arbre a cinquante pieds <i>de</i> haut <i>ou de</i> hauteur	<i>that tree is fifty feet high</i>

THIRTY-SECOND LESSON.

On the English preposition *with*.

The English preposition *with*, has in French two signifi-
cations.

with	{	avec	<i>is used to express the union, the connection, the simultaneousness</i>
		de	<i>is used instead of avec, with certain adjectives and certain past participles. (See page 286.)</i>

* A *mètre* is three French feet long, and a little more than an
English yard.

EXAMPLES.

voulez-vous aller <i>avec</i> nous ce soir ?	<i>will you go with us to-night ?</i>
je ne puis pas aller <i>avec</i> vous aujourd'hui	<i>I cannot go with you to-day</i>
j'irai à Paris <i>avec</i> mon père et ma mère, s'ils sont contents de moi	<i>I shall go to Paris with my father and mother, if they are pleased with me</i>
j'espère qu'ils seront contents de vous, et que vous irez à Paris <i>avec</i> eux	<i>I hope they will be pleased with you, and that you will go to Paris with them</i>
pourquoi votre frère était-il si mécontent de sa situation ?	<i>why was your brother so much dissatisfied with his situation ?</i>
parce qu'il est toujours mécontent de tout	<i>because he is always dissatisfied with everything</i>
votre chapeau est couvert de poussière	<i>your hat is covered with dust</i>
ce pauvre homme est couvert de sang	<i>that poor man is covered with blood</i>
une belle chambre ornée de beaux tableaux	<i>a beautiful room ornamented with beautiful pictures</i>
un beau cheval blanc décoré de rubans bleus	<i>a beautiful white horse decorated with blue ribbons</i>
ce monsieur est décoré d'une médaille	<i>that gentleman is decorated with a medal</i>
l'Empereur l'a décoré de ses propres mains	<i>the Emperor decorated him with his own hands</i>
<i>avec</i> quoi vous êtes-vous coupé le doigt ?	<i>with what did you cut your finger ?</i>
je me suis coupé le doigt <i>avec</i> mon canif	<i>I cut my finger with my pen-knife</i>
<i>avec</i> quoi s'est-il fait mal à la main ?	<i>with what did he hurt his hand ?</i>
il s'est fait mal <i>avec</i> son couteau	<i>he hurt his hand with his knife</i>
<i>avec</i> qui couchez-vous ?	<i>with whom do you sleep ?</i>
je ne couche <i>avec</i> personne	<i>I sleep with nobody</i>
et je me lève <i>avec</i> le soleil	<i>and I rise with the sun</i>

DIALOGUES ON FAMILIAR, IDIOMATICAL, AND USEFUL SUBJECTS.

FIRST DIALOGUE.

bonjour monsieur	<i>good morning sir</i>
bonsoir madame	<i>good evening madam</i>
comment vous portez-vous ?	<i>how do you do ?</i>
très bien monsieur, je vous remercie	<i>very well sir, I thank you</i>
assez bien madame, je vous remercie	<i>pretty well madam, I thank you</i>
pas très bien	<i>not very well</i>
qu'avez-vous ?	<i>what is the matter with you ?</i>
qu'est-ce que vous avez ?	<i>I have been very ill</i>
j'ai été très malade	
qu'avez-vous eu ?	<i>what has been the matter with you ?</i>
qu'est-ce que vous avez eu ?	<i>I had a very violent cold</i>
j'ai eu un rhume très violent	<i>I was obliged to keep in bed for a week</i>
j'ai été obligé de garder le lit pendant huit jours	<i>what did you take ?</i>
qu'avez-vous pris ?	<i>the doctor gave me something</i>
qu'est-ce que vous avez pris ?	<i>what was that ?</i>
le docteur m'a donné quelque chose	<i>do you know what it was ?</i>
qu'est-ce que c'est ?	<i>no, I do not know it, but it did me a great deal of good</i>
savez-vous ce que c'était ?	<i>are you better now ?</i>
non, je ne le sais pas, mais cela m'a fait beaucoup de bien	<i>yes, I am much better</i>
êtes-vous mieux maintenant ?	<i>I am very glad of it</i>
oui, je suis beaucoup mieux	
j'en suis bien aise	

SECOND DIALOGUE.

à quelle heure vous levez-vous ?	<i>at what time do you rise ?</i>
je me lève généralement à huit heures	<i>I generally rise at eight o'clock</i>
à quelle heure déjeûnez-vous ?	<i>at what time do you breakfast ?</i>

nous déjeûnons tous les jours à dix heures	<i>we breakfast every day at ten o'clock</i>
que faites-vous après déjeû- ner ?	
qu'est-ce que vous faites après déjeûner ?	<i>what do you do after breakfast ?</i>
quelquefois je vais me pro- mener, or, je vais faire une promenade	<i>sometimes I go for a walk</i>
vous promenez-vous tous les matins ?	
faites-vous une promenade tous les matins ?	<i>do you take a walk every morn- ing ?</i>
non, quelquefois je reste chez moi pour étudier mes leçons	<i>no, sometimes I stay at home to study my lessons</i>
étudiez-vous beaucoup ?	<i>do you study much ?</i>
j'étudie toujours jusqu'à ce que je sache mes leçons par- faitement par cœur	<i>I always study until I know my lessons perfectly by heart</i>
apprenez-vous le Français ?	<i>do you learn French ?</i>
oui monsieur, et la musique aussi	<i>yes sir, and music too</i>
combien y a-t-il que vous ap- prenez ?	<i>how long have you learnt ?</i>
y a-t-il longtemps que vous apprenez ?	<i>have you learnt long ?</i>
il y a seulement un trimestre	<i>only a quarter</i>
il y a un semestre que j'ap- prends le Français	<i>I have learnt French half a year</i>
faites-vous des progrès ?	<i>do you improve ?</i>
pas aussi rapides que je le voudrais	<i>not so rapidly as I should like</i>
le trouvez-vous difficile ?	<i>do you find it difficult ?</i>
pas beaucoup	<i>not very</i>
pouvez-vous comprendre quand on vous parle ?	<i>can you understand when you are spoken to ?</i>
je puis comprendre très facile- ment, mais je ne puis pas encore converser	<i>I can understand very easily, but I cannot converse yet</i>
persévérez et vous réussirez	<i>persevere and you will succeed</i>

THIRD DIALOGUE.

que ferons-nous aujourd'hui ? qu'est-ce que nous ferons au- jourd'hui ?	} <i>what shall we do to-day ?</i>
nous irons nous promener nous irons faire une prome- nade	} <i>we shall go for a walk</i>
par où irons nous ?	<i>which way shall we go ?</i>
par où vous voudrez	<i>which way you like</i>
jusqu' où irons-nous ?	<i>how far shall we go ?</i>
jusqu' où vous voudrez	<i>as far as you like</i>
quand partirons-nous ?	<i>when shall we go ?</i>
quand vous voudrez	<i>whenever you like</i>
tout de suite si vous voulez	<i>directly if you like</i>
comme vous voudrez	<i>just as you like</i>
nous irons jusque chez mon- sieur B	<i>we will go as far as Mr. B's</i>
nous irons jusqu' à Thorpe	<i>we will go as far as Thorpe</i>
non merci, c'est trop loin pour moi	<i>no thank you, it is too far for me</i>
il n'y a pas plus de deux milles	<i>it is not more than two miles</i>
je ne puis pas aller si loin	<i>I cannot go so far</i>
je préfère rester à la maison	<i>I prefer to stay at home</i>
voulez-vous que je reste avec vous ?	<i>do you wish me to stay with you ?</i>
si vous voulez	<i>if you like</i>
je resterai avec vous alors	<i>I will stay with you then</i>

FOURTH DIALOGUE.

voulez-vous faire une partie d'échecs ?	<i>will you have a game of chess ?</i>
je ne sais pas le jeu	<i>I do not know the game</i>
je ne puis pas jouer aux échecs	<i>I cannot play at chess</i>
mais je puis jouer aux dames	<i>but I can play at draughts</i>
je n'aime pas les dames	<i>I do not like draughts</i>
je préfère les échecs	<i>I prefer chess</i>
apportez le damier et l'échi- quier	<i>bring the draught-board and the chess-board</i>
mettez les pions sur le damier	<i>put the pawns (draughts men) on the draught board</i>

mettez les pièces sur l'échi-
quier
qui va commencer ?

je commencerai si vous voulez
je ne puis pas jouer avec vous,
vous êtes trop fort pour moi
pouvez-vous battre votre frère ?
aux échecs, ou aux dames ?
aux échecs et aux dames
je puis le battre aux dames,
mais je ne puis pas le battre
aux échecs

jouez-vous aux cartes ?
non, je n'aime pas les cartes
je n'ai jamais touché un jeu
de cartes
jouez-vous au billard ?
oui, un peu, je ne suis pas fort

voulez-vous faire une partie ?
nous ferons une partie si vous
voulez

eh bien, commençons
vous avez perdu, vous êtes
battu

voulez-vous faire une autre
partie ?

non, pas maintenant, je suis
fatigué

que voulez-vous faire main-
tenant ?

qu'est-ce que vous voulez faire
maintenant ?

allons nous promener

allons faire une promenade

*put the pieces (chess men) on
the chess board
who is going to begin ? or who
will begin ?*

*I will begin if you like
I cannot play with you, you are
too much for me
can you beat your brother ?
at chess, or at draughts ?
at chess and at draughts
I can beat him at draughts, but
I cannot beat him at chess*

*do you play at cards ?
no, I do not like cards
I have never touched a pack of
cards*

*do you play at billiards ?
yes, a little, I am not a good
player*

*will you have a game ?
we will have a game if you like*

*well, let us begin
you have lost the game, you are
beaten*

will you have another game ?

no, not now, I am tired

what will you do now ?

let us go for a walk

FIFTH DIALOGUE.

combien y a-t-il que vous êtes
ici ?

y a-t-il long-temps que vous
êtes ici ?

how long have you been here ?

have you been here long ?

il y a environ trois heures

we have been here about three hours

qu'avez-vous fait depuis que vous êtes ici ?

what have you been doing since you have been here ?

nous avons lu

we have been reading

qu'avez-vous lu ?

what have you been reading ?

qu'est-ce que vous avez lu ?

we have been reading the French newspaper

nous avons lu les journaux Français

qu'y a-t-il de nouveau ?

what news ? or anything news ?

qu'est-ce qu'il ya de nouveau ?

nothing very important

rien de bien important

do you sometimes read French poetry ?

lisez-vous quelquefois la poésie Française ?

sometimes, but not very often

quelquefois, mais pas très souvent

pouvez-vous la comprendre ?

can you understand it ?

assez bien

pretty well

vous devriez apprendre quelques lignes par cœur tous les jours

you ought to learn a few lines by heart every day

c'est précisément ce que nous faisons

it is precisely what we do

vous avez parfaitement raison, car c'est le meilleur moyen de vous familiariser avec la prononciation Française

you are perfectly right, for it is the very best plan to familiarise yourselves with the French pronunciation

SIXTH DIALOGUE.

bonjour mon ami

good morning my friend

comment vous portez-vous ce matin ?

how do you do this morning ?

comment allez-vous ce matin ?
or comment cela va-t-il ce matin ?

not very well, I thank you

pas très bien, je vous remercie qu'avez-vous ?

what is the matter with you ?

qu'est-ce que vous avez ?

nothing, but I do not feel quite well

je n'ai rien, mais je ne me sens pas très bien

shall I send for the doctor ?

enverrai-je chercher le docteur ?

no I thank you, I do not want him

non je vous remercie, je n'en ai pas besoin

pouvez-vous vous lever ?	<i>can you rise ?</i>
je tâcherai	<i>I will try</i>
restez au lit ce matin, je vous	<i>stay in bed this morning, I will</i>
apporterai votre déjeuner	<i>bring you your breakfast</i>
apportez-moi une tasse de thé	<i>bring me a cup of tea</i>
eh bien, comment allez-vous	<i>well, how are you now ?</i>
maintenant ?	
beaucoup mieux je vous re-	<i>much better, I thank you</i>
mercie	
voulez-vous vous lever ?	<i>do you wish to rise ?</i>
pouvez-vous vous habiller ?	<i>can you dress yourself ?</i>
oui, je serai bientôt prête	<i>yes, I shall soon be ready</i>
dépêchez-vous, je vous atten-	<i>make haste, I will wait for you</i>
drai	
non, descendez, je vous suis	<i>no, go down, I will follow you</i>

SEVENTH DIALOGUE.

sortirez-vous ce soir ?	<i>will you go out this evening ?</i>
non, ma mère ne le veut pas	<i>no, mother does not wish me</i>
voulez-vous que je vienne	<i>do you wish me to come and</i>
passer la soirée avec vous ?	<i>spend the evening with you ?</i>
je vous serai très obligée mon	<i>I shall be very much obliged to</i>
amie, si vous voulez bien	<i>you dear, if you will have that</i>
avoir cette bonté	<i>kindness</i>
à quelle heure viendrai-je ?	<i>at what time shall I come ?</i>
venez aussitôt que vous pourrez	<i>come as soon as you can</i>
que ferons-nous ?	
qu'est-ce que nous ferons ?	<i>what shall we do ?</i>
nous étudierons ensemble	<i>we will study together</i>
qu'étudierons-nous ?	
qu'est-ce que nous étudierons ?	<i>what shall we study ?</i>
nous étudierons notre Français	<i>we will study our French for an</i>
pendant une heure, ensuite	<i>hour, and then we will play</i>
nous jouerons	
apporterai-je mon ouvrage ?	<i>shall I bring my work ?</i>
comme vous voudrez	<i>just as you like</i>

EIGHTH DIALOGUE.

je crois que j'irai bientôt en	<i>I think I shall soon go to France,</i>
France, voulez-vous y aller	<i>will you go with me ?</i>
avec moi ?	

y resterez-vous long-temps ?	<i>will you stay there long ?</i>
combien de temps y resterez-vous ?	<i>how long will you stay there ?</i>
j'y resterai probablement deux ans	<i>I shall probably stay there two years</i>
où irez-vous ensuite ?	<i>where will you go afterwards ?</i>
je reviendrai en Angleterre	<i>I shall come back to England</i>
pourquoi voulez-vous aller en France ?	<i>why do you wish to go to France ?</i>
pour apprendre à parler Français	<i>to learn how to speak French</i>
mais vous pouvez apprendre chez vous tout aussi bien .	<i>but you can learn at home quite as well</i>
je sais cela tout aussi bien que vous, mais je veux étudier les mœurs Françaises	<i>I know that quite as well as you, but I wish to study French manners</i>
très bien, j'irai avec vous alors	<i>very well, I will go with you then</i>

There are in French some verbs that require sometimes two prepositions, *à* and *de* ; (see Lesson XIX, page 255,) some that require the preposition *à*, before either the noun or verb that generally follows ; some that require the preposition *de*, also before either the noun or the verb that generally follows ; and some that do not require any preposition at all before the verb that generally follows.

By frequently referring to the following lists, the pupil will acquire the important and useful knowledge of the verbs that require these different prepositions.

Verbs that require the two prepositions à-de.

A, is put before the *noun*, *de*, comes before the verb that follows.

commander à . . de . .	<i>to command</i>
conseiller à . . de . .	<i>to advise, to counsel</i>
convenir à . . de . .	<i>to suit, to become, to be proper</i>
défendre à . . de . .	<i>to forbid, to prohibit</i>
demander à . . de . .	<i>to ask</i>

dire	à.. de..	to tell
ordonner	à.. de..	to order
permettre	à.. de..	to allow, to permit
promettre	à.. de..	to promise
plaire	à.. de..	to please, to be pleased to..

Verbs that require the preposition à, before either the noun or the verb that generally follows.

avoir à..	to have to..	s'amuser à	to amuse one's-self
applaudir à	to applaud	s'attendre à	to expect to
commencer à	to begin	se déterminer à	to take a resolution to
contribuer à	to contribute	s'exposer à	to expose one's-self
consentir à	to consent	s'engager à	to engage one's-self
convenir à	to suit	s'employer à	to employ one's-self
désobéir à	to disobey	se fier à	to trust to, to depend
déplaire à	to displease	s'habituer à	{ to use one's-self, to inure one's-self
échapper à	to escape	s'intéresser à	to interest one's-self
enseigner à	to teach	songer à	to muse, to think
inviter à	to invite	succéder à	to succeed, (take the place of)
nuire à	to hurt, to injure	subvenir à	to supply, to relieve
obéir à	to obey	survivre à	to survive, to outlive
penser à	to think	s'opposer à	to oppose
pardonner à	to forgive	se plaire à	{ to delight in to take delight in
pourvoir à	to provide for	se complaire à	to delight in
plaire à	to please	se résoudre à	to resolve
répondre à	to answer	se préparer à	to prepare one's-self
ressembler à	to be like, to resemble	se soumettre à	to submit
s'abandonner à	to despond, to give one's-self up to		
s'accoutumer à	to use one's-self, to accustom		
s'adresser à	to apply		
s'appliquer à	to apply one's-self		
s'adonner à	to addict one's-self		
s'apprêter à	{ to get ready to prepare one's-self		
se disposer à	to get ready		

Verbs that require the preposition de, before either the noun or the verb that generally follows.

avoir le temps de	to have time to	finir de	to finish
abuser de	to abuse	gémir de	to groan, to moan
achever de	to finish, to complete	jouir de	to enjoy, to possess
conseiller de	to advise, to counsel	jouer de	to play (on any instrument)
changer de	to alter, to change	mériter de	to deserve, merit
convenir de	to own, to agree	prier de	to request, to beg
craindre de	to fear, to be afraid	remplir de	to fill up, to fill
douter de	to doubt	rougir de	to blush, to reddens
désespérer de	to despair	regarder de	to look upon with
empêcher de	to prevent, to hinder	soupçonner de	to suspect
essayer de	to try	tâcher de	to try
		vivre de	to live upon

Pronominal verbs that require the preposition de, before either the noun or the verb that generally follows.

s'abstenir de	to abstain, to refrain	s'écarter de	} to go out of the way
s'apercevoir de	to perceive	s'informer de	
se dépêcher de	to make haste	se méfier de	to inquire after
se dégoûter de	to loathe, be disgusted with	se mêler de	to mistrust
se débarrasser de	to get rid of		to interfere, to meddle
se défaire de	to part with, to get rid of	se moquer de	to laugh at
se douter de	to suspect	se nourrir de	to live, to feed
s'échapper de	to escape from	se passer de	} to do, or to go without
s'étonner de	to wonder	se plaindre de	
s'emparer de	to seize upon		to complain, to moan
s'empreser de	to be eager, to hasten	se réjouir de	to rejoice, to make merry
s'efforcer de	{ to strive to endeavour to exert one's-self	se repentir de	to repent
*s'empêcher de		se saisir de	to seize upon
		se servir de	to use, to make use of
		se souvenir de	to remember

* Je ne puis m'empêcher de rire, I cannot help laughing, or, I cannot forbear crying, etc.

Verbs that do not require any preposition before the infinitive that generally follows.

aimer mieux	to like better, to prefer	oser	to dare
aller	to go	pouvoir	to be able
venir	to come	espérer	to hope
désirer	to wish, to desire	préférer	to prefer
vouloir *	to will, to wish	falloir	must, to be necessary
devoir	(used as should or ought)	faire	to cause to
paraître	to appear, to look	sembler	to seem, to appear
		valoir mieux	to be better to

Adjectives and past participles that require the preposition à before the verb that generally follows.

prêt à	ready	c'est facile à	it is, or this (thing) is easy to
disposé à	disposed		
décidé à	decided		
occupé à	occupied, busy	c'est difficile à	it is, or this (thing) is difficult to
propre à	fit for, qualified for		
bon à	fit to, good for		

Adjectives and past participles that require the preposition de, before either the noun or the verb that generally follows.

digne de	worthy, deserving	rempli de	full, filled with
fâché de	sorry to	surpris de	surprised, amazed
bien aise de	glad to	couvert de	covered with
heureux de	happy to	décoré de	decorated with
content de	{ pleased with contented with satisfied with	orné de	adorned; ornamented with
satisfait de	satisfied, pleased with	fatigué de	tired, weary
mécontent de	{ dissatisfied with displeased with discontented with	las de	tired, weary
plein de	full, abounding with	obligé de	obliged, compelled to
embarrassé de	puzzled, perplexed, encumbered	forcé de	compelled to
		il est facile de	it is easy to, (Imp. verb)
		il est difficile de	it is difficult to (Imp. verb)
		avoir peur de	to be afraid of

* Je ne veux pas que vous fassiez cela, *I will not have you do so, or that.*

Days of the week.

Jours de la semaine .

Dimanche	<i>Sunday</i>	Jeu	<i>Thursday</i>
Lundi	<i>Monday</i>	Vendredi	<i>Friday</i>
Mardi	<i>Tuesday</i>	Samedi	<i>Saturday</i>
Mercredi	<i>Wednesday</i>		

The days of the week are all masculine. The word *week* is feminine. The preposition *on*, cannot be used in French before the days of the week. We say : Lundi, and never *sur* Lundi.

Months of the year.

Mois de l'année

Janvier	<i>January</i>	Juillet	<i>July</i>
Février	<i>February</i>	Août	<i>August</i>
Mars	<i>March</i>	Septembre	<i>September</i>
Avril	<i>April</i>	Octobre	<i>October</i>
Mai	<i>May</i>	Novembre	<i>November</i>
Juin	<i>June</i>	Décembre	<i>December</i>

Seasons of the year, (all masculine)

Saisons de l'année

le Printemps	<i>spring</i>	l'Automne	<i>autumn</i>
l'Été	<i>summer</i>	l'Hiver	<i>winter</i>

Quarters

Trimestres

Noël	<i>Christmas</i>	la Saint Jean	<i>Midsummer</i>
Pâques	<i>Easter</i>	la Saint Michel	<i>Michaelmas</i>

THE END.

NORWICH :

PRINTED BY THOMAS PRIEST, RAMPANT HORSE STREET.

